

Owner's Manual

RC F



©2019 TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
All rights reserved. This material may not be reproduced or copied, in whole or in part, without the written permission of Toyota Motor Corporation.

Pictorial index	Search by illustration	
For safety and security	Make sure to read through them (Main topics: Child seat, theft deterrent system)	1
Vehicle status information and indicators	Reading driving-related information (Main topics: Meters, multi-information display)	2
Before driving	Opening and closing the doors and windows, adjustment before driving (Main topics: Keys, doors, seats, power windows)	3
Driving	Operations and advice which are necessary for driving (Main topics: Starting engine, refueling)	4
Interior features	Usage of the interior features (Main topics: Air conditioner, storage features)	5
Maintenance and care	Caring for your vehicle and maintenance procedures (Main topics: Interior and exterior, light bulbs)	6
When trouble arises	What to do in case of malfunction and emergency (Main topics: Battery discharge, flat tire)	7
Vehicle specifications	Vehicle specifications, customizable features (Main topics: Fuel, oil, tire inflation pressure)	8
Index	Search by symptom	
	Search alphabetically	

For your information 5
Reading this manual 10
How to search 11
Pictorial index 12

1 For safety and security

1-1. For safe use
Before driving 30
For safe driving 31
Seat belts 32
SRS airbags 36
Exhaust gas precautions 43

1-2. Child safety
Airbag manual on-off system 44
Riding with children 45
Child restraint systems (for Korea) 46
Child restraint systems (except for Korea) 53

1-3. Emergency assistance
ERA-GLONASS/EVAK 79

1-4. Theft deterrent system
Engine immobilizer system 83
Double locking system 84
Alarm 85

2 Vehicle status information and indicators

2-1. Instrument cluster
Warning lights and indicators 92
Gauges and meters 96
Multi-information display 104
Fuel consumption information 113

3 Before driving

3-1. Key information
Keys 118

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk
Doors 122
Trunk 126
Smart entry & start system 129

3-3. Adjusting the seats
Front seats 134
Power easy access system/driving position memory/memory recall function 136

3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors
Steering wheel 139
Inside rear view mirror 140
Outside rear view mirrors 141

3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof
Power windows 144
Moon roof 146

4 Driving

4-1. Before driving
Driving the vehicle 152
Cargo and luggage 158
Trailer towing 159

4-2. Driving procedures
Engine (ignition) switch 160
Automatic transmission 163
Turn signal lever 168

Parking brake 169
ASC (Active Sound Control) 169

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers
Headlight switch 170
Automatic High Beam 172
Fog light switch 174
Windshield wipers and washer 175

4-4. Refueling
Opening the fuel tank cap 182

4-5. Using the driving support systems
Lexus Safety System + ... 185
PCS (Pre-Collision System) 188
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 196
RSA (Road Sign Assist) 204
Dynamic radar cruise control 207
Cruise control 216
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 218
Lexus parking assist-sensor 226
Driving mode select switch 232
Launch control 233
Active rear wing 235
TVD (Torque Vectoring Differential) 238
Driving assist systems 239

4-6. Driving tips
Winter driving tips 244
Eco-friendly driving tips 246

5 Interior features

5-1. Remote Touch/Display
Remote Touch 250
Center Display 252

5-2. Using the air conditioning system
Automatic air conditioning system 255
Heated steering wheel/seat heaters/seat ventilators 263

5-3. Using the interior lights
Interior lights list 266

5-4. Using the storage features
List of storage features 268
Trunk features 270

5-5. Using the other interior features
Other interior features 271
Garage door opener 274

6 Maintenance and care

6-1. Maintenance and care
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 282
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 286

6-2. Matte paint care guide (if equipped)
Basic knowledge about matte clear coat 289
Washing your vehicle 294
Frequently Asked Questions 297

6-3. Maintenance
Maintenance requirements 301

Scheduled maintenance 303

6-4. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 313
Hood 315
Positioning a floor jack 316
Engine compartment 318
Tires 326
Tire inflation pressure 332
Wheels 333
Air conditioning filter 334
Electronic key battery 336
Checking and replacing fuses 338
Light bulbs 341

7 When trouble arises

7-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 344
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 344
If the vehicle is trapped in rising water 345

7-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle needs to be towed 347
If you think something is wrong 350
Fuel pump shut off system 351
If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 352
If a warning message is displayed 359
If you have a flat tire (vehicles with a spare tire) 362
If you have a flat tire (vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit) 369
If the engine will not start 380
If you lose your keys 381
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened 382
If the electronic key does not operate properly 382
If the vehicle battery is discharged 385
If your vehicle overheats 388
If the vehicle becomes stuck 390

8 Vehicle specifications

8-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 394
Fuel information 403

8-2. Customization

Customizable features 404

8-3. Items to initialize

Items to initialize 415

8-4. Certifications

Certifications 416

Index

What to do if... (Troubleshooting) 428
Alphabetical Index 431

For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustrations may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Noise from under vehicle after turning off the engine (for Korea)

Approximately five hours after the engine is turned off, you may hear sound coming from under the vehicle for several minutes. This is the sound of a fuel evaporation leakage check and, it does not indicate a malfunction.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. Using these spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus products may adversely affect the safety of your vehicle, even though these parts may be approved by certain authorities in your country. Toyota Motor Corporation therefore cannot accept any liability or guarantee spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus products, nor for replacement or installation involving such parts.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

Installation of an RF-transmitter system

The installation of an RF-transmitter system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Lexus Safety System +
- Cruise control system
- Anti-lock brake system
- Vehicle dynamics integrated management
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Be sure to check with your Lexus

dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of an RF-transmitter system.

Further information regarding frequency bands, power levels, antenna positions and installation provisions for the installation of RF-transmitters, is available on request at your Lexus dealer.

Vehicle data recording

The vehicle is equipped with sophisticated computers that will record certain data, such as:

The recorded data varies according to the vehicle grade level and options with which it is equipped.

These computers do not record conversations or sounds, and only record images outside of the vehicle in certain situations.

- Engine speed / Electric motor speed (traction motor speed)
- Accelerator status
- Brake status
- Vehicle speed
- Operation status of the driving assist systems, such as the ABS and pre-collision system

● Data usage

Lexus may use the data recorded in this computer to diagnose malfunctions, conduct research and development, and improve quality.

Lexus will not disclose the recorded data to a third party except:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or with the consent of the lessee if the vehicle is leased
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit
- For research purposes where the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Event data recorder (except for Korea)

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. However, data may not be recorded depending on the severity and type of a crash.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your

vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

● Disclosure of the EDR data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the lessee for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit

However, if necessary, Lexus may:

- Use the data for research on vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing information about the specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Event data recorder (for Korea)

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. However, data may not be recorded depending on the severity and type of a crash.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various safety systems in your vehicle (e.g., the airbags, seat belts and ABS) were operating;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

The EDR can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, personal data acquired during a defect investigation could be used to manage crash records. A person provided by the

Minister of Land Infrastructure and Transport could extract and analyze EDR data for official purpose.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

● Disclosure of the EDR data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the lessee for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit

However, if necessary, Lexus may:

- Use the data for research on vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing information about the specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

Noise levels inside the vehicle

For Russia and Kazakhstan:

TECHNICAL REGULATION OF THE CUSTOMS UNION "ON THE SAFETY OF WHEELED VEHICLES" TR CU 018/2011 Attachment No.3, Section 2 (Requirements for vehicles concerning their interior noise), Table 2.1, Remarks 3

This vehicle may not be used for public purposes (as taxis, for example).

WARNING

■ General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

WARNING

■ General precaution regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, the moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

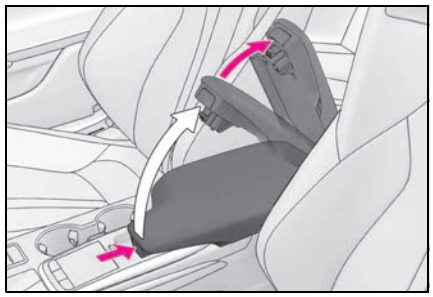
Reading this manual

Explains symbols used in this manual.

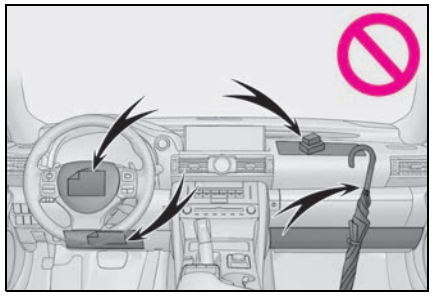
Symbols in this manual

Symbols	Meanings
	WARNING: Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause death or serious injury to people.
	NOTICE: Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause damage to or a malfunction in the vehicle or its equipment.
	Indicates operating or working procedures. Follow the steps in numerical order.

Symbols in illustrations



Symbols	Meanings
	Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.
	Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).

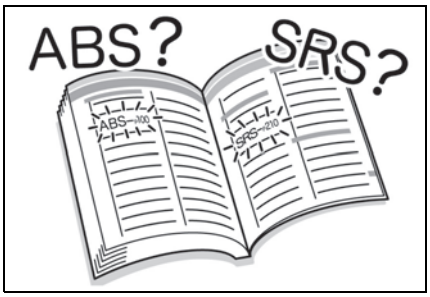


Symbols	Meanings
	Indicates the component or position being explained.
	Means **Do not**, **Do not do this**, or **Do not let this happen**.

How to search

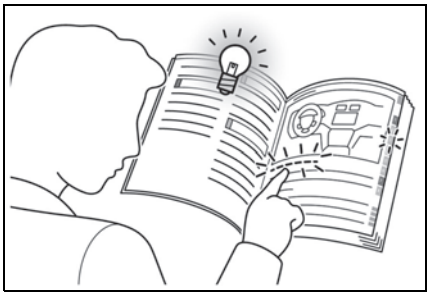
■ **Searching by name**

● Alphabetical index: →P.431



■ **Searching by installation position**

● Pictorial index: →P.12



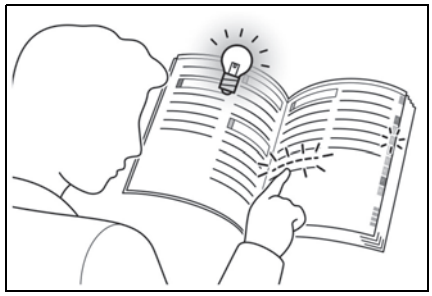
■ **Searching by symptom or sound**

● What to do if... (Troubleshooting): →P.428



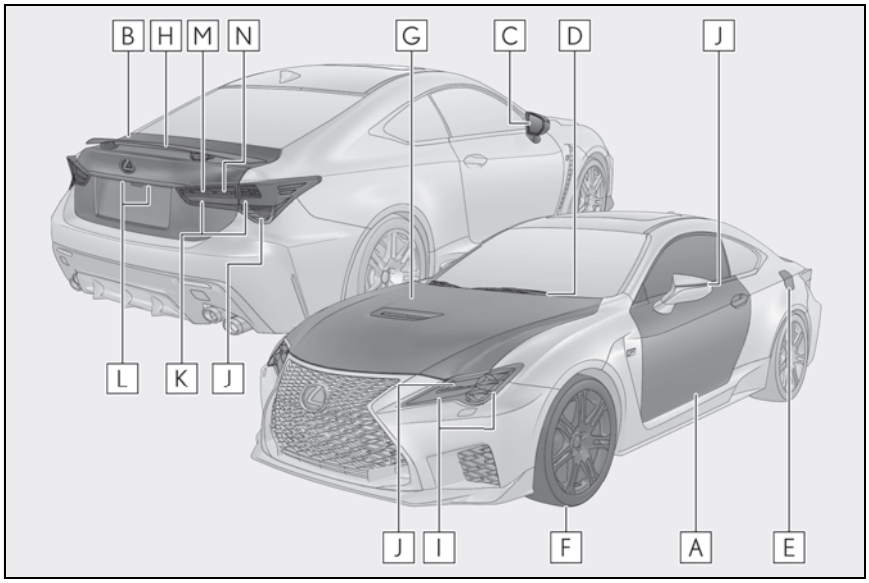
■ **Searching by title**

● Table of contents: →P.2



Pictorial index

■Exterior



A Doors P.122

Locking/unlocking P.122

Opening/closing the side windows P.144

Locking/unlocking by using the mechanical key P.382

Warning lights/warning messages P.352, 359

B Trunk P.126

Opening from inside the cabin P.127

Opening from outside P.127

Opening by using the mechanical key P.383

Warning lights/warning messages P.352, 359

C Outside rear view mirrors P.141

Adjusting the mirror angle P.141

Folding the mirrors P.142

Driving position memory P.136

Defogging the mirrors* P.259

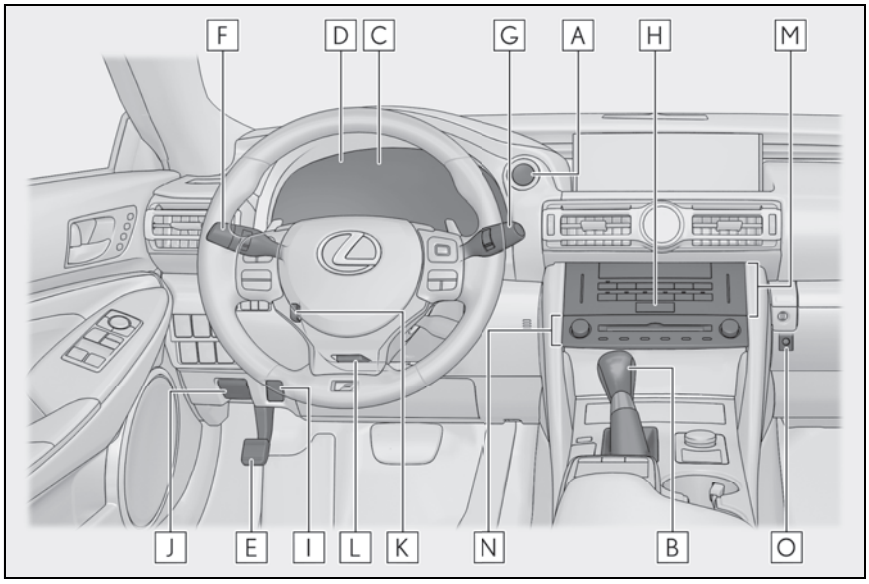
D **Windshield wipers** **P.175**
Precautions for winter season P.244
To prevent freezing (windshield wiper de-icer)* P.260
Precautions against car wash P.284
E **Fuel filler door** **P.182**
Refueling method P.182
Fuel type/fuel tank capacity P.396
F **Tires** **P.326**
Tire size/inflation pressure P.400
Winter tires/tire chain P.244
Checking/rotation/tire pressure warning system* P.326
Coping with flat tires P.362, 369
G **Hood** **P.315**
Opening P.315
Engine oil P.396
Coping with overheating P.388
Warning messages P.359
H **Active rear wing*** **P.235**

Light bulbs of the exterior lights for driving (Replacing method: P.341)

I **Headlights/front position lights/daytime running lights** **P.170**
J **Turn signal lights** **P.168**
K **Tail lights** **P.170**
Stop lights
Emergency brake signal* P.240
L **License plate lights** **P.170**
M **Rear fog lights*** **P.174**
N **Back up lights**
Shifting the shift lever to R P.164

*: If equipped

■Instrument panel (Left-hand drive vehicles)



A Engine switch.....P.160
Starting the engine/changing the mode.....P.160
Emergency stop of the engine.....P.344
When the engine will not start.....P.380
Warning messages.....P.359

B Shift lever.....P.163
Changing the shift position.....P.164
Precautions for towing.....P.347
When the shift lever does not move.....P.164

C Meters.....P.96
Reading the meters/adjusting the instrument panel lights.....P.96
Warning lights/indicator lights.....P.92
When a warning light comes on.....P.352

D Multi-information display.....P.104
Display.....P.104

When the warning messages are displayed P.359

E Parking brake P.169

Applying/releasing P.169

Precautions for winter season P.245

Warning buzzer/message P.359

F Headlight switch P.170
Turn signal lever P.168

Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/license plate lights/daytime running lights P.170

Automatic High Beam*1 ..... P.172

Rear fog lights*1 ..... P.174

G Windshield wiper and washer switch P.175

Usage P.175

Adding washer fluid P.324

Warning messages P.359

Headlight cleaners P.175

H Emergency flasher switch P.344

I Trunk opener switch P.127

J Hood lock release lever P.315

K Tilt and telescopic steering control switch*1 ..... P.139

Adjustment P.139

Driving position memory P.136

L Tilt and telescopic steering lock release lever*1 ..... P.139

M Air conditioning system P.255

Usage P.255

Rear window defogger P.259

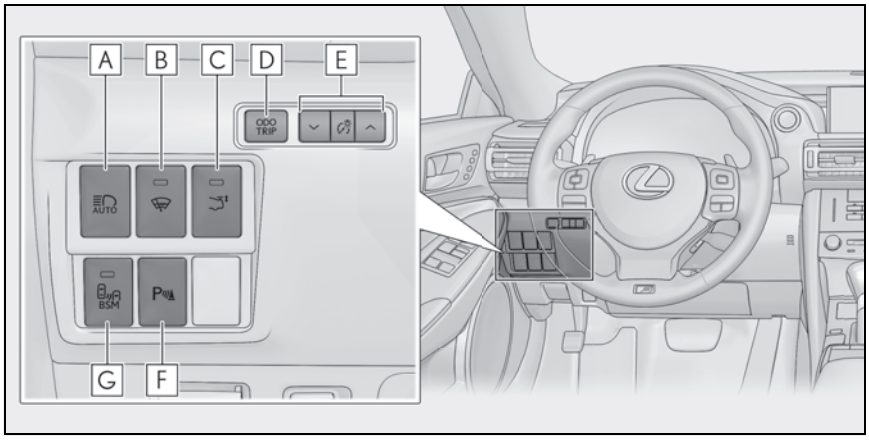
N Audio system*2

O Trunk opener main switch P.128

*1: If equipped

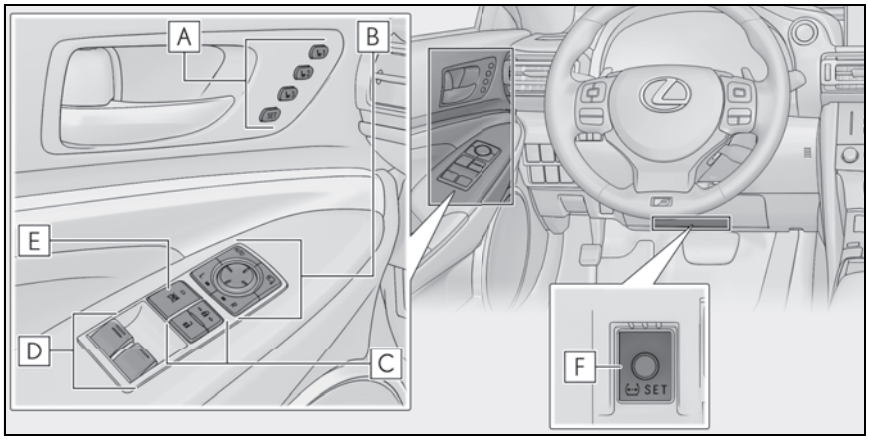
*2: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

■Switches (Left-hand drive vehicles)



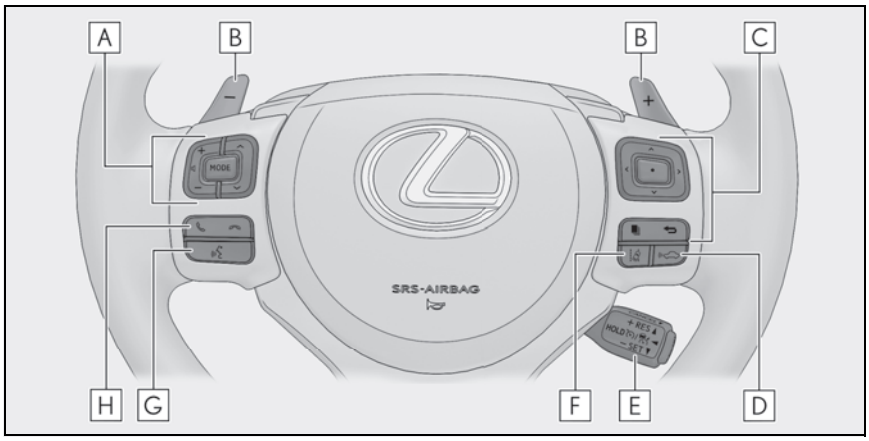
A Automatic High Beam switch* P.172
B Windshield wiper de-icer switch* P.260
C Active rear wing switch* P.235
D Odometer/trip meter/trip meter reset button P.103
E Instrument panel light control switches P.103
F Lexus parking assist-sensor switch P.226
G BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) main switch* P.218

*: If equipped



A Driving position memory buttons P.136
B Outside rear view mirror switches P.141
C Door lock switches P.124
D Power window switches P.144
E Window lock switch P.145
F Tire pressure warning reset switch* P.330

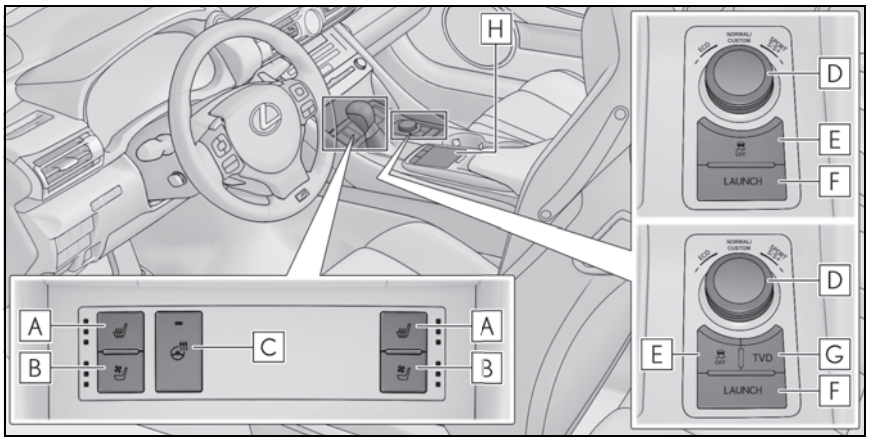
*: If equipped



A Audio remote control switches*1
B Paddle shift switches P.165, 166
C Meter control switches P.105
D Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch*2 ..... P.212
E Cruise control switch
Cruise control*2 ..... P.216
Dynamic radar cruise control*2 ..... P.207
F LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) switch*2 ..... P.196
G Talk switch*1
H Telephone switches*1

*1: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

*2: If equipped

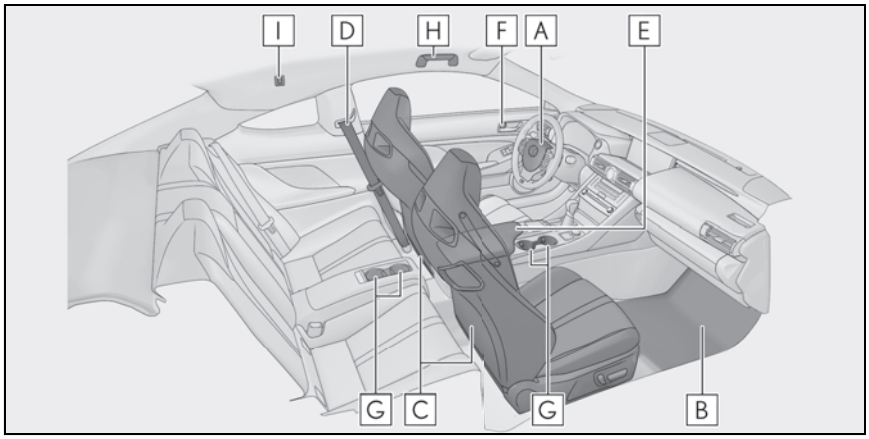


A Seat heater switches*1 ..... P.263
B Seat ventilator switches*1 ..... P.264
C Heated steering wheel switch*1 ..... P.263
D Driving mode select switch P.232
E VSC OFF switch P.240
F "LAUNCH" switch P.233
G "TVD" switch*1 ..... P.238
H Remote Touch*2 ..... P.250

*1: If equipped

*2: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

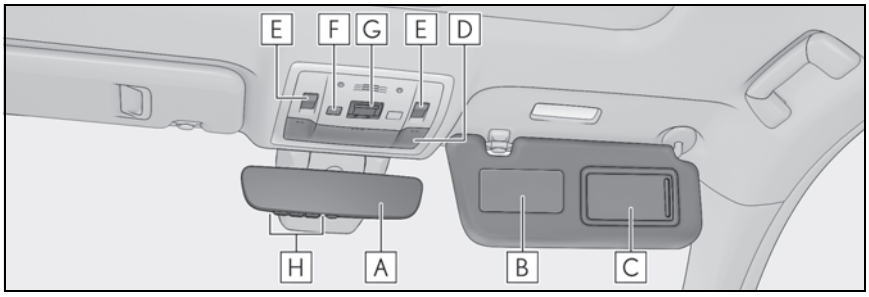
■Interior (Left-hand drive vehicles)



A SRS airbags P.36
B Floor mats P.30
C Front seats P.134
D Seat belts P.32
E Console box P.270
F Inside lock buttons P.125
G Cup holders* P.269
H Assist grips P.272
I Coat hooks P.272

*: If equipped

■Ceiling (Left-hand drive vehicles)



A Inside rear view mirror P.140

B Sun visors *1, 2 ..... P.273

C Vanity mirrors P.273

D Interior light P.266
Personal lights P.267

E Moon roof switches *3 ..... P.146

F Intrusion sensor cancel switch *3 ..... P.87
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch *3 ..... P.87

G "SOS" button *3 ..... P.79

H Garage door opener buttons *3 ..... P.274

*1: Except for Taiwan: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P.55)



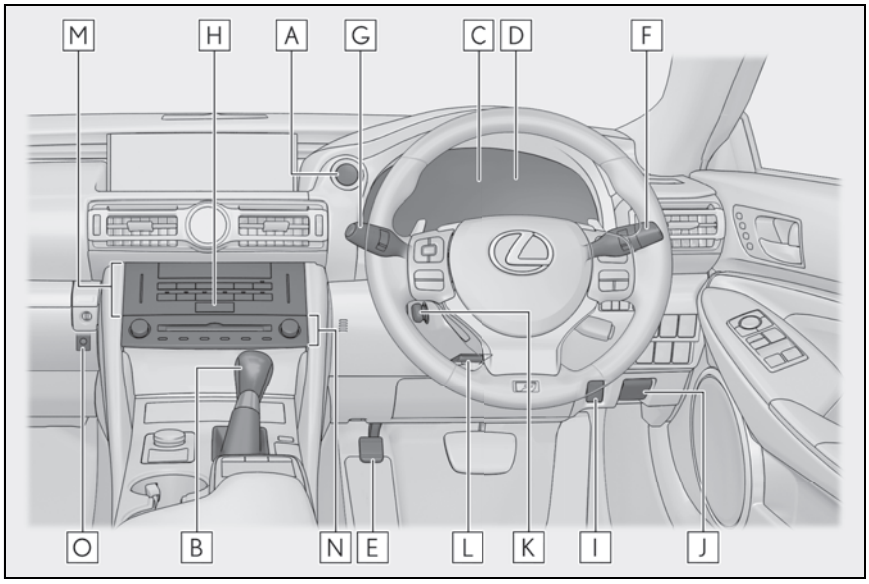
*2: For Taiwan: DO NOT carry baby, infant and children on the front passenger seat. Except for the front passenger seat, NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the

CHILD can occur. (→P.58)



*3: If equipped

■Instrument panel (Right-hand drive vehicles)



A Engine switch.....P.160
Starting the engine/changing the mode.....P.160
Emergency stop of the engine.....P.344
When the engine will not start.....P.380
Warning messages.....P.359

B Shift lever.....P.163
Changing the shift position.....P.164
Precautions for towing.....P.347
When the shift lever does not move.....P.164

C Meters.....P.96
Reading the meters/adjusting the instrument panel lights.....P.96
Warning lights/indicator lights.....P.92
When a warning light comes on.....P.352

D Multi-information display.....P.104
Display.....P.104

When the warning messages are displayed P.359

E Parking brake P.169

Applying/releasing P.169

Precautions for winter season P.245

Warning buzzer/message P.359

F Headlight switch P.170
Turn signal lever P.168

Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/license plate lights/daytime running lights P.170

Automatic High Beam*1 ..... P.172

Rear fog lights*1 ..... P.174

G Windshield wiper and washer switch P.175

Usage P.175

Adding washer fluid P.324

Warning messages P.359

Headlight cleaners P.175

H Emergency flasher switch P.344

I Trunk opener switch P.127

J Hood lock release lever P.315

K Tilt and telescopic steering control switch*1 ..... P.139

Adjustment P.139

Driving position memory P.136

L Tilt and telescopic steering lock release lever*1 ..... P.139

M Air conditioning system P.255

Usage P.255

Rear window defogger P.259

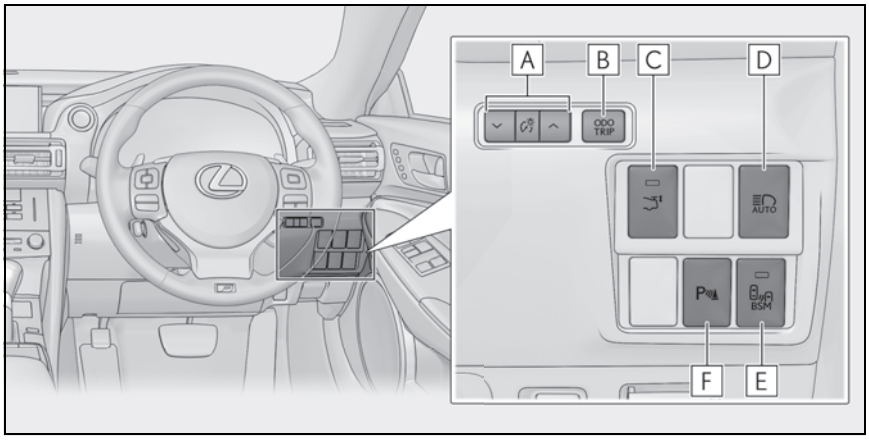
N Audio system*2

O Trunk opener main switch P.128

*1: If equipped

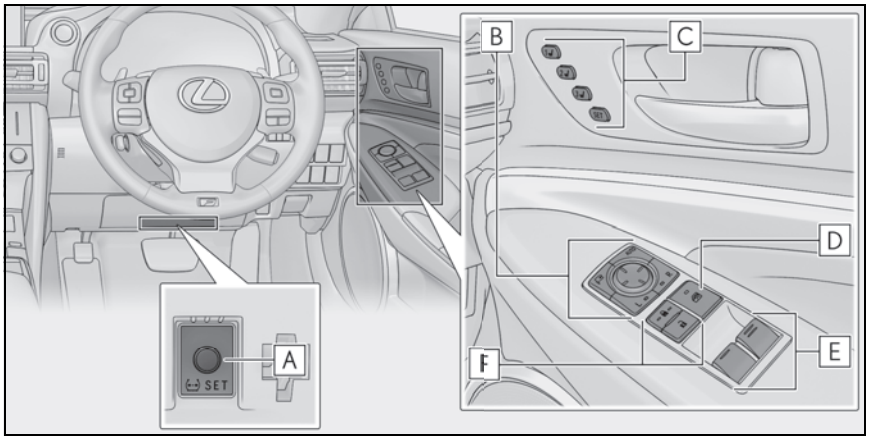
*2: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

■Switches (Right-hand drive vehicles)



A Instrument panel light control switches P.103
B Odometer/trip meter/trip meter reset button P.103
C Active rear wing switch* P.235
D Automatic High Beam switch* P.172
E BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) main switch* P.218
F Lexus parking assist-sensor switch P.226

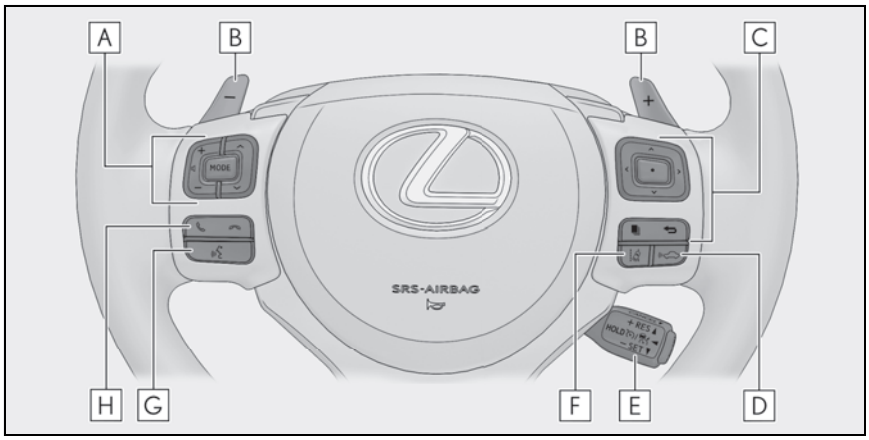
*: If equipped



A Tire pressure warning reset switch* P.330

B Outside rear view mirror switches P.141
C Driving position memory buttons P.136
D Window lock switch P.145
E Power window switches P.144
F Door lock switches P.124

*: If equipped



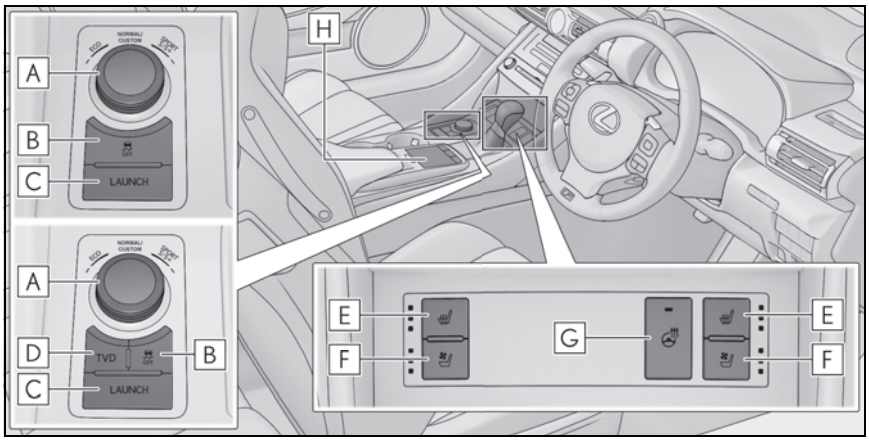
A Audio remote control switches*1
B Paddle shift switches P.165, 166
C Meter control switches P.105
D Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch*2 ..... P.212
E Cruise control switch

Cruise control*2 ..... P.216

Dynamic radar cruise control*2 ..... P.207

F LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) switch*2 ..... P.196
G Talk switch*1
H Telephone switches*1

*1: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".
*2: If equipped

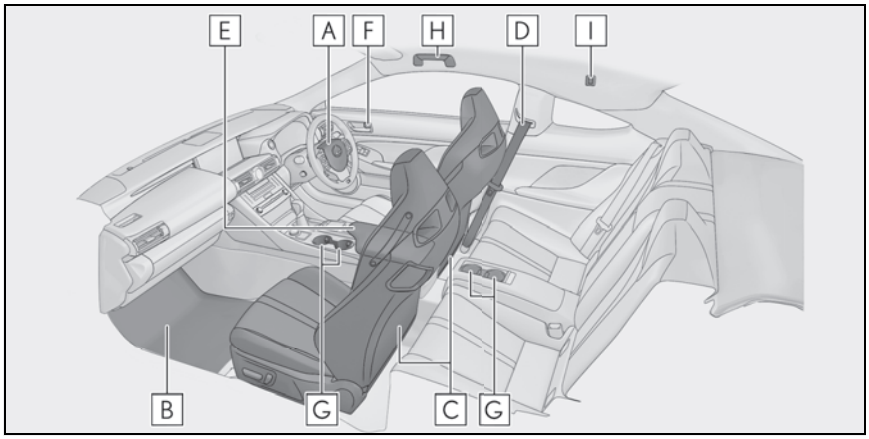


A Driving mode select switch P.232
B VSC OFF switch P.240
C "LAUNCH" switch P.233
D "TVD" switch*1 ..... P.238
E Seat heater switches*1 ..... P.263
F Seat ventilator switches*1 ..... P.264
G Heated steering wheel switch*1 ..... P.263
H Remote Touch*2 ..... P.250

*1: If equipped

*2: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

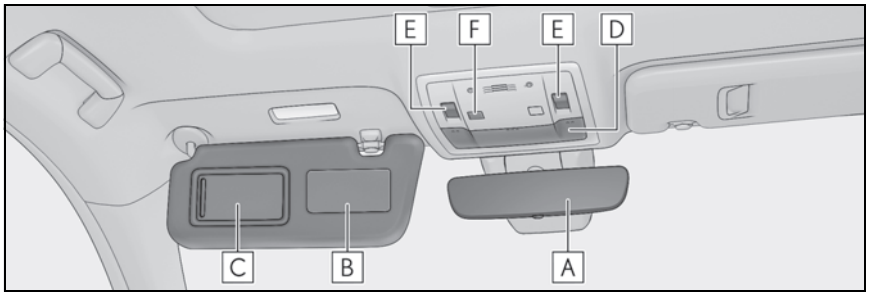
■Interior (Right-hand drive vehicles)



A SRS airbags P.36
B Floor mats P.30
C Front seats P.134
D Seat belts P.32
E Console box P.270
F Inside lock buttons P.125
G Cup holders* P.269
H Assist grips P.272
I Coat hooks P.272

*: If equipped

■Ceiling (Right-hand drive vehicles)



A Inside rear view mirror P.140

B Sun visors*1 ..... P.273

C Vanity mirrors P.273

D Interior light P.266
Personal lights P.267

E Moon roof switches*2 ..... P.146

F Intrusion sensor cancel switch*2 ..... P.87
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch*2 ..... P.87

*1: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIR-BAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P.55)



*2: If equipped

1-1. For safe use

Before driving 30

For safe driving 31

Seat belts 32

SRS airbags 36

Exhaust gas precautions 43

1-2. Child safety

Airbag manual on-off system ... 44

Riding with children 45

Child restraint systems (for Korea) 46

Child restraint systems (except for Korea) 53

1-3. Emergency assistance

ERA-GLONASS/EVAK 79

1-4. Theft deterrent system

Engine immobilizer system 83

Double locking system 84

Alarm 85

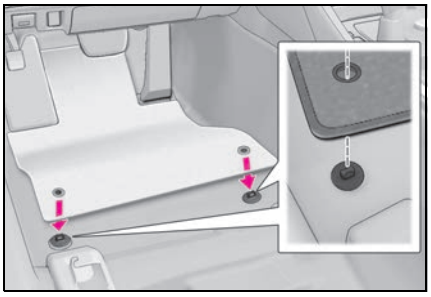
Before driving

Observe the following before starting off in the vehicle to ensure safety of driving.

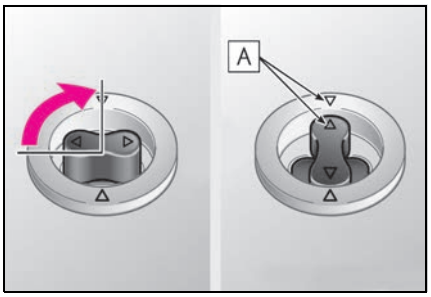
Installing floor mats

Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.

1 Insert the retaining hooks (clips) into the floor mat eyelets.



2 Turn the upper knob of each retaining hook (clip) to secure the floor mats in place.



Always align the △ marks A.

The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) may differ from that shown in the illustration.

⚠ WARNING

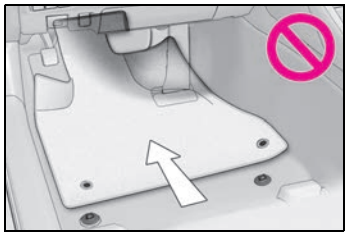
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle. This could lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ When installing the driver's floor mat

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Lexus Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

■ Before driving

- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.

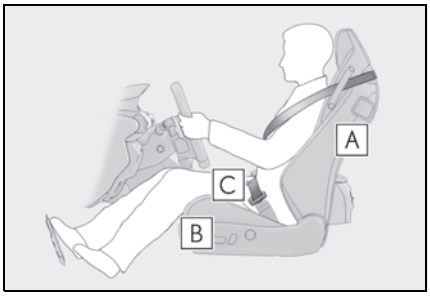


- With the engine stopped and the shift lever in P, fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.

For safe driving

For safe driving, adjust the seat and mirror to an appropriate position before driving.

Correct driving posture



A Adjust the angle of the seatback so that you are sitting straight up and so that you do not have to lean forward to steer. (→P.134)

B Adjust the seat so that you can depress the pedals fully and so that your arms bend slightly at the elbow when gripping the steering wheel. (→P.134)

C Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P.32)

WARNING

■ For safe driving

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving.
  Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
  A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
  Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident and the adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.
- Always observe the legal speed limit when driving on public roads.
- When driving over long distances, take regular breaks before you start to feel tired.
  Also, if you feel tired or sleepy while driving, do not force yourself to continue driving and take a break immediately.

Correct use of the seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle. (→P.32)
Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P.53)

Adjusting the mirrors

Make sure that you can see backward clearly by adjusting the inside and outside rear view mirrors properly. (→P.140, 141)

Seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

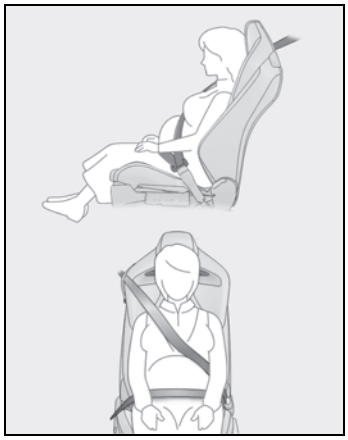
⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Wearing a seat belt

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

■ Pregnant women



Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P.33)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants, extending the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and avoiding belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.

■ People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P.33)

■ When children are in the vehicle

→P.51, 76

■ Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.

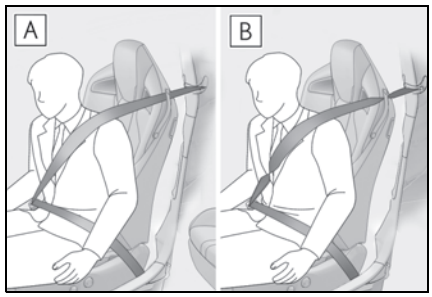
WARNING

- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are locked and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling may lead to incorrect operation.

Correct use of the seat belts



- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- Do not twist the seat belt.



A Not twisted

B Twisted

Child seat belt usage

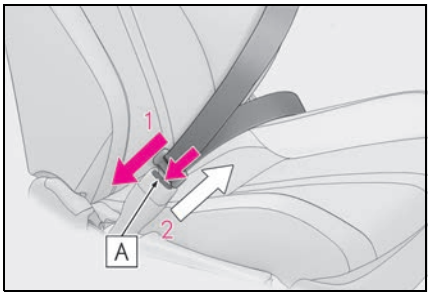
The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P.53)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage. (→P.32)

Seat belt regulations

If seat belt regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact your Lexus dealer for seat belt replacement or installation.

Fastening and releasing the seat belt



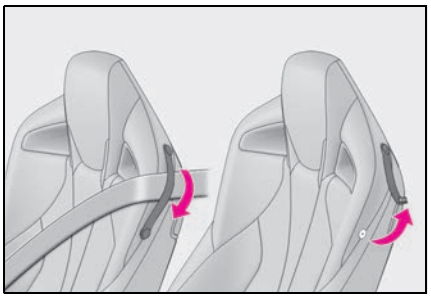
1 To fasten the seat belt, push the plate into the buckle until a click sound is heard.

2 To release the seat belt, press the release button A.

Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

Seat belt guide



When fastening a front seat belt, ensure that it is passed through the seat belt guide. Passing the seat belt through the guide enables the seat belt to be easily extended.

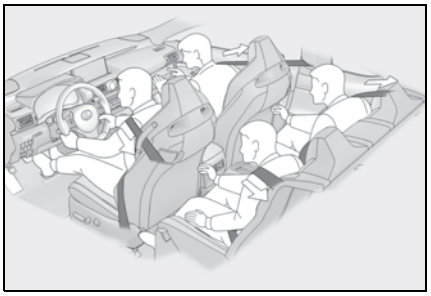
When you get into or out of the rear seats, release the seat belt from the seat belt guide.

WARNING

When using the seat belt guide

- Always make sure that the belt is not twisted, and runs freely through the guide.
- Regardless of whether the guide is used or not, always secure the seat belt guide button.
- Do not hang from or pull the guide forcefully.

Seat belt pretensioners



The pretensioners help the seat belts to quickly restrain the occupants by retracting the seat belts when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal collision.

The front seat belt pretensioners also activate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe side collision.

The pretensioners do not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a minor side impact, a rear impact or a vehicle rollover.

■ Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

WARNING

■ Seat belt pretensioners

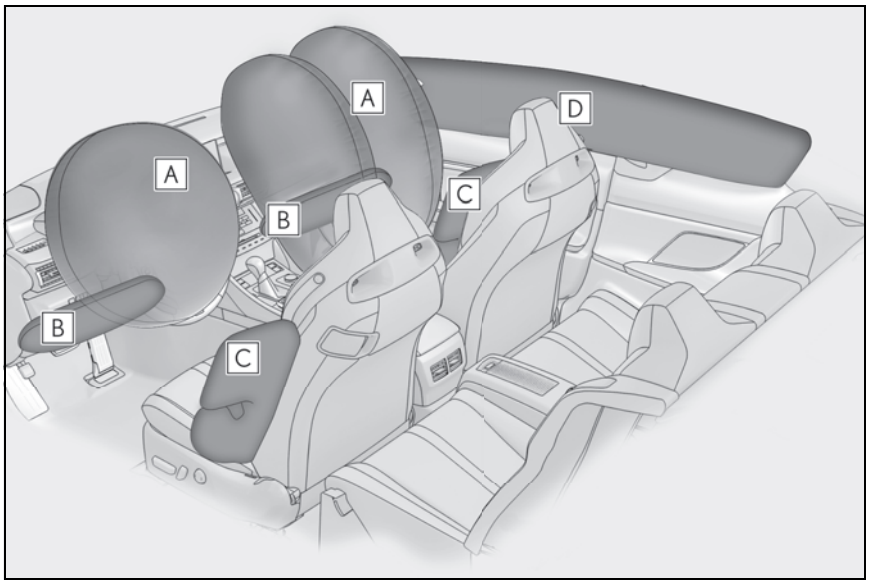
If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Lexus dealer.

SRS airbags

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

SRS airbag system

■ Location of the SRS airbags



▶ SRS front airbags

A SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag

Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components

B SRS knee airbags

Can help provide driver and front passenger protection

▶ SRS side and curtain shield airbags

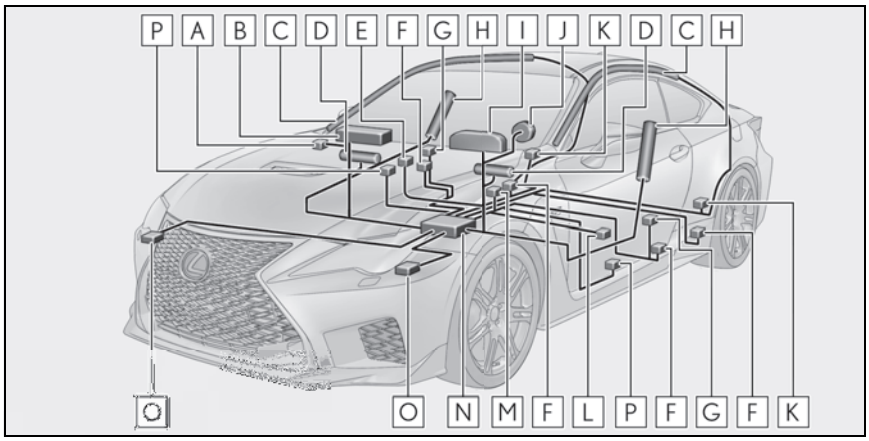
C SRS side airbags

Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants

D SRS curtain shield airbags

Can help protect primarily the head of occupants

■ SRS airbag system components



A Airbag manual on-off switch (if equipped)

B Front passenger airbag

C Curtain shield airbags

D Knee airbags

E "PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator lights (if equipped)

F Seat belt pretensioners and force limiters

G Side impact sensors (front)

H Front side airbags

I SRS warning light

J Driver airbag

K Side impact sensors (rear)

L Driver's seat position sensor

M Driver's seat belt buckle switch

N Airbag sensor assembly

O Front impact sensors

P Side impact sensors (front door)

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. As the airbags deploy, a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

■ If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)

- Slight abrasions, burns, bruising etc., may be sustained from SRS airbags, due to the extremely high speed deployment (inflation) by hot gases.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the front seats, parts of the front and rear pillars, and roof side rails, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.
- Vehicles with ERA-GLONASS/EVAK: If the SRS airbags deploy, the system is designed to send an emergency call* to the ERA-GLONASS/EVAK control center, notifying them of the vehicle's location (without needing to push the "SOS" button) and an agent will attempt to speak with the occupants to ascertain the level of emergency and assistance required. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency and helps to dispatch the necessary emergency services. (→P.79)

*: In some cases, the call cannot be made. (→P.81)

■ SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags)

- The SRS front airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform).

However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher in the following situations:

- If the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact
- If the vehicle is involved in an underride collision, such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle "underrides", or goes under, the bed of a truck

- Depending on the type of collision, it is possible that only the seat belt pretensioners will activate.

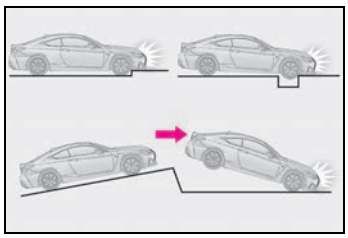
■ SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)

- The SRS side and curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 1500 kg [3300 lb.] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph]).
- The SRS side and curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of a severe frontal collision.

■ Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision

The SRS front airbags and SRS side and curtain shield airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or falling

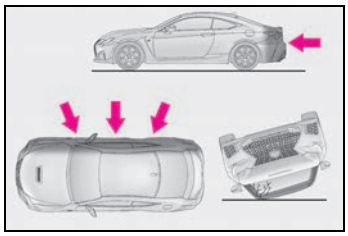


■ Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS front airbags)

The SRS front airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deploy-

ment of the SRS front airbags may occur.

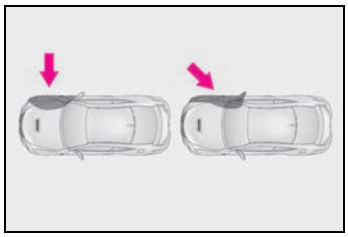
- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover



Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)

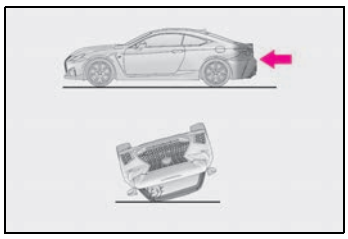
The SRS side and curtain shield airbags may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.

- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle



The SRS side and curtain shield airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side or low-speed frontal collision.

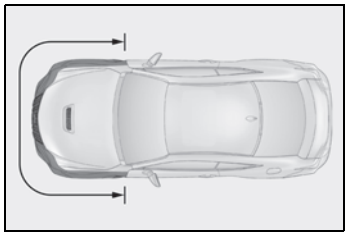
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover



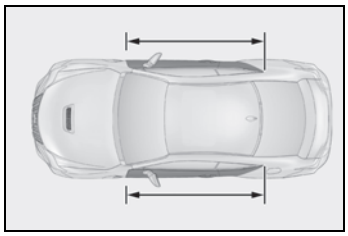
When to contact your Lexus dealer

In the following cases, the vehicle will require inspection and/or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

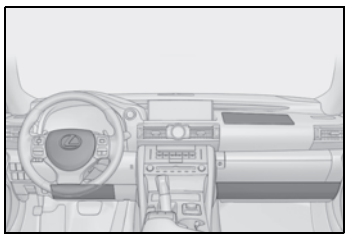
- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.
- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS front airbags to inflate.



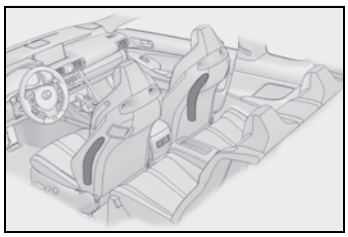
- A portion of a door or its surrounding area is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side and curtain shield airbags to inflate.



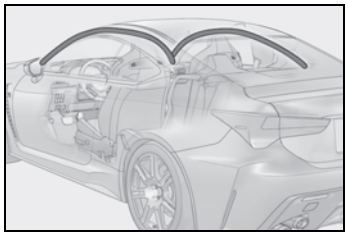
- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



● The surface of the seats with the SRS side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



● The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the SRS curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



WARNING

■ SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

● The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly.
The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.

● The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. Since the risk zone for the driver's airbag is the first 50 - 75 mm (2 - 3 in.) of inflation, placing yourself 250 mm (10 in.) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 250 mm (10 in.) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

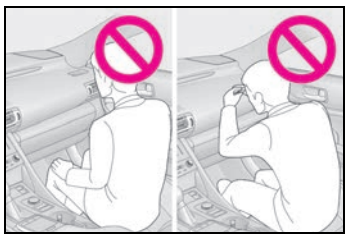
- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Slightly recline the back of the seat. Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 250 mm (10 in.) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
- If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

The seat should be adjusted as recommended above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

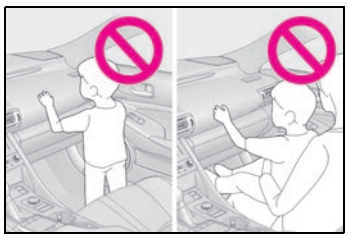
● The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.

WARNING

- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat. (→P.53)
- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



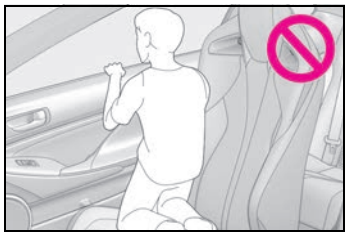
- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.



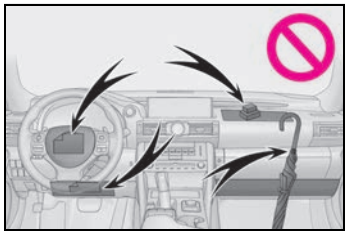
- Do not allow the front seat occupants to hold items on their knees.
- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.



- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seats toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.

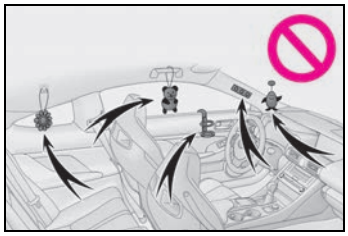


- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad and lower portion of the instrument panel. These items can become projectiles when the SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.



WARNING

- Do not attach anything to areas such as a door, windshield, side windshield, front or rear pillar, roof side rail and assist grip.
(Except for the speed limit sticker →P.371)



- Do not hang coat hangers or hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and may cause death or serious injury, should the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy.
- If a vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the airbags. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components.
Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front and rear pillar garnishes are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.

■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer. The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars or roof side rails
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.), snow plows or winches
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios (RF-transmitter) and CD players

Exhaust gas precautions

Harmful substance to the human body is included in exhaust gases if inhaled.

WARNING

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause exhaust gases enter the vehicle and may lead to an accident caused by light-headedness, or may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

■ Important points while driving

- Keep the trunk lid closed.
- If you smell exhaust gases in the vehicle even when the trunk lid is closed, open the windows and have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ When parking

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area or a closed area, such as a garage, stop the engine.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine on for a long time.
  If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and ensure that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle.

■ Exhaust pipe

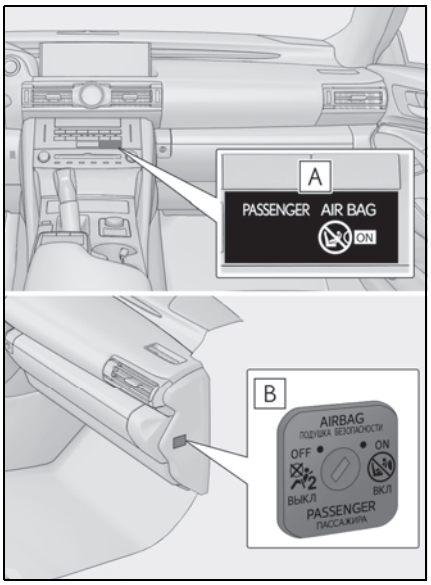
The exhaust system needs to be checked periodically. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

Airbag manual on-off system*

*: If equipped

This system deactivates the front passenger airbag and front passenger knee airbag.
Only deactivate the airbags when using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

System components



A "PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator

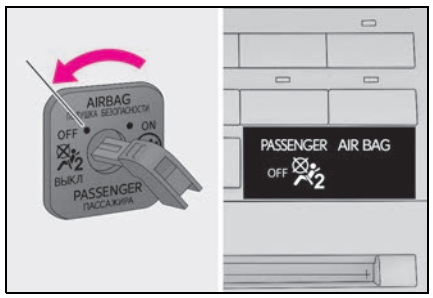
The "ON" indicator light turns on when the airbag system is on (only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode).

B Airbag manual on-off switch

Deactivating the front passenger airbag and front passenger knee airbag

Insert the mechanical key into the cylinder and turn to the "OFF" position.

The "OFF" indicator light turns on (only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode).



"PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator information

If any of the following problems occur, it is possible that there is a malfunction in the system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- Neither "ON" nor "OFF" comes on.
- The indicator light does not change when the airbag manual on-off switch is switched to "ON" or "OFF".

WARNING

When installing a child restraint system

For safety reasons, always install a child restraint system in a rear seat. In the event that the rear seat cannot be used, the front seat can be used as long as the airbag manual on-off system is set to "OFF".
If the airbag manual on-off system is left on, the strong impact of the airbag deployment (inflation) may cause serious injury or even death.

WARNING

■ When a child restraint system is not installed on the front passenger seat

Ensure that the airbag manual on-off system is set to "ON".
If it is left off, the airbag may not deploy in the event of an accident, which may result in serious injury or even death.

Riding with children

Observe the following precautions when children are in the vehicle. Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.

- It is recommended that children sit in the rear seats to avoid accidental contact with the shift lever, wiper switch, etc.
- Use the window lock switch to avoid children operating the power window accidentally. (→P.145)
- Do not let small children operate equipment which may catch or pinch body parts, such as the power window, hood, trunk, seats, etc.

WARNING

■ When children are in the vehicle

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Child restraint systems (for Korea)

Before installing a child restraint system in the vehicle, there are precautions that need to be observed, different types of child restraint systems, as well as installation methods, etc., written in this manual.

Use a child restraint system when riding with a small child that cannot properly use a seat belt. For the child's safety, install the child restraint system to a rear seat. Be sure to follow the installation method that is in the operation manual enclosed with the restraint system.

Table of contents

Points to remember: P.46

Child restraint system: P.47

When using a child restraint system: P.48

Child restraint system installation method

- Fixed with a seat belt: P.50
- Fixed with an ISOFIX ridit anchor: P.51
- Using an anchor bracket (for top strap): P.52

Points to remember

- If child restraint system regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact your Lexus dealer for the child restraint system installation.
- Use a child restraint system until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- Choose a child restraint system that suits your vehicle and is appropriate to the age and size of the child.

WARNING

■ When a child is riding

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system which is correctly installed. For installation details, refer to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system. General installation instruction is provided in this manual.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the weight and size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Holding a child in your or someone else's arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield or between the holder and the interior of the vehicle.

■ Handling the child restraint system

If the child restraint system is not properly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving, or an accident.

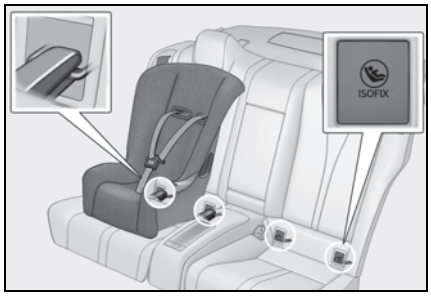
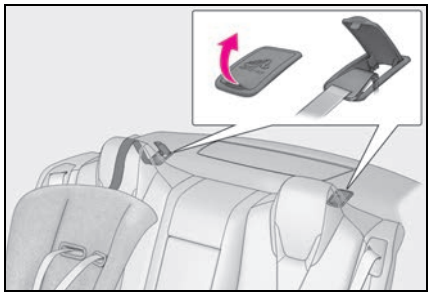
WARNING

- If the vehicle were to receive a strong impact from an accident, etc., it is possible that the child restraint system has damage that is not readily visible. In such cases, do not reuse the restraint system.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided with the child restraint system manufacturer and that the system is properly secured.
- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the trunk.

Child restraint system

Types of child restraint system installation methods

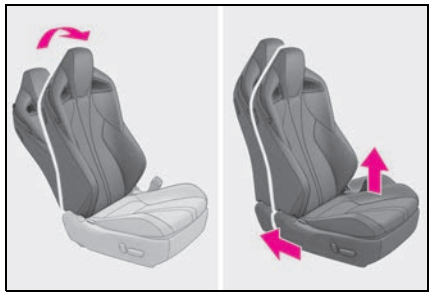
Confirm with the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system about the installation of the child restraint system.

Installation method		Page
Seat belt attachment		P.50
ISOFIX rigid anchor attachment		P.51
Anchor brackets (for top strap) attachment		P.52

When using a child restraint system

■ When installing a child restraint system to a front passenger seat

For the safety of a child, install child restraint systems to a rear seat. When installing child restraint system to a front passenger seat is unavoidable, adjust the passenger seat as follows and install the child restraint system.



● Move the front seat fully rearward.

- Adjust the seat height to the upper most position.
- Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position.

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.
- A forward-facing child restraint system may be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. A child restraint system that requires a top strap should not be used in the front passenger seat since there is no top strap anchor for the front passenger seat.
- A forward-facing child restraint system may be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, move the front seat fully rearward, adjust the seat height to the upper most position, and adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position, even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated.



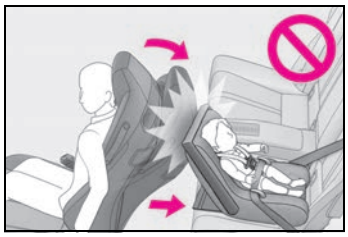
- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front pillars or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.



- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.

WARNING

- Use child restraint system suitable to the age and size of the child and install it to the rear seat.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat.



- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.

Child restraint system fixed with a seat belt

■ Installing child restraint system using a seat belt

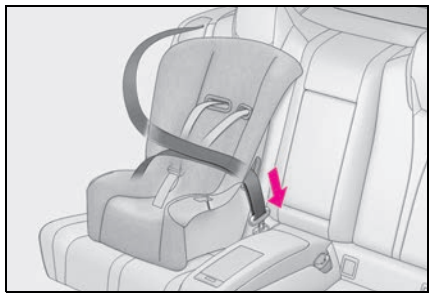
Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

1 When using the front passenger seat: Adjust the seat

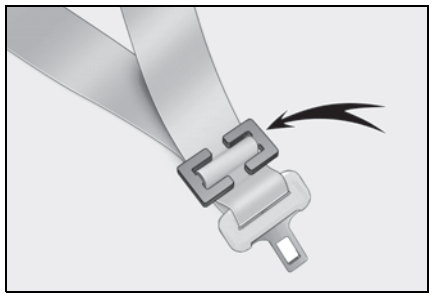
If installing the child restraint system to the front passenger seat is unavoidable, refer to P.48 for front passenger seat adjustment.

2 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Securely fix the seat belt to the child restraint system in accordance to the directions enclosed with the child restraint system.



3 If your child restraint system is not equipped with a lock-off (a seat belt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.



4 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.51)

■ Removing a child restraint system installed with a seat belt

Press the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

When releasing the buckle, the child restraint system may spring up due to the rebound of the seat cushion. Release the buckle while holding down the child restraint system.

Since the seat belt automatically reels itself, slowly return it to the stowing position.

■ When installing a child restraint system

You may need a locking clip to install the child restraint system. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system. If your child restraint system does not provide a locking clip, you can purchase the following item from your Lexus dealer: Locking clip for child restraint system (Part No. 73119-22010)

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

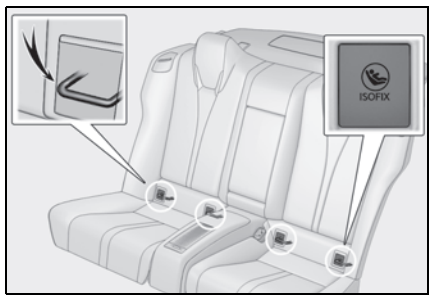
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
  If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Child restraint system fixed with an ISOFIX lower anchorage

■ ISOFIX lower anchorages (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Lower anchors are provided for the each rear seats. (Mark displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)



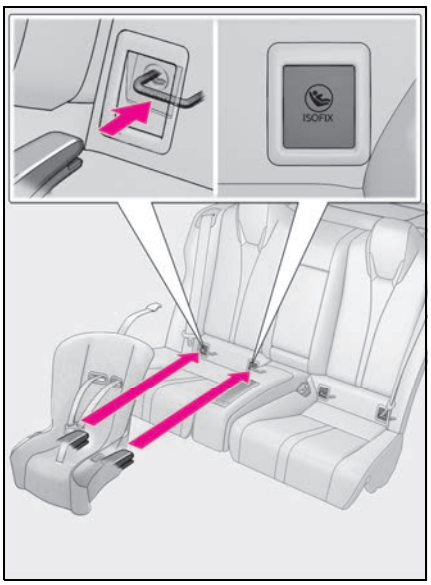
■ Installation with ISOFIX lower anchorage (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

1 Check the positions of the exclusive fixing bars, and install the child restraint system to the seat.

The bars are installed behind the anchor

covers.



2 If the child restraint has a top tether strap, follow the child restraint manufacturer's operation manual regarding the installation, using the top tether strap to latch onto the top tether strap anchor. (→P.52)

3 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.51)

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

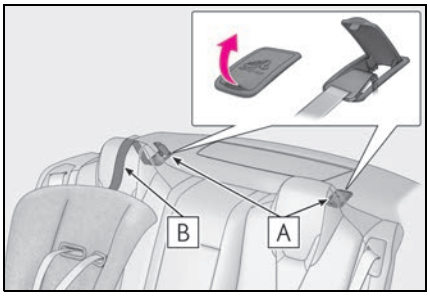
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When using the lower anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Using an anchor bracket (for top strap)

■ Anchor brackets (for top strap)

Anchor brackets are provided for the each rear seat.

Use anchor brackets when fixing the top strap.



A Anchor brackets

B Top strap

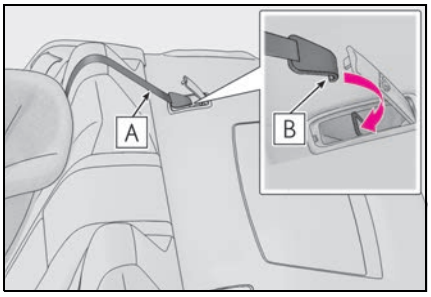
■ Fixing the top strap to the anchor bracket

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top strap.

Make sure the top strap is securely latched.

(→P.51)



A Top strap

B Hook

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Firmly attach the top strap and make sure that the belt is not twisted.
- Do not attach the top strap to anything other than the anchor bracket.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

NOTICE

■ Anchor brackets (for top strap)

When not in use, make certain to close the lid. If it remains open, the lid may be damaged.

Child restraint systems (except for Korea)

Before installing a child restraint system in the vehicle, there are precautions that need to be observed, different types of child restraint systems, as well as installation methods, etc., written in this manual.

- Use a child restraint system when riding with a small child that cannot properly use a seat belt. For the child's safety, install the child restraint system to a rear seat. Be sure to follow the installation method that is in the operation manual enclosed with the restraint system.
- For Russia and Kazakhstan: The use of a Lexus genuine child restraint system is recommended, as it is safer to use in this vehicle. Lexus genuine child restraint systems are made specifically for Lexus vehicles. They can be purchased at a Lexus dealer.

Table of contents

Points to remember: P.54

When using a child restraint system: P.55

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position: P.59, 63, 67, 70

Child restraint system installation method: P.74

- Fixed with a seat belt: P.75

- Fixed with an ISOFIX lower anchorage: P.77
- Using a top tether anchorage: P.78

Points to remember

- If child restraint system regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact your Lexus dealer for the child restraint system installation.
- Use a child restraint system until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- Choose a child restraint system appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- Note that not all child restraint systems can fit in all vehicles.
  Before using or purchasing a child restraint system, check the compatibility of the child restraint system with seat positions.

⚠ WARNING

■ When a child is riding

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system which is correctly installed. For installation details, refer to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system. General installation instruction is provided in this manual.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the weight and size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Holding a child in your or someone else's arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield or between the holder and the interior of the vehicle.

■ Handling the child restraint system

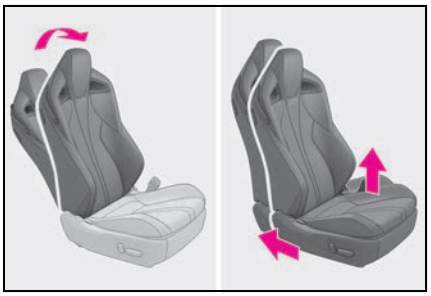
If the child restraint system is not properly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving, or an accident.

- If the vehicle were to receive a strong impact from an accident, etc., it is possible that the child restraint system has damage that is not readily visible. In such cases, do not reuse the restraint system.
- Depending on the child restraint system, installation may be difficult or impossible. In those cases, check whether the child restraint system is suitable for installment in the vehicle. (→P.59, 63, 67, 70) Be sure to install and observe the usage rules after carefully reading the child restraint system fixing method in this manual, as well as the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.
- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the trunk.

When using a child restraint system

When installing a child restraint system to a front passenger seat (except for Taiwan)

For the safety of a child, install a child restraint system to a rear seat. When installing child restraint system to a front passenger seat is unavoidable, adjust the seat as follows and install the child restraint system.



- Move the front seat fully rearward.
- Adjust the seat height to the upper most position.
- Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position.

Vehicles without an airbag manual on-off system: If there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.

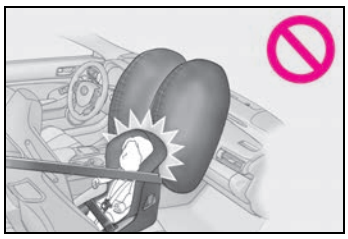
Vehicles with an airbag manual on-off system: When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.

WARNING

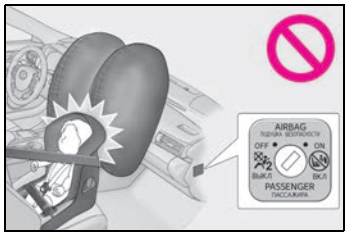
When installing a child restraint system (except for Taiwan)

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Vehicles without an airbag manual on-off switch: Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.
  The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.

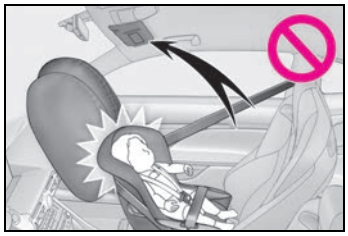


- Vehicles with an airbag manual on-off switch: Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on. (→P.44)
  The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.



WARNING

- There is a label(s) on the passenger side sun visor, indicating it is forbidden to attach a rear-facing child restraint system to the front passenger seat. Details of the label(s) are shown in the illustration below.



WARNING



WARNING

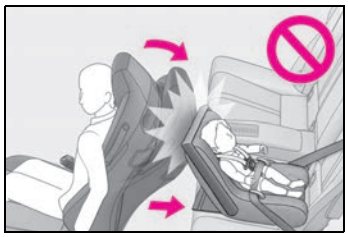
- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).



- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front pillars or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.



- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Use child restraint system suitable to the age and size of the child and install it to the rear seat.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat (left-hand drive vehicles) or the left-hand rear seat (right-hand drive vehicles).

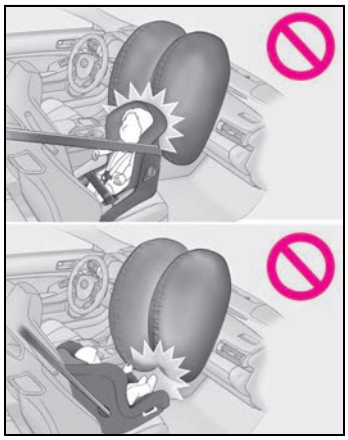


- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.

■ When installing a child restraint system (for Taiwan)

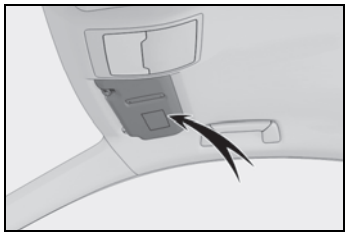
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Never use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.
  The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.



WARNING

- There is a label(s) on the passenger side sun visor, indicating it is forbidden to attach a child restraint system to the front passenger seat. Details of the label(s) are shown in the illustration below.



WARNING

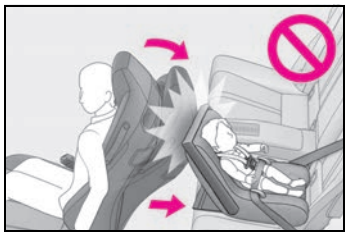


WARNING

- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front pillars or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.



- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Use child restraint system suitable to the age and size of the child and install it to the rear seat.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat.



- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position (for South Africa)

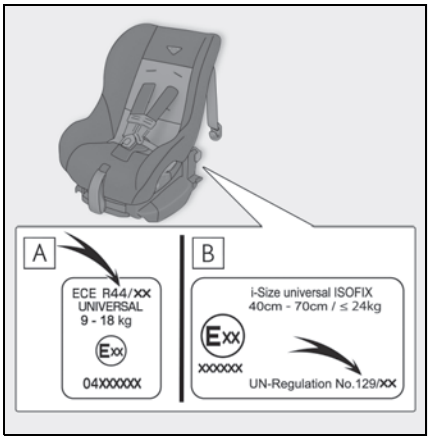
■ Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.60) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols.
Check the selected child restraint system together with the following [Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems].

■ Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

1 Checking the child restraint system standards.
Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44[*1] or UN(ECE) R129[*1, 2].
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.
Check for an approval mark

attached to the child restraint system.



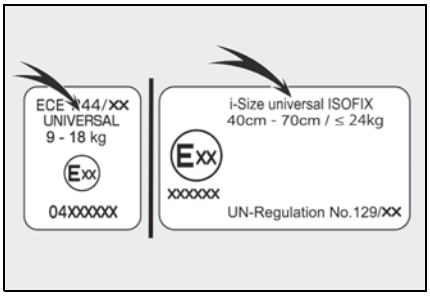
Example of the displayed regulation Number

A UN(ECE) R44 approval mark*3
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.

B UN(ECE) R129 approval mark*3
The height range of the child who is applicable as well as available weights for an UN(ECE) R129 approval mark is indicated.

2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.
Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.
Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

- "universal"
- "semi-universal"
- "restricted"
- "vehicle specific"

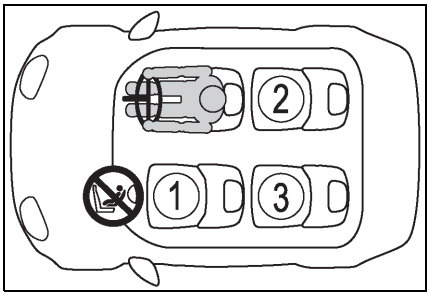


*1: UN(ECE) R44 and UN(ECE) R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

*2: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

*3: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems



1 *1, 2	U *3
2	U, ISOFIX, Top tether
3	U, ISOFIX, Top tether

U Suitable for "universal" category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.

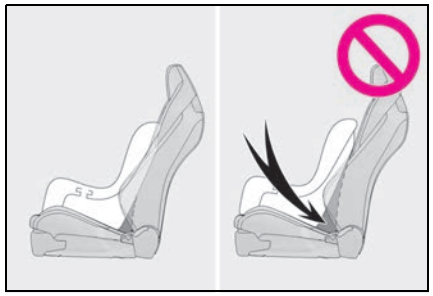
Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint system.

Includes a top tether anchorage point.

Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on.

*1: Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.

*2: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



*3: Use only a front-facing child restraint system when the airbag manual on-off switch is on.

■ Detail information for child restraint systems installation

Seating position				
Seat position number	①		②	③
	Airbag manual on-off switch			
	ON	OFF		
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes Forward facing only	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	No	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No	No
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	No	No	R1*	R1*
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	No	No	F2X, F2	F2X, F2
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	No	No	No

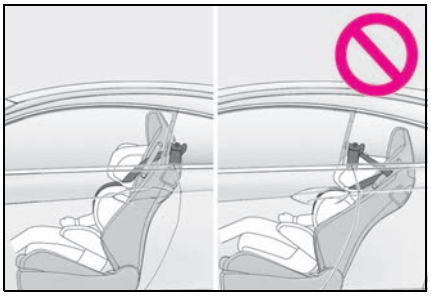
*: Adjust the position of the front seat as far forward as possible.

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different “fixture”. The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for “fixture” mentioned in the table above. For kind of “fixture” relation, confirm the following table.
If your child restraint system has no kind of “fixture” (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system “vehicle list” for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems

Fixture	Description
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.



- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position (for Hong Kong and Malaysia)

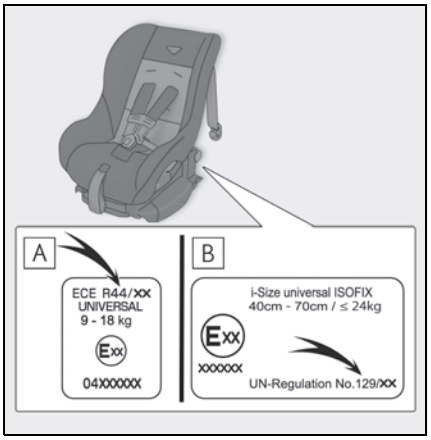
■ Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.64) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols.
Check the selected child restraint system together with the following [Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems].

■ Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

1 Checking the child restraint system standards.
Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44[*1] or UN(ECE) R129[*1, 2].
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.
Check for an approval mark

attached to the child restraint system.



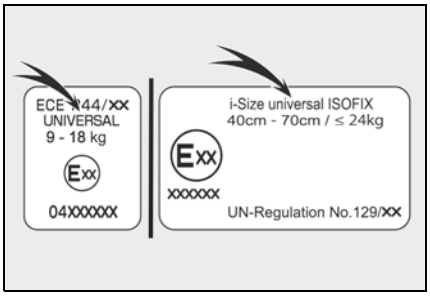
Example of the displayed regulation Number

A UN(ECE) R44 approval mark*3
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.

B UN(ECE) R129 approval mark*3
The height range of the child who is applicable as well as available weights for an UN(ECE) R129 approval mark is indicated.

2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.
Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.
Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

- "universal"
- "semi-universal"
- "restricted"
- "vehicle specific"

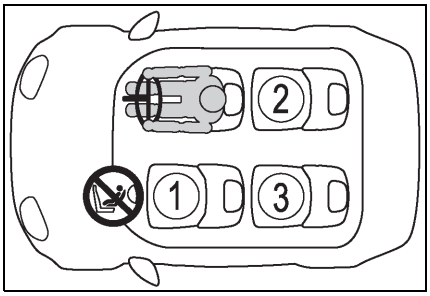


*1: UN(ECE) R44 and UN(ECE) R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

*2: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

*3: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems



1 *1, 2	U *3
2	U
3	U

U Suitable for "universal" category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.

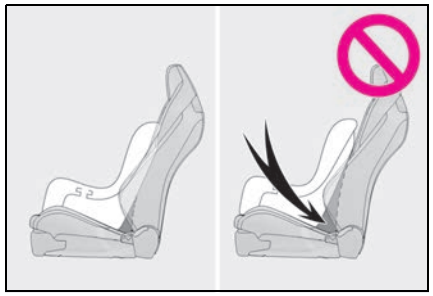
Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint system.

Includes a top tether anchorage point.

Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

*1: Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.

*2: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



*3: Use only a front-facing child restraint system.

■ Detail information for child restraint systems installation

Seating position			
Seat position number	①	②	③
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes Forward facing only	Yes	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	No	R1*	R1*
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	No	F2X, F2	F2X, F2
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	No	No

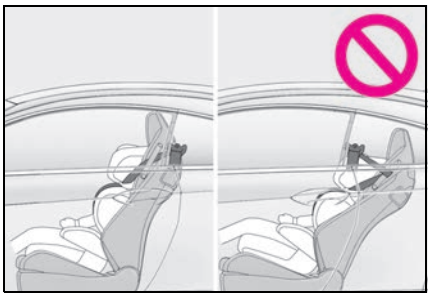
*: Adjust the position of the front seat as far forward as possible.

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different "fixture". The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for "fixture" mentioned in the table above. For kind of "fixture" relation, confirm the following table.
If your child restraint system has no kind of "fixture" (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system "vehicle list" for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat

Fixture	Description
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.



- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position (for Taiwan)

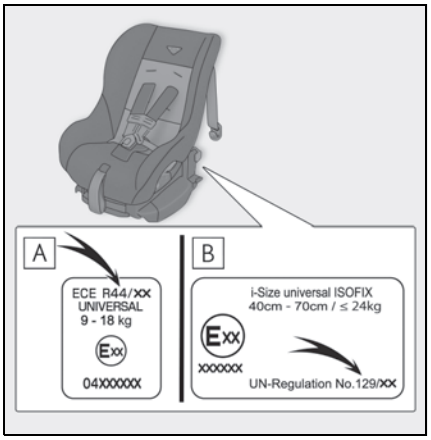
■ Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.68) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols.
Check the selected child restraint system together with the following [Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems].

■ Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

1 Checking the child restraint system standards.
Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44[*1] or UN(ECE) R129[*1, 2].
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.
Check for an approval mark

attached to the child restraint system.



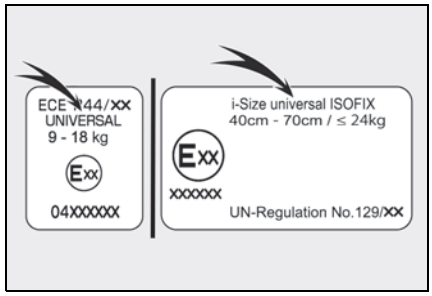
Example of the displayed regulation Number

A UN(ECE) R44 approval mark*3
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.

B UN(ECE) R129 approval mark*3
The height range of the child who is applicable as well as available weights for an UN(ECE) R129 approval mark is indicated.

2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.
Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.
Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

- "universal"
- "semi-universal"
- "restricted"
- "vehicle specific"

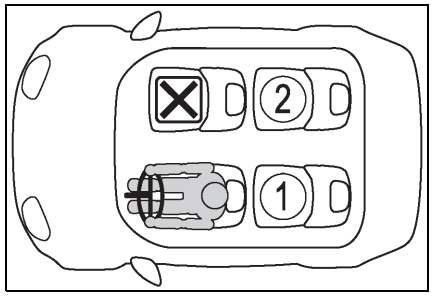


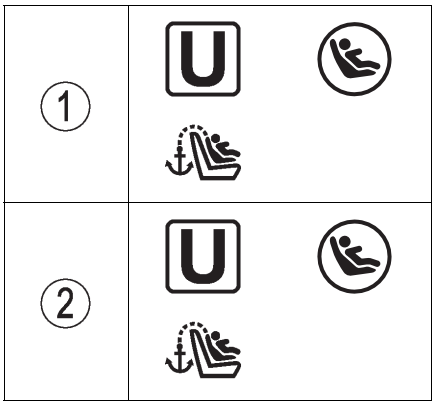
*1: UN(ECE) R44 and UN(ECE) R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

*2: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

*3: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems





Suitable for "universal" category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.

Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint system.

Includes a top tether anchorage point.

Not suitable for child restraint system.

■ Detail information for child restraint systems installation

Seating position		
Seat position number	1	2
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	R1*	R1*
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	F2X, F2	F2X, F2
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	No

*: Adjust the position of the front seat as far forward as possible.

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different "fixture". The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for "fixture" mentioned in the table above. For kind of "fixture" relation, confirm the following table.
If your child restraint system has no kind of "fixture" (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system "vehicle list" for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems

Fixture	Description
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.

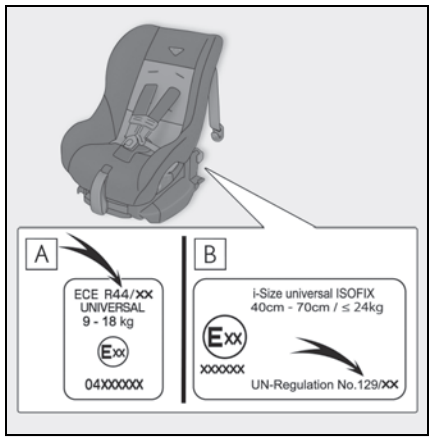
Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position (for Russia and Kazakhstan)

■ Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.71) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols. Also, the recommended child restraint system that is suitable for your child can be selected.
Otherwise, check [Recommended child restraint systems and Compatibility table] for recommended child restraint systems. (→P.73)
Check the selected child restraint system together with the following [Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems].

■ Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

1 Checking the child restraint system standards.
Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44*1 or UN(ECE) R129*1, 2.
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.
Check for an approval mark attached to the child restraint system.



Example of the displayed regulation Num-

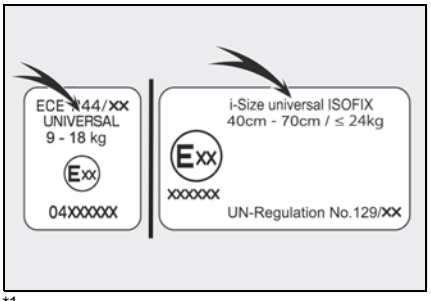
ber

A UN(ECE) R44 approval mark*3
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.

B UN(ECE) R129 approval mark*3
The height range of the child who is applicable as well as available weights for an UN(ECE) R129 approval mark is indicated.

2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.
Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.
Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

- "universal"
- "semi-universal"
- "restricted"
- "vehicle specific"

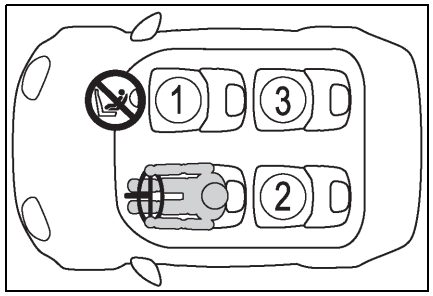


*1: UN(ECE) R44 and UN(ECE) R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

*2: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

*3: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems



1 *1, 2	U *3	L
2	U	L
3	U	L

U Suitable for "universal" category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.

L Suitable for child restraint systems given on recommended child restraint systems and compatibility table (→P.73)

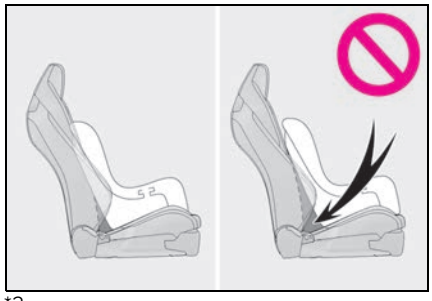
Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint system.

Includes a top tether anchorage point.

Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on.

*1: Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.

*2: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



*3: Use only a front-facing child restraint system when the airbag manual on-off switch is on.

■ Detail information for child restraint systems installation

Seating position				
Seat position number	①		②	③
	Airbag manual on-off switch			
	ON	OFF		
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes Forward facing only	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	No	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No	No
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	No	No	R1*	R1*
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	No	No	F2X, F2	F2X, F2
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	No	No	No

*: Adjust the position of the front seat as far forward as possible.

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different “fixture”. The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for “fixture” mentioned in the

table above. For kind of "fixture" relation, confirm the following table.
If your child restraint system has no kind of "fixture" (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system "vehicle list" for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

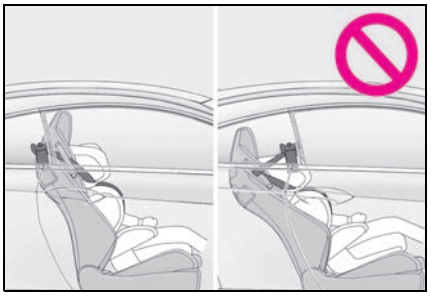
Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

■ **Recommended child restraint systems and Compatibility table**

Mass groups	Recommended Child Restraint System	Seating position			
		①		②	③
		Airbag manual on-off switch			
		ON	OFF		
0, 0+ Up to 13 kg (28 lb.)	G0+, BABY SAFE PLUS (Yes/No)	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	G0+ BABY SAFE PLUS with SEAT BELT FIXATION, BASE PLATFORM (Yes/No)	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
I 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.)	LEXUS DUO PLUS (Yes/No)	Yes Belt fix only	Yes Belt fix only	Yes	Yes

The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside the EU area.

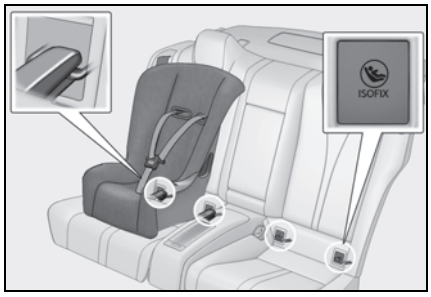
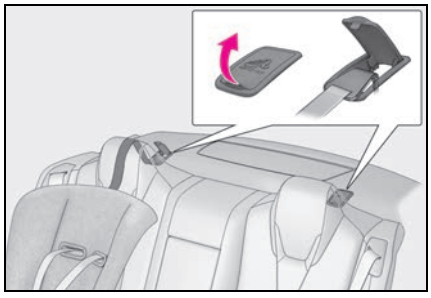
- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.



- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

Child restraint system installation method

Confirm with the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system about the installation of the child restraint system.

Installation method		Page
Seat belt attachment		P.75
ISOFIX lower anchorage attachment		P.77
Top tether anchorage attachment		P.78

Child restraint system fixed with a seat belt

■ Installing child restraint system using a seat belt

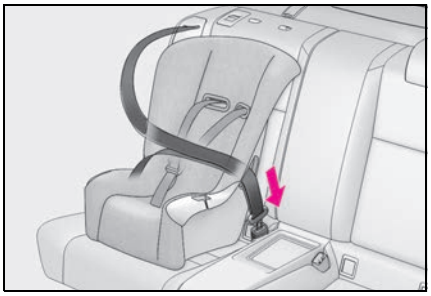
Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

If the child restraint system on hand is not within the "universal" category (or the necessary information is not in the table), refer to the "Vehicle List" provided by the child restraint system maker for various possible installation positions, or check the compatibility after asking the retailer of the child seat. (→P.59, 63, 67, 70)

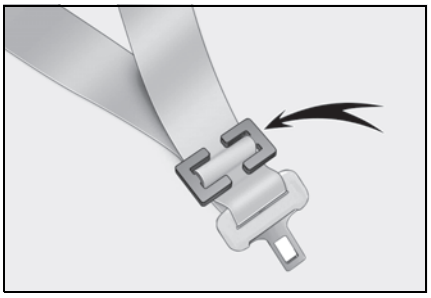
1 If installing the child restraint system to the front passenger seat is

unavoidable, refer to P.55 for the front passenger seat adjustment.

2 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted. Securely fix the seat belt to the child restraint system in accordance to the directions enclosed with the child restraint system.



3 If your child restraint system is not equipped with a lock-off (a seat belt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.



4 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.76)

■ Removing a child restraint system installed with a seat belt

Press the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

When releasing the buckle, the child restraint system may spring up due to the rebound of the seat cushion. Release the buckle while holding down the child restraint system.

Since the seat belt automatically reels itself, slowly return it to the stowing position.

■ When installing a child restraint system

You may need a locking clip to install the child restraint system. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system. If your child restraint system does not provide a locking clip, you can purchase the following item from your Lexus dealer: Locking clip for child restraint system (Part No. 73119-22010)

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death. If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.

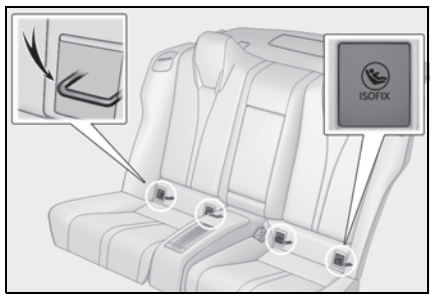
WARNING

- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Child restraint system fixed with an ISOFIX lower anchorage

■ ISOFIX lower anchorages (ISOFIX child restraint system)

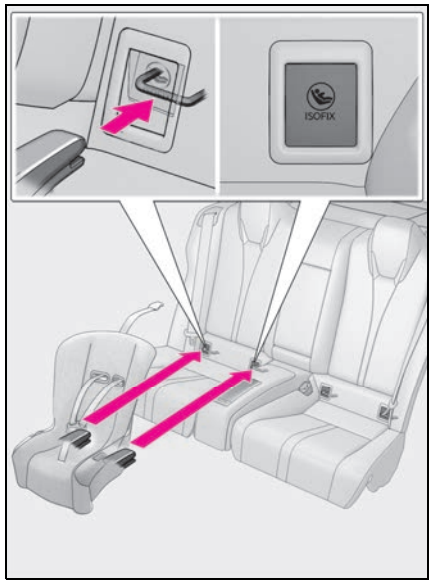
Lower anchorages are provided for the each rear seats. (Mark displaying the location of the anchorages are attached to the seats.)



■ Installation with ISOFIX lower anchorage (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.
If the child restraint system on hand is not within the "universal" category (or the necessary information is not in the table), refer to the "Vehicle List" provided by the child restraint system maker for various possible installation positions, or check the compatibility after asking the retailer of the child seat. (→P.59, 63, 67, 70)

1 Check the positions of the exclusive fixing bars, and install the child restraint system to the seat.



2 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.76)

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

WARNING

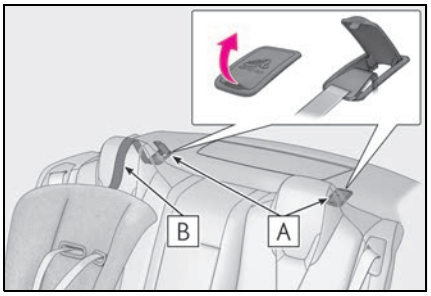
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When using the lower anchorages, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchorages and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Using a top tether anchorage

■ Top tether anchorages

Top tether anchorages are provided for the each rear seat.

Use top tether anchorages when fixing the top strap.



A Top tether anchorages

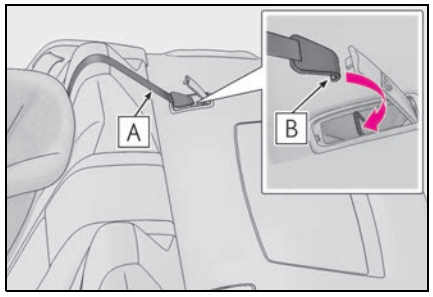
B Top strap

■ Fixing the top strap to the top tether anchorages

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top strap.

Make sure the top strap is securely latched. (→P.76)



A Top strap

B Hook

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Firmly attach the top strap and make sure that the belt is not twisted.
- Do not attach the top strap to anything other than the top tether anchorage.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

NOTICE

■ Top tether anchorages

When not in use, make certain to close the lid. If it remains open, the lid may be damaged.

ERA-GLONASS/EVAK*1, 2

*1: If equipped

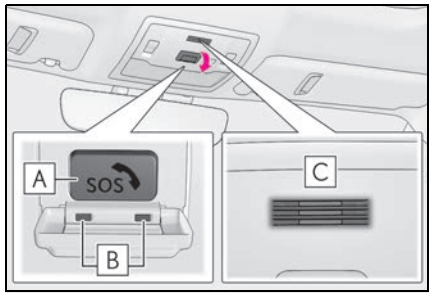
*2: Operates within the ERA-GLONASS/EVAK coverage. The system name differs depending on the country.

The Emergency Call system is a device installed on a vehicle to determine its location and movement direction (using GLONASS [Global Navigation Satellite System] and GPS [Global Positioning System] signals), and ensure the generation and transmission of vehicle information (in a nonadjustable form) in case of traffic accidents or other incidents on motor roads in the Russian Federation/Kazakhstan. In addition, it ensures two-way voice communication between the vehicle and an ERA-GLONASS/EVAK system operator through cellular networks (GSM).

Automatic Emergency Calls (via Automatic Collision Notification) and manual Emergency Calls (by pressing the "SOS" button) can be made to the ERA-GLONASS/EVAK control center.

This service is mandatory according to the technical regulations of the Customs Union.

System components



A "SOS" button*

B Indicator lights

C Microphone

*: This button is intended for communication with the ERA-GLONASS/EVAK system operator.
Other SOS buttons available in other systems of a motor vehicle do not relate to the device and are not intended for communication with the ERA-GLONASS/EVAK system operator.

Emergency Notification Services

■ Automatic Emergency Calls

If any airbag deploys, the system is designed to automatically call the ERA-GLONASS/EVAK control center.* The answering operator receives the vehicle's location, the time of the incident and the vehicle VIN, and attempts to speak with the vehicle occupants to assess the situation. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the operator automatically treats the call as an emergency and contacts the

nearest emergency services provider (112 system etc.) to describe the situation and request that assistance be sent to the location.

*: In some cases, the call cannot be made. (→P.81)

Manual Emergency Calls

In the event of an emergency, press the "SOS" button to call the ERA-GLONASS/EVAK control center.* The answering operator will determine your vehicle's location, assess the situation, and dispatch the necessary assistance required.

If you accidentally press the "SOS" button, tell the operator that you are not experiencing an emergency.

*: In some cases, the call cannot be made. (→P.81)

Indicator lights

When the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the red indicator light will illuminate for 10 seconds and then the green indicator light will illuminate, indicating that the system is enabled. The indicator lights indicate the following:

- If the green indicator light illuminates and stays on, the system is enabled.
- If the green indicator light flashes twice per second, an automatic or manual Emergency Call is being made.
- If no indicator lights illuminate, the system is not enabled.
- If the red indicator light illuminates at any time other than immediately after the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the system may be malfunctioning or the backup battery may be depleted.
- If the red indicator light blinks for approximately 30 seconds during an Emergency Call, the call has been disconnected or the cellular network signal is weak.

The service life of the backup battery does not exceed 3 years.

Device test mode

A test mode is provided for to check the performance of the Emergency Call system. To test the device, contact any authorized Lexus retailer or Lexus authorized repairer, or any reliable repairer.

WARNING

When the Emergency Call may not be made

- It may not be possible to make Emergency Calls in any of the following situations. In such cases, report to emergency services provider (112 system etc.) by other means such as nearby public phones.
  - Even when the vehicle is in the cellular phone service area, it may be difficult to connect to the ERA-GLONASS/EVAK control center if the reception is poor or the line is busy. In such cases, even though the system attempts to connect to the ERA-GLONASS/EVAK control center, you may not be able to connect to the ERA-GLONASS/EVAK control center to make Emergency Calls and contact emergency services.
  - When the vehicle is out of the cellular phone service area, the Emergency Calls cannot be made.
  - When any related equipment (such as the "SOS" button panel, indicator lights, microphone, speaker, DCM, antenna, or any wires connecting the equipment) is malfunctioning, damaged or broken, the Emergency Call cannot be made.
  - During an Emergency Call, the system makes repeated attempts to connect to the ERA-GLONASS/EVAK control center. However, if it cannot connect to the ERA-GLONASS/EVAK control center due to poor radio wave reception, the system may not be able to connect to the cellular network and the call may finish without connecting. The red indicator light will blink for approximately 30 seconds to indicate this disconnection.
  - This device may not function if a shock is applied to it.
- If the battery's voltage decreases or there is a disconnection, the system may not be able to connect to the ERA-GLONASS/EVAK control center.

When the Emergency Call system is replaced with a new one

The Emergency Call system should be registered. Contact any authorized Lexus retailer or Lexus authorized repairer, or any reliable repairer.

For your safety

- Please drive safely.
  The function of this system is to assist you in making the Emergency Call in case of accidents such as traffic accidents or sudden medical emergencies, and it does not protect the driver or passengers in any way. Please drive safely and fasten your seatbelts at all times for your safety.
- In case of an emergency, make lives the top priority.
- If you smell anything burning or other unusual smells, leave the vehicle and evacuate to a safe area immediately.
- Since the system detects shocks, the automatic reporting may not always occur synchronized with the operation of the airbag system. (If the vehicle is struck from behind, etc.)
- For safety, do not make the Emergency Call while driving.
  Making calls during driving may cause mishandling of the steering wheel, which may lead to unexpected accidents.
  Stop the vehicle and confirm the safety of your surroundings before making the Emergency Call.
- When changing fuses, please use the specified fuses. Using other fuses may cause ignition or smoke in the circuit and lead to a fire.

WARNING

- Using the system while there is smoke or an unusual smell may cause a fire. Stop using the system immediately and consult any authorized Lexus retailer or Lexus authorized repairer, or any reliable repairer.

NOTICE

To prevent damage

Do not pour any liquids onto the "SOS" button panel, etc. and do not impact it.

If the "SOS" button panel, speaker or microphone malfunctions during an Emergency Call or manual maintenance check

It may not be possible to make Emergency Calls, confirm the system status, or communicate with the ERA-GLONASS/EVAK control center operator. If any of the above equipment is damaged, please consult any authorized Lexus retailer, Lexus authorized repairer, or any reliable repairer.

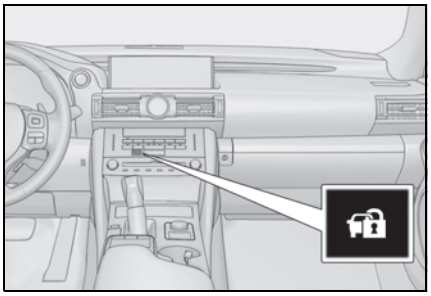
Engine immobilizer system

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if a key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

This system is designed to help prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all vehicle thefts.

Operating the system



The indicator light flashes after the engine switch has been turned off to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the engine switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.

■ System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type engine immobilizer system.

■ Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction

- If the grip portion of the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key registered to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

NOTICE

■ To ensure the system operates correctly

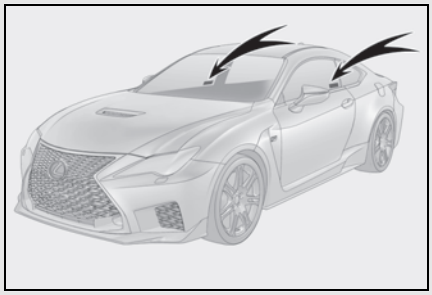
Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Double locking system*

*: If equipped

Unauthorized access to the vehicle is prevented by disabling the door unlocking function from both the interior and exterior of the vehicle.

Vehicles employing this system have labels on the side windows.



Setting/canceling the double locking system

■ Setting

Turn the engine switch off, have all the passengers exit the vehicle and ensure that both side doors are closed.

Using the entry function: Touch the sensor area on the outside door handle twice within 5 seconds.
Using the wireless remote control:

Press twice within 5 seconds.

■ Canceling

Using the entry function: Hold the outside door handle.
Using the wireless remote control:

Press .

WARNING

■ **Double locking system precaution**

Never activate the double locking system when there are people in the vehicle because both side doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

Alarm

The alarm uses light and sound to give an alert when an intrusion is detected.
The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

▶ Type A*1

- A locked door is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function, wireless remote control or mechanical key. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The trunk is opened in any way other than using the entry function or wireless remote control.
- The hood is opened.
- The intrusion sensor detects something moving inside the vehicle. (Example: an intruder breaks a window and gets into the vehicle.) (if equipped)

▶ Type B*2

- A locked door or trunk is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function or wireless remote control. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened.
- The intrusion sensor detects something moving inside the vehicle. (Example: an intruder breaks a window and gets into the vehicle.) (if equipped)
- The tilt sensor detects a change of vehicle inclination. (if equipped)

*1: For Hong Kong, Brunei, Singapore, Macau, GCC countries*3, Jordan, Lebanon, Chile, Guatemala, Panama, Peru, Dominica, Costa Rica and Indonesia

*2: For Korea, Russia, Kazakhstan, South Africa, Malaysia, Taiwan and Philippines

*3: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar and Kuwait

Setting/deactivating/stopping the alarm system

Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following:

- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows and moon roof (if equipped) are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

■ Setting

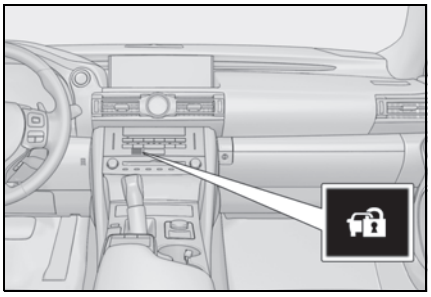
Close the doors, trunk and hood, and lock both side doors using the entry function or wireless remote control. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

Type A*1: The alarm can also be set using the mechanical key.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.

*1: For Hong Kong, Brunei, Singapore, Macau, GCC countries *2, Jordan, Lebanon, Chile, Panama, Peru, Dominica, Costa Rica and Indonesia

*2: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar and Kuwait



■ Deactivating or stopping

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm:

- Unlock the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control. (Type A*1: The mechanical key can also be used.)
- Open the trunk using the entry function or wireless remote control.
- Type A*1: Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)
- Type B*2: Start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

*1: For Hong Kong, Brunei, Singapore, Macau, GCC countries *3, Jordan, Lebanon, Chile, Panama, Peru, Dominica, Costa Rica and Indonesia

*2: For Korea, Russia, Kazakhstan, South Africa, Malaysia, Taiwan and Philippines

*3: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar and Kuwait

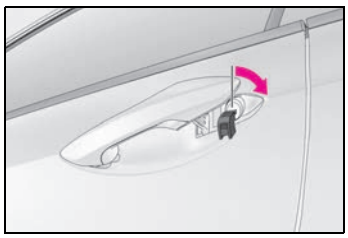
■ System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

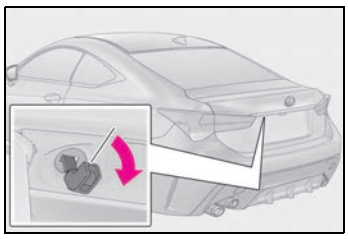
■ Triggering of the alarm

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations:
(Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)

- Type B*: The doors are unlocked using the mechanical key.



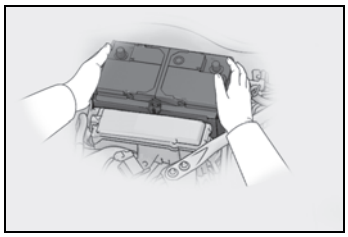
- The trunk is opened using the mechanical key.



● A person inside the vehicle opens a door, the trunk or hood, or unlocks the vehicle using an inside lock button.



● The battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked. (→P.387)



*: For Korea, Russia, Kazakhstan, South Africa, Malaysia, Taiwan and Philippines

■ Alarm-operated door lock

In the following cases, depending on the situation, the door may automatically lock to prevent improper entry into the vehicle:

● When a person remaining in the vehicle unlocks the door and the alarm is activated.

● While the alarm is activated, a person remaining in the vehicle unlocks the door.

● When recharging or replacing the battery

NOTICE

■ To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Intrusion sensor (if equipped)/Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor (if equipped)

■ The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor detection

● The intrusion sensor detects intruders or movement in the vehicle.

● The tilt sensor detects changes in vehicle inclination, such as when the vehicle is towed away.

This system is designed to deter and prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all intrusions.

■ Setting the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will be set automatically when the alarm is set. (→P.86)

■ Canceling the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

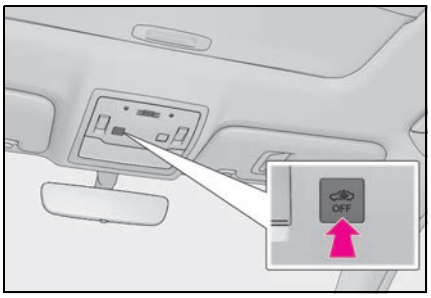
If you are leaving pets or other moving things inside the vehicle, make sure to disable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor before setting the alarm, as they will respond to movement inside the vehicle.

1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Press the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch.

Press the switch again to re-enable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor.

Each time the intrusion sensor is canceled/set, a message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.



■ Canceling and automatic re-enabling of the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

- The alarm will still be set even when the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled.
- After the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled, pressing the engine switch or unlocking the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control will re-enable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor. (Type A*1: The mechanical key can also be used.)
- The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will automatically be re-enabled when the alarm system is deactivated.

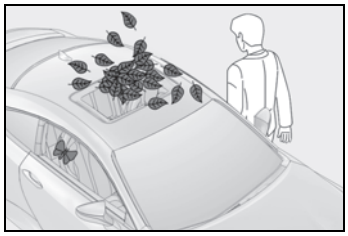
*1: For Hong Kong, Brunei, Singapore, Macau, GCC countries*2, Jordan, Lebanon, Chile, Panama, Peru, Dominica, Costa Rica and Indonesia

*2: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar and Kuwait

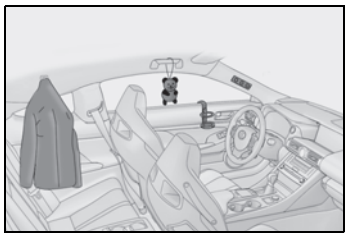
■ Intrusion sensor detection considerations

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

- A window or the moon roof is open. In this case, the sensor may detect the following:
  - Wind or the movement of objects such as leaves and insects inside the vehicle
  - Ultrasonic waves emitted from devices such as the intrusion sensors of other vehicles
  - The movement of people outside the vehicle



- Unstable items, such as dangling accessories or clothes hanging on the coat hooks, are in the vehicle.



- Places with extreme vibrations or noises, or situations in which the vehicle is subject to repeated impacts or vibrations:
  - When parked in a parking garage
  - When ice adhering to the vehicle is removed
  - When the vehicle is in an automatic or high-pressure car wash
  - When in a hail or lightning storm

■ Tilt sensor detection considerations

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

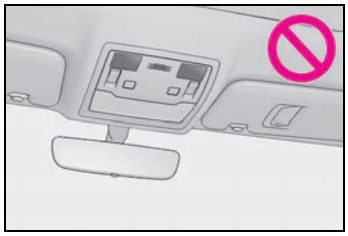
- The vehicle is transported by a ferry, trailer, train, etc.
- The vehicle is parked in a parking garage.
- The vehicle is inside a car wash that moves the vehicle.

- Any of the tires loses air pressure.
- The vehicle is jacked up.
- An earthquake occurs or the road caves in.

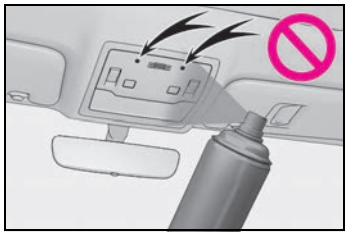
NOTICE

■ To ensure the intrusion sensor function correctly

- To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



- Do not spray air fresheners or other products directly into the sensor holes.



- Installing accessories other than genuine Lexus parts or leaving objects between the driver's seat and front passenger's seat may reduce the detection performance.

Vehicle status information and indicators

2

2-1. Instrument cluster

Warning lights and indicators 92

Gauges and meters 96

Multi-information display..... 104

Fuel consumption information 113

Warning lights and indicators

The warning lights and indicators on the instrument cluster, center panel and outside rear view mirrors inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

Warning lights and indicators displayed on the instrument cluster

For the purpose of explanation, the following illustrations display all warning lights and indicators illuminated.



Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in the indicated vehicle systems.

- Brake system warning light*1 (→P.352)
- High coolant temperature warning light*2 (→P.352)
- Charging system warning light*1, 2 (→P.352)
- Low engine oil pressure warning light*2 (→P.352)
- Malfunction indicator lamp*1 (→P.353)
- SRS warning light*1 (→P.353)
- ABS warning light*1 (→P.353)
- Brake Override System warning light/Drive-Start Control warning light*2 (→P.353)
- Parking brake warning light (→P.354)
- Electric power steering system warning light*1 (→P.354)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert) indicator (if equipped) (→P.354)

(orange)



(flashes or illuminates) PCS warning light*1 (If equipped) (→P.354)


Slip indicator*1 (→P.355)


Automatic headlight leveling system warning light (→P.355)


Open door warning light (→P.355)


Low fuel level warning light (→P.355)


Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (→P.355)


Rear passenger's seat belt reminder lights*3 (if equipped) (→P.356)


Master warning light*1 (→P.356)


Tire pressure warning light*1 (if equipped) (→P.357)

*1: These lights turn on when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*2: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

*3: This light illuminates on the center panel.

WARNING

■ If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as the ABS and SRS warning light not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.


Turn signal indicator (→P.168)


Tail light indicator (→P.170)


Headlight high beam indicator (→P.171)



Automatic High Beam indicator (if equipped)*1 (→P.172)


Rear fog light indicator (if equipped) (→P.174)


Gear Shift Indicator (if equipped) (→P.167)



PCS warning light*1, 2 (if equipped) (→P.190)


Cruise control indicator (→P.207, 216)


Dynamic radar cruise control indicator (if equipped) (→P.207)



Cruise control "SET" indicator (→P.207, 216)


(white) LDA (Lane Departure Alert) indicator (if equipped) (→P.199)


(green)
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) indicator (if equipped) (→P.199)


(orange) (flashes)
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) indicator (if equipped) (→P.199)


BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) outside rear view mirror indicators *3, 4 (if equipped) (→P.218)


Lexus parking assist-sensor indicator (→P.226)


(flashes)
Slip indicator *1 (→P.240)



VSC OFF indicator *1, 2 (→P.240)



TRC OFF indicator *1, 2 (→P.240)


Smart entry & start system indicator *5 (→P.160)


Security indicator *6 (→P.83, 86)


Low outside temperature indicator *5, 7 (→P.92)



Eco Driving Indicator Light *1 (→P.106)



"PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator *1, 6 (if equipped) (→P.44)


"EXPERT" indicator (→P.241)



"LAUNCH" indicator (→P.233)

- Drive mode indicators


"NORMAL" indicator (→P.232)


Eco drive mode indicator (→P.232)


"SPORT S" indicator (→P.232)


"SPORT S+" indicator (→P.232)


"COSTOM" indicator (→P.232)

- TVD (Torque Vectoring Differential) control mode indicators


"STANDARD" indicator (if equipped) (→P.238)


"SLALOM" indicator (if equipped) (→P.238)


"TRACK" indicator (if equipped) (→P.238)

*1: These lights turn on when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*2: The light comes on when the system is turned off.

*3: In order to confirm operation, the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators illuminate in the following situations:

- When the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode while the BSM main switch is turned on.
- When the BSM main switch is turned on while the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

If the system is functioning correctly, the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators will turn off after a few seconds. If the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators do not illuminate or do not

turn off, there may be a malfunction in the system. If this occurs, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*4: This light illuminates on the outside rear view mirrors.

*5: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

*6: This light illuminates on the center panel.

*7: When the outside temperature is approximately 3°C (37°F) or lower, this indicator will flash for approximately 10 seconds, then stay on.

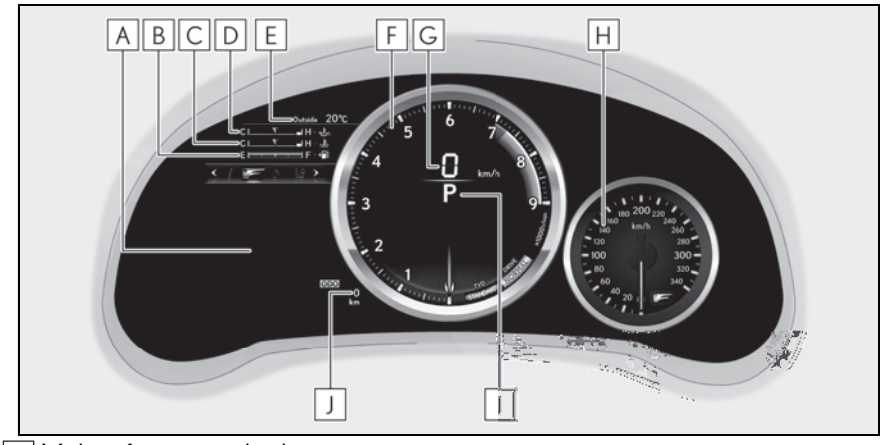
Gauges and meters

Meter display

■ Locations of gauges and meters

If the drive mode is changed, some of the meter displays and the gauge layout will be changed.

▶ Normal mode



A Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of vehicle data (→P.104)

Displays warning messages in case of a malfunction (→P.359)

B Fuel gauge

C Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicator ( ) enters the red zone, a buzzer will sound and the indicator will turn red and start flashing. Also, a warning message will be displayed.

D Engine oil temperature gauge

Displays the engine oil temperature. If the engine oil temperature gauge indicator ( ) enters the red zone, the indicator will turn red and start flashing.

E Outside temperature

Displays the outside temperature within the range of -40°C (-40°F) to 50°C (122°F). Low outside temperature indicator comes on when the ambient temperature is 3°C (37°F) or lower.

F Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

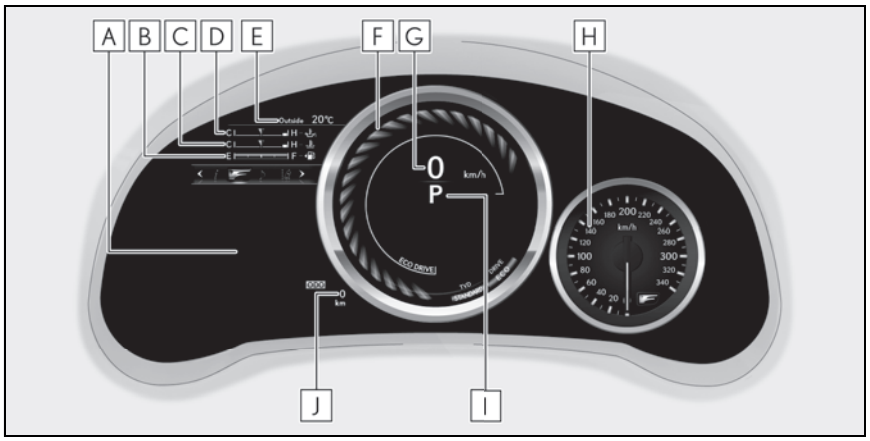
G Digital speedometer

H Analog speedometer

I Shift position/shift range/gear position (→P.163)

J Odometer and trip meter display (→P.103)

▶ Eco drive mode



A Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of vehicle data (→P.104)

Displays warning messages in case of a malfunction (→P.359)

B Fuel gauge

C Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicator ( ) enters the red zone, a buzzer will sound and the indicator will turn red and start flashing. Also, a warning message will be displayed.

D Engine oil temperature gauge

Displays the engine oil temperature. If the engine oil temperature gauge indicator ( ) enters the red zone, the indicator will turn red and start flashing.

E Outside temperature

Displays the outside temperature within the range of -40°C (-40°F) to 50°C (122°F). Low outside temperature indicator comes on when the ambient temperature is 3°C (37°F) or lower.

F Eco driving meter

Displays the vehicle acceleration. The more rapidly the vehicle is accelerated, the lower the number of blue segments displayed, indicating that your driving is less ecofriendly. This meter is designed as a guideline to show the eco-friendliness of your driving.

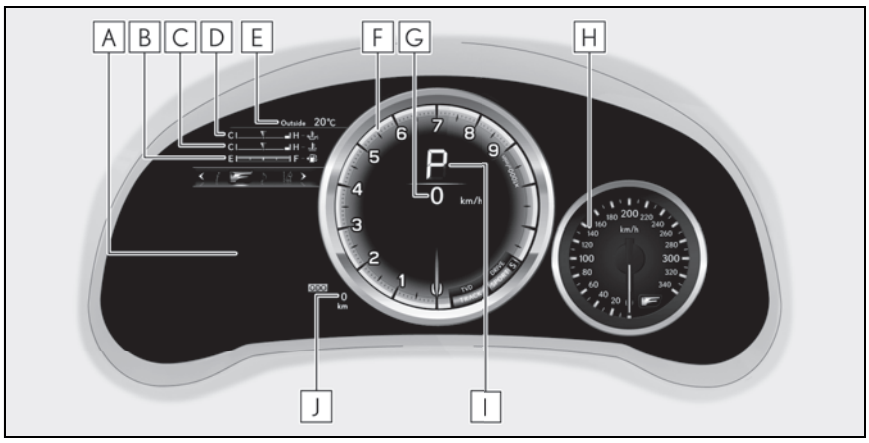
G Digital speedometer

H Analog speedometer

I Shift position/shift range/gear position (→P.163)

J Odometer and trip meter display (→P.103)

▶ SPORT S mode



These illustrations show the default meter display for SPORT S mode. The meters displays for SPORT S mode can be changed on the settings display of the multi-information display.

A Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of vehicle data (→P.104)

Displays warning messages in case of a malfunction (→P.359)

B Fuel gauge

C Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicator ( ) enters the red zone, a buzzer will sound and the indicator will turn red and start flashing. Also, a warning message will be displayed.

D Engine oil temperature gauge

Displays the engine oil temperature. If the engine oil temperature gauge indicator ( ) enters the red zone, the indicator will turn red and start flashing.

E Outside temperature

Displays the outside temperature within the range of -40°C (-40°F) to 50°C (122°F). Low outside temperature indicator comes on when the ambient temperature is 3°C (37°F) or lower.

F Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

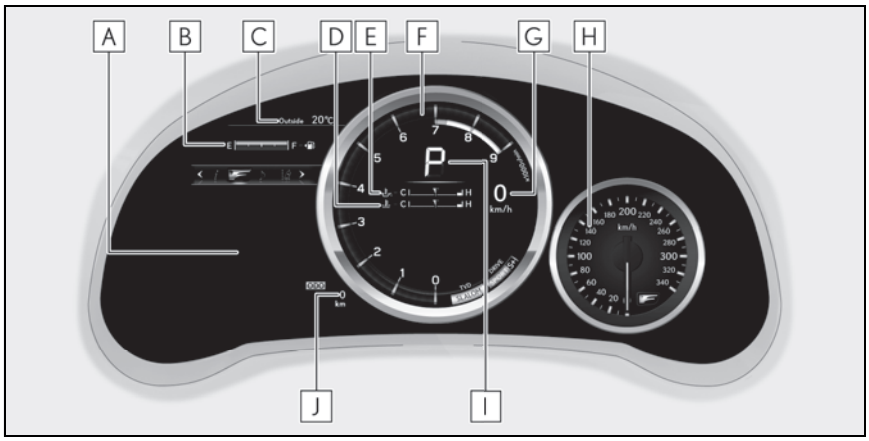
G Digital speedometer

H Analog speedometer

I Shift position/shift range/gear position (→P.163)

J Odometer and trip meter display (→P.103)

▶ SPORT S+ mode



These illustrations show the default meter display for SPORT S+ mode. The meter displays for SPORT S+ mode can be changed on the settings display of the multi-information display.

A Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of vehicle data (→P.104)

Displays warning messages in case of a malfunction (→P.359)

B Fuel gauge

C Outside temperature

Displays the outside temperature within the range of -40°C (-40°F) to 50°C (122°F). Low outside temperature indicator comes on when the ambient temperature is 3°C (37°F) or lower.

D Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicator ( ) enters the red zone, a buzzer will sound and the indicator will turn red and start

flashing. Also, a warning message will be displayed.

E Engine oil temperature gauge

Displays the engine oil temperature. If the engine oil temperature gauge indicator ( ) enters the red zone, the indicator will turn red and start flashing.

F Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

G Digital speedometer

H Analog speedometer

I Shift position/shift range/gear position (→P.163)

J Odometer and trip meter display (→P.103)

■ Speed indicator

▶ Except GCC countries*1, Jordan and Lebanon

When the vehicle reaches the set speed, the speed unit display will turn yellow.

The indicators will be displayed in yellow (corresponding to a speed set by a user) or red (fixed at 120 km/h [75 mph]*2 or 200 km/h [125 mph]*3)*4.

This setting can be enabled on the multi-information display.



▶ GCC countries*1, Jordan and Lebanon

A buzzer will sound and the speed unit display will turn yellow when the vehicle speed reaches 120 km/h (75 mph).

*1: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar and Kuwait

*2: For Taiwan, the Philippines, Korea, Brunei and Indonesia

*3: Except for Taiwan, the Philippines, Korea, Brunei and Indonesia

*4: Always observe the legal speed limit when driving on public roads.

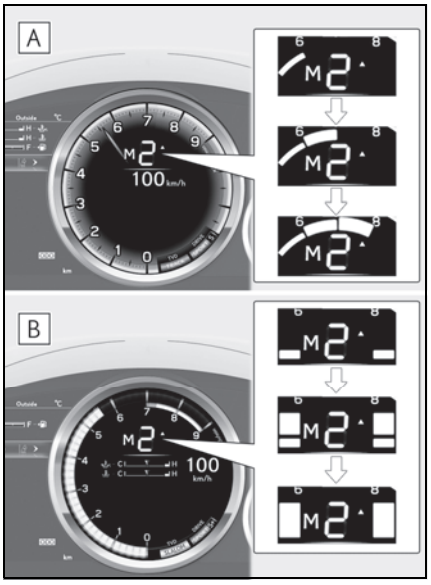
■ Rev indicator (SPORT S mode/SPORT S+ mode)

When the shift lever is in M, an indicator on the tachometer will be displayed in 3 steps. When the 3rd level indicator is displayed, the indicator will flash and a buzzer will sound to notify you of shift-up timing.

The indicator may be displayed when downshifting, depending on the engine speed.

These illustrations show the default meter display for SPORT S mode and SPORT S+ mode. The meter displays for SPORT S mode and SPORT S+ mode can be changed on the settings display of the

multi-information display.



A SPORT S mode

B SPORT S+ mode

■ **Rev peak (Normal mode/SPORT S mode)**

The engine speed reaches or exceeds 3600 r/min, an afterimage of the tachometer will be displayed at the highest engine speed for approximately 1 second.



Changing the display

■ **Meter display and layout**

If the drive mode is changed, some of the meter displays and the gauge layout will be changed. (→P.232)

■ **The meters and display illuminate when**

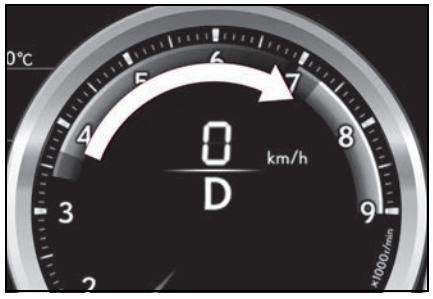
The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Welcome illumination of the analog speedometer**

- When the driver's door is opened, the analog speedometer will illuminate. Then, when the driver's door is closed, the analog speedometer will illuminate and go off (pulsate) 3 times.
- In the following situations, the analog speedometer will not pulsate even though the driver's door is opened and closed:
  - Within 60 seconds after the analog meter pulsation completes
  - Within 60 seconds of turning the engine switch off

■ **Variable red zone**

To help protect the engine, the engine speed is controlled by starting the red zone of the tachometer at different engine speeds ranging from 3700 r/min to 7300 r/min depending on the engine coolant temperature. Before driving under extremely high load conditions, make sure to sufficiently warm up the engine.



■ Eco driving meter

● The number of blue segments displayed on the eco driving meter decreases/increases depending on the vehicle acceleration. Use this meter as a guideline when you wish to drive in an eco-friendly manner that reduces fuel consumption.
However, on a downward grade where the vehicle can accelerate without the accelerator pedal being depressed, the eco driving meter may not display the eco-driving state correctly.

● When the shift lever is moved to P, N or R, the segments will turn gray and the eco driving meter will not operate.

■ Dimming the analog speedometer lighting

The analog speedometer lighting will be dimmed when the ambient light is bright, such as during the daytime, and SPORT S or SPORT S+ mode is selected.

■ Outside temperature display

● In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change:
- When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 20 km/h [12 mph])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

● When "_ _" or "E" is displayed, the system may be malfunctioning.
Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

■ Pop-up display

● In some situations, such as when a switch operation is performed, a pop-up display will be temporarily displayed on the multi-information display.

● Some pop-up displays can be set on/off. (→P.112)

■ Liquid crystal display

Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem continuing to use the display.

■ Customization

The meter display can be customized on the multi-information display. (→P.404)

WARNING

■ The information display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

For example, there is a lag between the driver's shifting and the new gear number appearing on the display. This lag could cause the driver to downshift again, causing rapid and excessive engine braking and possibly an accident resulting in death or injury.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the engine and its components

● Do not let the indicator of the tachometer enter the red zone, as it represents the engine speed range which exceeds the maximum safe engine speed.

● In the following situations, the engine may be overheating. In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P.388)
- The engine coolant temperature gauge indicator () is in the red zone and flashing.
- The engine oil temperature gauge indicator ( ) is in the red zone and flashing.

Odometer and trip meter display

Display items

● Odometer

Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

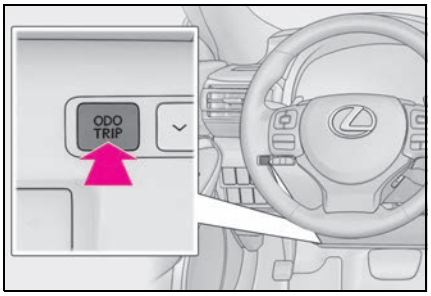
● Trip meter A/trip meter B

Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters A and B can be used to record and display different distances independently.

To reset, display the desired trip meter and press and hold the odometer/trip meter and trip meter reset button.

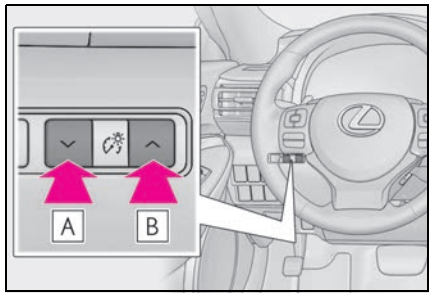
Changing the display

Each time the "ODO TRIP" switch is pressed, the displayed item will be changed. When the trip meter is displayed, pressing and holding the switch will reset the trip meter.



Changing the instrument panel light brightness

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.



A Darker

B Brighter

Instrument panel brightness adjustment

The instrument panel brightness levels when the tail lights are on and off can be adjusted individually. However, when the surroundings are bright (daytime, etc.), turning on the tail lights will not change the instrument panel brightness.

Multi-information display

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of vehicle data.

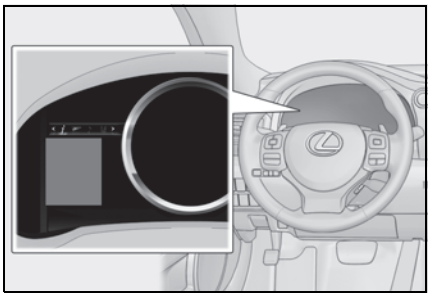
Displays and menu icons

■ Display

▶ Content display area

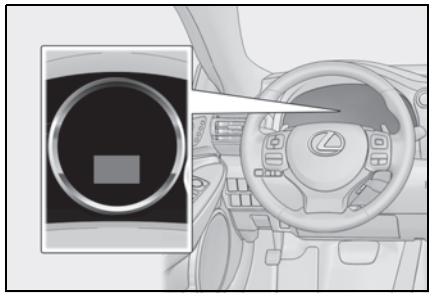
By selecting menu icons on the multi-information display, a variety of driving-related information can be displayed. The multi-information display can also be used to change display settings and other vehicle settings.

Warning or suggestion/advice pop-up displays are also displayed in certain situations.



▶ Sub-content display area

Displays some "F" content in conjunction with the content display area.



■ Menu icons

The menu icons will be displayed by pressing < or > of the meter control switch.

	Drive information
	"F" content
	Navigation system-linked display (if equipped)
	Audio system-linked display
	Driving assist system information
	Warning message display
	Settings display

■ Start-up display

When the engine is started, the name of the vehicle is displayed on the multi-information display.
While the start-up display is being displayed, the meter display cannot be changed even if the drive mode is changed.
When the start-up display is finished, the meter display for the currently selected mode will be displayed.

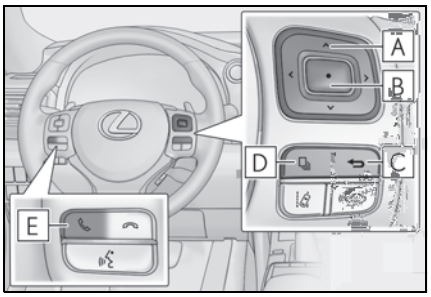
■ Liquid crystal display
→P.102

WARNING

■ The information display at low temperatures
→P.102

Changing the meter display

The multi-information display is operated using the meter control switches.



A ＜ / ＞ : Select menu icons
∧ / ∨ : Change displayed content, scroll up/down the screen and move the cursor up/down

B Press: Enter/Set
Press and hold: Reset

C Return to the previous screen
Pressing and holding the switch will display the first screen of the selected menu icon.

D Press: Display the top screen
Press and hold: Register current screen as the top screen

E Call sending/receiving and history display
Linked with the hands-free system, sending or receiving call is displayed. For details regarding the hands-free system, refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

■ Registering a top screen

The displayed top screen can be changed to a registered screen of your choice.

To register a screen as the top screen, display the desired screen and press and hold .

- A message asking to confirm if registration is desired will be displayed. If the selected screen cannot be registered, a registration failure message will be displayed.
- When no screen has been registered, the drive information screen will be displayed.

■ Resetting drive information

To reset the average fuel economy (after reset)/average vehicle speed (after reset)/elapsed time (after reset) that are displayed on , display the desired item and press and hold .

If both of the displayed items are resettable, a message will be displayed asking which item(s) to reset.

Content displayed as drive information

■ Drive information 1/Drive information 2/Drive information 3

Select to display various drive data.

Up to 2 of the following items can be selected for each drive information screen:

2

Vehicle status information and indicators

Items displayed can be switched by pressing < or > of the meter control switches to select i and pressing ^ or v.

Use the displayed values as a reference only.

● Drive information 1

- Current fuel consumption
- Average fuel economy (after reset)

● Drive information 2

- Distance (driving range)
- Average vehicle speed (after reset)

● Drive information 3

- Average fuel economy (after refuel)
- Elapsed time (after start)

Displayed items (listed below) can be changed on ⚙. (→P.112)

● Current fuel consumption

Displays instantaneous current fuel consumption

● Average fuel economy

- After reset: Displays average fuel consumption since display reset[*1, 2]
- After start: Displays average fuel consumption since engine start[*2]
- After refuel: Displays average fuel consumption since refuel[*2, 3]

● Average vehicle speed

- After reset: Displays average vehicle speed since display reset[*1]
- After start: Displays average vehicle speed since engine start

● Elapsed time

- After reset: Displays elapsed time since the display was reset[*1]
- After start: Displays elapsed time since engine start

● Distance

- Driving range: Displays driving range with remaining fuel[*3, 4]
- After start: Displays drive distance since vehicle start

● Other

Blank: No item

[*1]: Resetting: →P.105

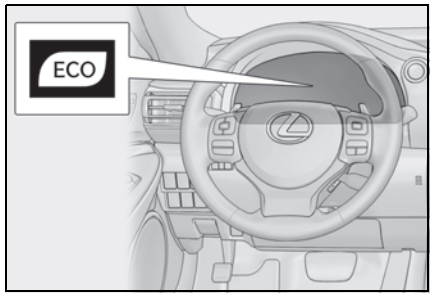
[*2]: Use the displayed fuel consumption as a reference.

[*3]: When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.
When refueling, turn the engine switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the engine switch off, the display may not be updated.

[*4]: This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

■ Eco Driving Indicator

During Eco-friendly acceleration (Eco driving), the Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn on.
When the acceleration exceeds the Zone of Eco driving, or when the vehicle is stopped, the light turns off.



Eco Driving Indicator will not operate under the following conditions:

- The shift lever is in any position other than D.
- A paddle shift switch is operated.
- Neither normal mode nor Eco drive mode is selected. (→P.232)
- The vehicle speed is approximately 130 km/h (80 mph) or higher.

■ **Tire pressure (if equipped)**

→P.328

■ **Gear positions**

Displays the current gear position when the shift lever is in D or M.

■ **Vehicle sway warning (if equipped)**

Detects the sway of the vehicle within a lane, which is often associated with a decrease in the driver's attention level, and displays the decrease in attention using a bar display.

The shorter the bar length, the more the driver may need to rest.

This display is a part of the LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) system. The display is enabled when the operating conditions of the vehicle sway warning are met. (→P.197)

■ **Blank (No items)**

Displays no drive information contents.

■ **Tire pressure (if equipped)**

- It may take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode. It may also take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- "---" may be displayed if the tire position information cannot be determined due to unfavorable radio wave conditions.
- Tire inflation pressure changes with temperature. The displayed values may also be different from the values measured using a tire pressure gauge.

"F" content

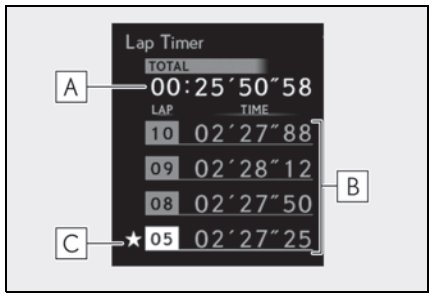
■ **Lap timer**

Measures and displays current lap time and previous lap times

- Reading the display

Measured lap times since the timer was last reset are displayed as follows:

• Content display area



A Total lap time

B Past lap times

C Fastest lap (marked with a star)

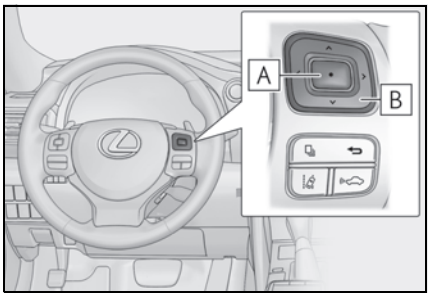
• Sub-content display area



A Current lap time

B Most recent lap time

● Operating the meter control switches



A Press: Start/stop lap timer
Press and hold: Reset

B ＞: Mark off one lap
＾ ＼: Change displayed content

While a lap time is being measured, the display can be changed to show the following content:

- Torque distribution (if equipped)
- G-force
- Tire pressure (if equipped)
- Rear wing position

● Resetting/saving measured lap times

After stopping the lap timer, press and hold .

When a confirmation screen is displayed, select to reset/save the measured lap times.

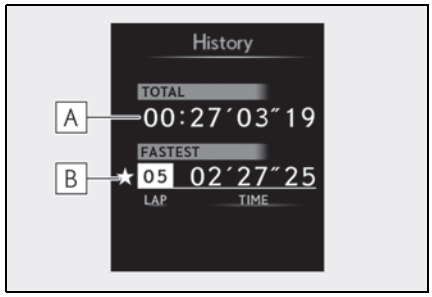
When saved, the lap time data will be displayed on the history screen. (→P.108)

■ History (Lap timer)

Displays the saved lap times

● Reading the display

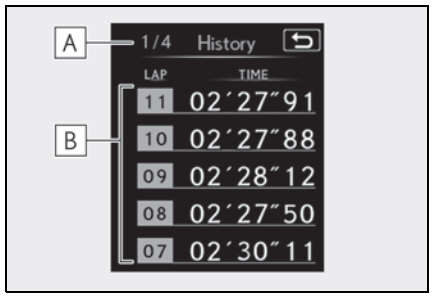
- History top screen



A Total lap time

B Fastest lap time

- Past lap screen



A Page

B Past lap times (20 most recent lap times)

Press ＾ / ＼ to scroll up and down the screen.

● Switching the display

To display the past lap screen, press .
To return to the history top screen, press .

● Deleting history

When the history top screen is displayed, press and hold to display a confirmation screen.
To delete the history, follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

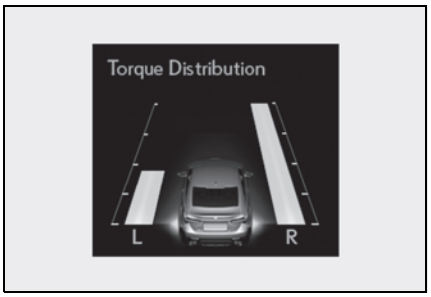
■ Torque distribution (if equipped)

Displays the distribution of driving torque between the left and right rear wheels

● Reading the display

• Normal display

Displays the amount of drive torque applied to the left and right rear wheels through bars that fluctuate in length on the content display area.



• Advanced display

Displays the difference in torque applied to the left and right rear wheels through displayed segments on the sub-content display area in addition to the bar display.
The greater the number of segments displayed, the greater the difference in torque is.

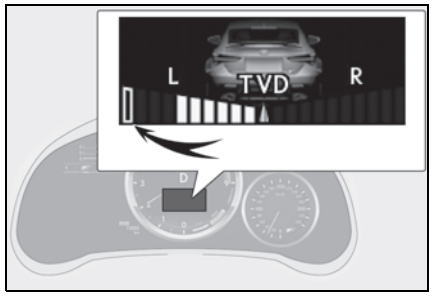


● Switching the display

To switch to advanced display, press .
To return to normal display, press .

● Peak hold function (advanced display only)

If the difference in torque of 4 segments or more is applied to the left or right rear wheel, a yellow outline will be displayed for the highest segment that was reached, for a certain amount of time.



■ G-force

Displays lateral G-forces on the vehicle

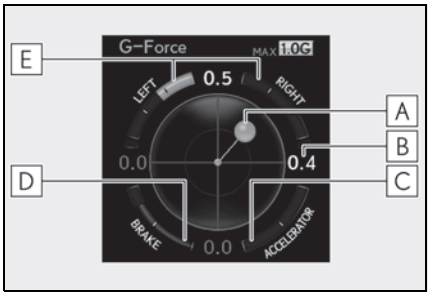
Also displays, around the periphery of the G-force display, the left and right steering amount, accelerator pedal input, and brake fluid pressure

● Reading the display

• Normal display

Displays the following on the content dis-

play area



A Acceleration G-force on the vehicle

B Current G-force value (analyzed value of front/rear and left/right G-forces)

C Accelerator pedal input

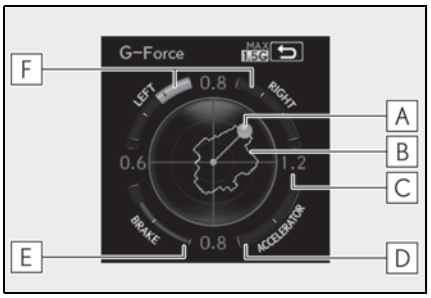
D Brake fluid pressure

E Steering amount

• Advanced display

Displays the following on the sub-content display area and content display area

• Content display area



A Acceleration G-force on the vehicle

B Record of the maximum G-forces

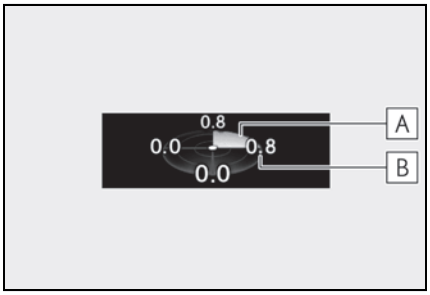
C Value of the maximum G-force since display reset (analyzed value of front/rear and left/right G-forces)

D Accelerator pedal input

E Brake fluid pressure

F Steering amount

• Sub-content display area



A G-force direction

B Current G-force value (analyzed value of front/rear and left/right G-forces)

This display is intended for use as a guideline. Depending on factors such as the road surface condition, temperature and vehicle speed, the display may not show the actual condition of the vehicle.

● Switching the display

To switch to advanced display, press .

To return to normal display, press .

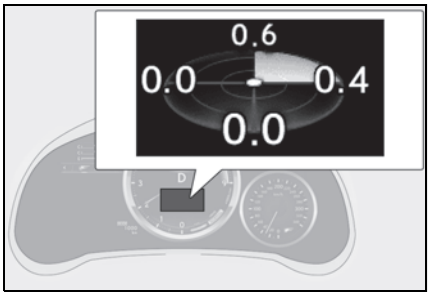
● Resetting the record of maximum G-forces

With the record of maximum G-forces displayed, press and hold to reset the display.

● Peak hold function (advanced display only)

If lateral G-forces of 0.5 G or greater are generated, the G-force value displayed on the sub-content display area will turn yel-

low and be held for 3 seconds.



■ **Rear wing position (vehicles with an active rear wing)**

Displays the raised/retracted state of the active rear wing

■ **Using the lap timer**

If the engine is stopped while a lap is being timed, the lap timer will stop and the lap time up to that point will be recorded.

■ **Torque distribution display (if equipped)**

Torque distribution may not be displayed correctly in some cases, such as when the vehicle passes over road expansion joints.

■ **G-force display**

- The G-force values may not be zero even when the vehicle is parked, such as when it is parked on an incline.
- The steering amount, accelerator pedal input, and brake fluid pressure displays are disabled until the engine has warmed up (the variable red zone of the tachometer has retracted to 7300 r/min). After the engine has warmed up, these displays will be enabled.
- Depending on the vehicle usage conditions, the brake fluid pressure display may not reach its maximum reading even though the brake pedal is fully depressed.
- If a battery terminal is disconnected and reconnected, the steering amount display may be disabled temporarily. After driving the vehicle for a while, the display will be enabled.

Navigation system-linked display (if equipped)

Select to display the following navigation system-linked information.

- Route guidance to destination
- Compass display (heading-up display)

Audio system-linked display

Select to enable selection of an audio source or track on the meter using the meter control switches.

Driving support system information display

Select to display the operational status of the following systems:

- Cruise control (if equipped) (→P.216)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped) (→P.207)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) (if equipped) (→P.196)
- RSA (Road Sign Assist) (if equipped) (→P.204)

Warning message display

Select to display warning messages and measures to be taken if a malfunction is detected. (→P.359)

Settings display

■ Meter display settings that can be changed

● Language

Select to change the language on the display.

● Units

Select to change the units of measure displayed.

● Eco Driving Indicator Light (→P.106)

Select to enable/disable the Eco Driving Indicator Light.

● Switch settings

Displays a procedure to register a desired screen to .
You can register 1 screen as a shortcut, which can be displayed by pressing .

● Drive information screen (→P.105)

Select to select up to 2 items that will be displayed on each Drive information screen (Drive information 1 screen, Drive information 2 screen, and Drive information 3 screen) respectively.

● Pop-up display (→P.102)

Select to enable/disable the pop-up display.

- Intersection Guidance
- Telephone
- Audio Feedback
- Volume Feedback
- Adjust Brightness
- TVD MODE (if equipped)

● Rev indicator (→P.100)

- Select to enable/disable the Rev indicator.
- Select to set the desired engine speed at which the Rev indicator will begin to be displayed.

● Rev peak (→P.101)

Select to enable/disable the Rev peak.

● Gauge options

Select to change the displayed meters for each applicable drive mode.

● Default setting

Select to reset the meter display settings to the default setting.

■ Vehicle functions and settings that can be changed

→P.404

■ Suspension of the settings display

- Some settings cannot be changed while driving. When changing settings, park the vehicle in a safe place.
- If a warning message is displayed, operation of the settings display will be suspended.

■ When disconnecting and reconnecting battery terminals

The following information data will be reset:

- Drive information
- Lap timer: Measured lap times, history
- G-force: Record of the maximum G-forces

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P.404)

WARNING

■ Caution for use while driving

- When operating the multi-information display while driving, pay extra attention to the safety of the area around the vehicle.
- Do not look continuously at the multi-information display while driving as you may fail to see pedestrians, objects on the road, etc. ahead of the vehicle.

■ Cautions during setting up the display

As the engine needs to be running during setting up the display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ While setting up the display

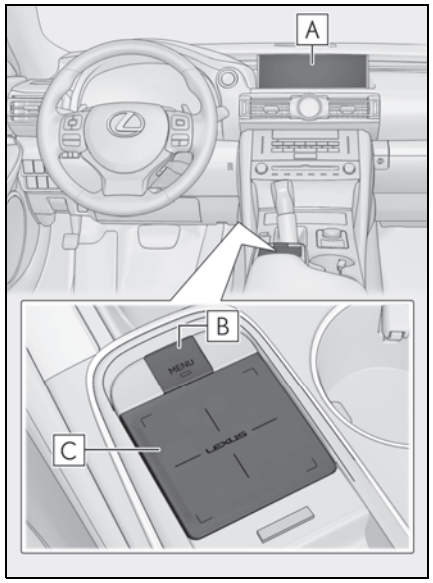
To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while setting up the display features.

Fuel consumption information

Fuel consumption information can be displayed on the Center Display.

Vehicles with a 10.3-inch display: The fuel consumption information can be displayed and operated on the side display.

System components



A Center Display

B "MENU" button

C Touchpad

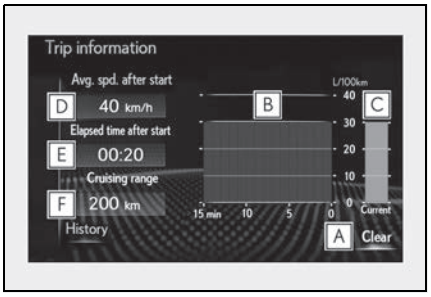
Consumption

■ Trip information

Press the "MENU" button on the

Remote Touch, then select on the menu screen, and then select "ECO".

If a screen other than "Trip information" is displayed, select "Trip information".



A Resetting the consumption data

B Fuel consumption in the past 15 minutes

C Current fuel consumption

D Average vehicle speed since the engine was started.

E Elapsed time since the engine was started.

F Cruising range

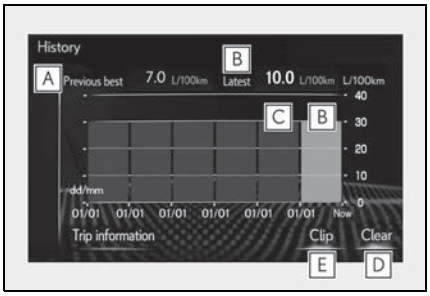
Average fuel consumption for the past 15 minutes is divided by color into past averages and averages attained since the engine switch was last turned to IGNITION ON mode. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

■ History

Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch, then select on the menu screen, and then select "ECO".

If a screen other than "History" is displayed, select "History".



A Best recorded fuel consumption

B Latest fuel consumption

C Previous fuel consumption record

D Resetting the history data

E Updating the latest fuel consumption data

The average fuel consumption history is divided by color into past averages and the average fuel consumption since the last updated. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

■ Updating the history data

Update the latest fuel consumption by selecting "Clip" to measure the current fuel consumption again.

■ Resetting the data

The fuel consumption data can be deleted by selecting "Clear".

■ Cruising range

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption.

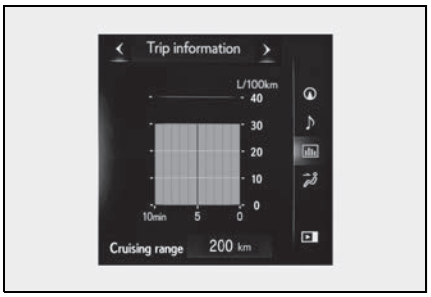
As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

Using the side display (vehicles with a 10.3-inch display)

Display the vehicle information on the side display (→P.254), and then select ❮ or ❯ to display the desired screen.
The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

■ Trip information (type A)

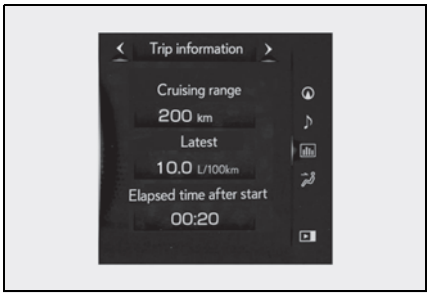
Displays the average fuel consumption for the past 10 minutes in 1 minute intervals, as well as the cruising range.



Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

■ Trip information (type B)

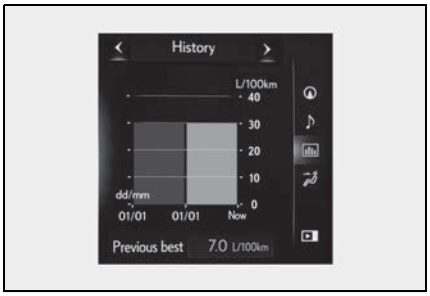
Displays the cruising range, latest fuel consumption and the amount of time elapsed since the engine was started.



Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

■ History

Displays the average fuel consumption and highest fuel consumption.



Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

3-1. Key information

Keys 118

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Doors 122

Trunk 126

Smart entry & start system 129

3-3. Adjusting the seats

Front seats 134

Power easy access system/driving position memory/memory recall function 136

3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors

Steering wheel 139

Inside rear view mirror 140

Outside rear view mirrors 141

3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof

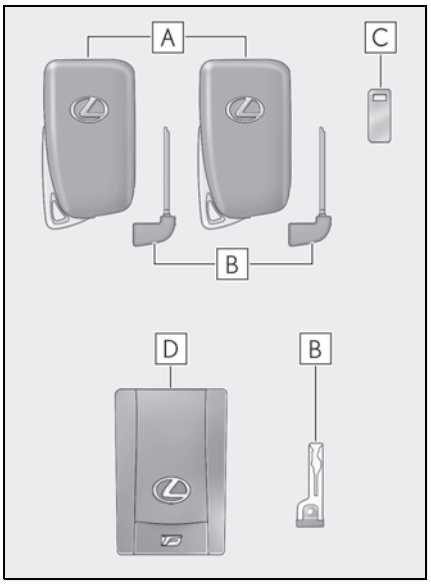
Power windows 144

Moon roof 146

Keys

The keys

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



A Electronic keys

- Operating the smart entry & start system (→P.129)
- Operating the wireless remote control function (→P.120)

B Mechanical keys

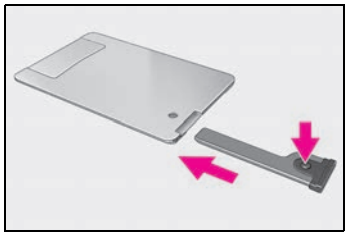
C Key number plate

D Card key (electronic key) (if equipped)

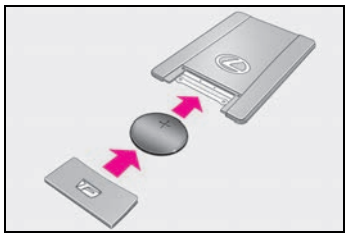
Operating the smart entry & start system (→P.129)

■ Card key (if equipped)

- The card key is not waterproof.
- The mechanical key that is stored inside the card key should be used only if a problem arises, such as when the card key does not operate properly.
- If it is difficult to take out the mechanical key, push down the lock release button using a pen tip etc. If it is still difficult to pull it out, use a coin etc.
- To store the mechanical key in the card key, insert it while pressing the lock release button.



- If the battery cover is not installed and the battery falls out or if the battery was removed because the key got wet, reinstall the battery with the positive terminal facing the Lexus emblem.



■ When riding in an aircraft

When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

■ Electronic key battery depletion

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years. (The card key battery life is about a year and a half.)
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will sound in the cabin and a message will be

shown on the multi-information display when the engine is stopped.

- As the electronic key always receives radio waves, the battery will become depleted even if the electronic key is not used. The following symptoms indicate that the electronic key battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary.
  - The smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate.
  - The detection area becomes smaller.
  - The LED indicator on the key surface does not turn on.
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 1 m (3 ft.) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
  - TVs
  - Personal computers
  - Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
  - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
  - Table lamps
  - Induction cookers

■ Replacing the battery

→P.336

■ Confirmation of the registered key number

The number of keys already registered to the vehicle can be confirmed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.

NOTICE

■ To prevent key damage

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for long periods of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not attach a sticker or anything else to the surface of the electronic key.
- Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems and induction cookers.

■ Carrying the electronic key on your person

Carry the electronic key 10 cm (3.9 in.) or more away from electric appliances that are turned on. Radio waves emitted from electric appliances within 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the electronic key may interfere with the key, causing the key to not function properly.

■ In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction or other key-related problems

→P.382

■ When an electronic key is lost

→P.381

■ Handling the card key (if equipped)

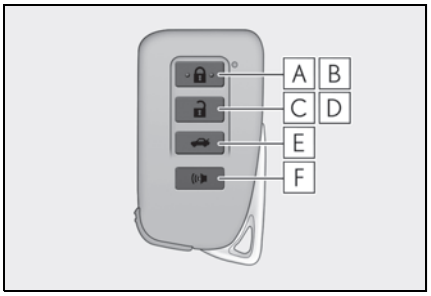
- Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key into the card key. Doing so may damage the card key.
- If the battery or card key terminals get wet, the battery may corrode. If the key is dropped into water, or if drinking water etc. is spilled on the key, immediately remove the battery cover and wipe the battery and terminals. (To remove the battery cover, lightly grasp and pull it.) If the battery is corroded, have your Lexus dealer replace the battery.
- Do not crush the battery cover or use a screwdriver to remove the battery cover. Forcibly removing the battery cover may bend or damage the key.

NOTICE

- If the battery cover is frequently removed, the battery cover may become loose.
- When installing the battery, make sure to check the direction of the battery. Installing the battery in the wrong direction may cause the battery to deplete rapidly.
- The surface of the card key may be damaged, or its coating may peel off in the following situations:
  - The card key is carried together with hard objects, such as coins and keys.
  - The card key is scraped with a sharp object, such as the tip of a mechanical pencil.
  - The surface of the card key is wiped with thinner or benzene.

Wireless remote control

The electronic keys are equipped with the following wireless remote control:



A Locks the doors (→P.122)

B Closes the windows and moon roof (if equipped) (except for Korea)* (→P.122)

C Unlocks the doors (→P.122)

D Opens the windows and moon roof (if equipped) (except for Korea)* (→P.122)

E Opens the trunk (→P.127)

F Sounds the alarm (if equipped)

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

Panic mode (if equipped)

When is pressed for longer than about one second, an alarm will sound intermittently and the vehicle lights will flash to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

To stop the alarm, press any button on the electronic key.

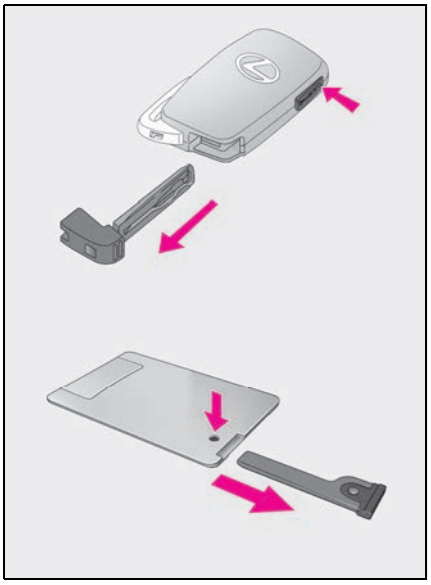


Using the mechanical key

To take out the mechanical key, push the release button and take the key out.

The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it.

After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P.382)



■ **When required to leave the vehicle's key with a parking attendant**

Set the luggage security system (→P.128) on and lock the glove box (→P.269) as circumstances demand.

Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

■ **If you lose your mechanical keys**

→P.381

■ **If a wrong key is used**

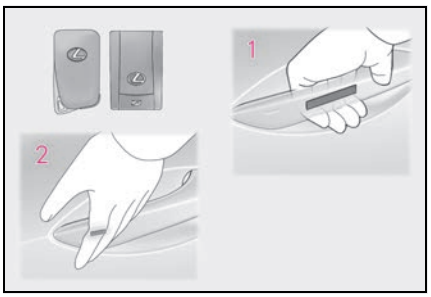
The key cylinder rotates freely, isolated from the internal mechanism.

Doors

Unlocking and locking the doors from the outside

■ Smart entry & start system

Carry the electronic key to enable this function.



1 Grip the door handle to unlock the doors.

Some models: Grip the driver's door handle to unlock the door. Grip the passenger's door handle to unlock both side doors.*

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

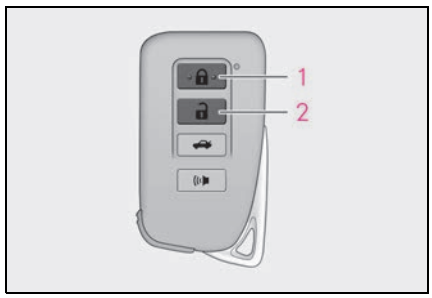
The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.

*: The door unlock settings can be changed.

2 Touch the lock sensor (indentation on the side of the door handle) to lock the doors.

Check that the door is securely locked.

■ Wireless remote control



1 Locks both side doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

Except for Korea: Press and hold to close the windows and moon roof (if equipped).*

2 Unlocks both side doors

Some models: Pressing the button unlocks the driver's door. Pressing the button again within 5 seconds unlocks the other door.

Except for Korea: Press and hold to open the windows and moon roof (if equipped).*

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ Side window open/close function linked to door operation

When a door is opened, its window opens slightly. When a door is closed, its window closes completely.

■ Switching the door unlock function

It is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks using the wireless remote control.

1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 For vehicles with an intrusion sensor: Cancel the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor of the alarm system to prevent unintended triggering of the alarm while changing the settings. (→P.87)

3 When the indicator light on the key surface is not on, press and hold , or for approximately 5

seconds while pressing and holding .

The setting changes each time an operation is performed, as shown below. (When changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat step **3**.)

Multi-information display/Beep	Unlocking function
 (Left-hand drive vehicles)	Holding the driver's door handle unlocks only the driver's door.
 (Right-hand drive vehicles) Exterior: Beeps 3 times Interior: Pings once	Holding the passenger's door handle unlocks both side doors.
 Exterior: Beeps twice Interior: Pings once	Holding either door handle unlocks both side doors.

For vehicles with an alarm: To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open and close a door once after the settings have been changed. (If a door is not opened within 30 seconds after is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.)

In a case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P.86)

■ Impact detection door lock release system

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, both side doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

■ Operation signals

The emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: once; Unlocked: twice)

Some models: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: once, Unlocked: twice)

Except for Korea: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof are operating.

■ Welcome light illumination control

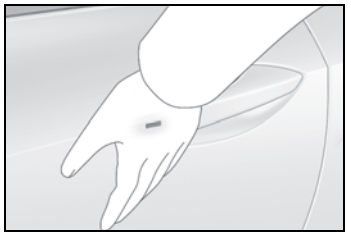
The front position, tail and license plate lights automatically turn on at night when the doors are unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control if the light switch is in the AUTO position.

■ Security feature

If a door is not opened within approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again.

■ When the door cannot be locked by the lock sensor on the surface of the door handle

Use your palm to touch the lock sensor.



■ Open door warning buzzer

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously for 5 seconds. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

■ **Setting the alarm (if equipped)**

Locking the doors will set the alarm system. (→P.86)

■ **Conditions affecting the operation of the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control**

→P.131

■ **If the smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

Use the mechanical key and/or inside lock buttons to lock and unlock the doors. (→P.382)
Replace the key battery with a new one if it is depleted. (→P.336)

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (→P.404)

WARNING

■ **To prevent an accident**

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.
Failure to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant being thrown out of the vehicle, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Ensure that both side doors are properly closed and locked.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving.
  - Vehicles for Korea and Taiwan and vehicles with an airbag manual on-off switch

The doors may be opened even if the inside lock buttons are in locked position.

- Other than listed above

Be especially careful with the driver's door, as the door may be opened even if the inside lock button is in locked position.

■ **Side window open/close function linked to door operation**

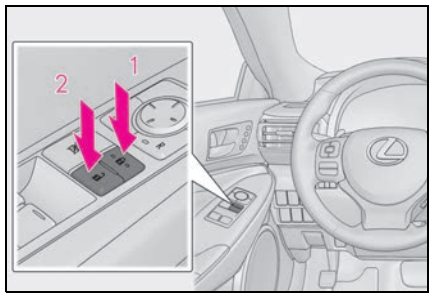
Do not hold the upper edge of the side window when you close the door. Otherwise, your fingers or hand may be caught in the window.

■ **When using the wireless remote control and operating the power windows or moon roof**

Operate the power window or moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window or moon roof. Also, do not allow children to operate the wireless remote control. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window or moon roof.

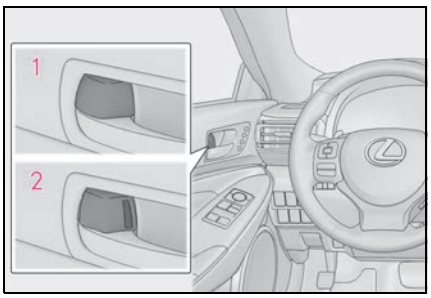
Unlocking and locking the doors from the inside

■ **Door lock switches (to lock/unlock)**



1 Locks both side doors
2 Unlocks both side doors

■ Inside lock buttons (to lock/unlock)



1 Locks the door

2 Unlocks the door

Vehicles for Korea and Taiwan and vehicles with an airbag manual on-off switch : Both side doors can be opened by pulling the inside handle even if the lock buttons are in the lock position.

Other than listed above: The driver's door can be opened by pulling the inside handle even if the lock button is in the lock position.

■ **Locking the doors from the outside without a key**

1 Move the inside lock button to the lock position.

2 Close the door while pulling the door handle.

The door cannot be locked if the engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle. However, the key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

■ **If a symbol indicating one or more of the doors open is shown on the multi-information display**

The hood, one or more of the doors, or trunk is not fully closed. If the vehicle reaches a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph), the master warning light flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that the door(s) are not fully closed. Make sure to close hood, all doors and trunk.

Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

The following functions can be set or canceled:

For instructions on customizing, refer to P.404

Function	Operation
Speed linked door locking function	Both side doors are automatically locked when the vehicle speed is approximately 20 km/h (12 mph) or higher.
Shift position linked door locking function	Both side doors are automatically locked when the shift lever is shifted to a position other than P.
Shift position linked door unlocking function	Both side doors are automatically unlocked when the shift lever is shifted to P.
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	Both side doors are automatically unlocked when driver's door is opened.

Trunk

The trunk can be opened using the trunk opener switch, entry function or wireless remote control.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ Before driving

- Make sure that the trunk lid is fully closed. If the trunk lid is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving and hit near-by objects or luggage in the trunk may be thrown out, causing an accident.
- Do not allow children to play in the trunk.
  If a child is accidentally locked in the trunk, they could suffer from heat exhaustion, suffocation or other injuries.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the trunk lid.
  Doing so may cause the trunk lid to open unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing trunk lid.

■ Important points while driving

Never let anyone sit in the trunk. In the event of sudden braking or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

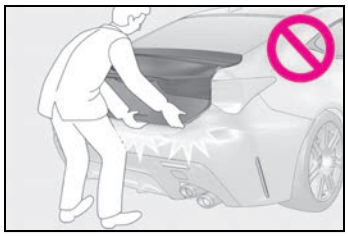
■ Using the trunk

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the trunk lid before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the trunk lid to suddenly shut again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the trunk lid, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the trunk is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the trunk lid in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.
- On an incline it is more difficult to open or close the trunk lid than on a level surface, so beware of the trunk lid unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the trunk lid is fully open and secure before using the trunk.
- When opening the trunk lid, take care so that it does not hit anyone in the face or any other part of the body.



- When closing the trunk lid, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.



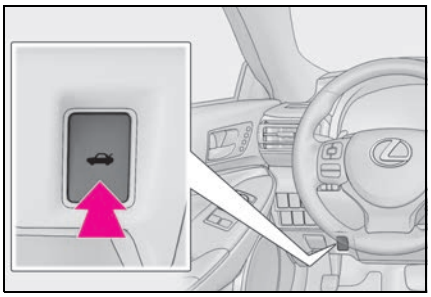
WARNING

- When closing the trunk lid, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the trunk handle is used to fully close the trunk lid, it may result in hands or arms being caught.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the trunk lid. Such additional weight on the trunk lid may cause the lid to suddenly shut again after it is opened.

Opening/closing the trunk

Trunk opener switch

Press the trunk opener switch.

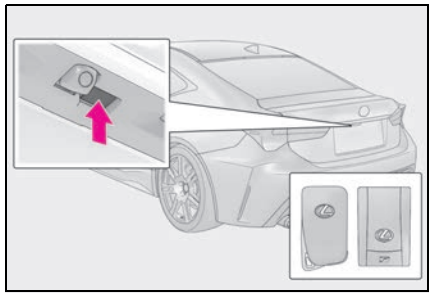


Smart entry & start system

While carrying the electronic key, press the button on the trunk lid.

When both side doors are unlocked using one of the following methods, the trunk can be opened without the electronic key:

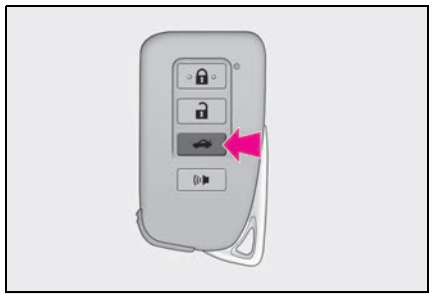
- Entry function
- Wireless remote control
- Door lock switches
- Automatic door unlocking system
- Mechanical key



Wireless remote control

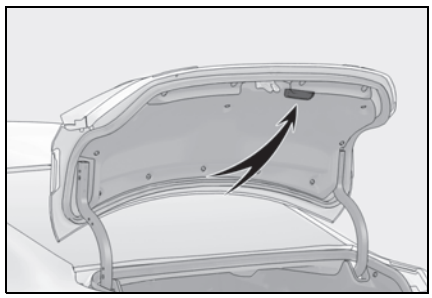
Press and hold the switch.

Some models: A buzzer sounds.



Trunk grip

Using the trunk grip, lower the trunk without applying force to the side and push the trunk down from the outside to close it.



Trunk light

- The trunk light turns on when the trunk is opened.
- If the trunk light is left on when the engine

switch is turned off, the light will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

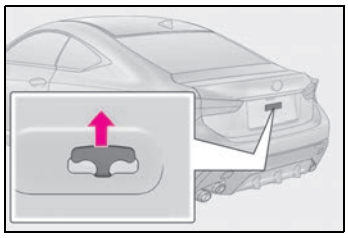
■ **Function to prevent the trunk being locked with the electronic key inside**

- When both side doors are locked, closing the trunk lid with the electronic key left inside the trunk will sound an alarm. In this case, the trunk lid can be opened by pressing the trunk release button on the trunk lid.
- If the spare electronic key is put in the trunk with both side doors locked, the key confinement prevention function is activated so the trunk can be opened. In order to prevent theft, take all electronic keys with you when leaving the vehicle.
- If the electronic key is put in the trunk with both side doors locked, the key may not be detected depending on the location of the key and the surrounding radio wave conditions. In this case, the key confinement prevention function cannot be activated, causing the doors to lock when the trunk is closed. Make sure to check where the key is before closing the trunk.
- The key confinement prevention function cannot be activated if either door is unlocked. In this case, open the trunk using the trunk opener.

■ **Internal trunk release lever (if equipped)**

The trunk lid can be opened by pulling the glow-in-the-dark lever located on the inside of the trunk lid upward.

The lever will continue to glow for some time after the trunk lid is closed.



■ **Using the mechanical key**

The trunk can be also opened using the mechanical key. (→P.383)

■ **If the smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

Use the mechanical key to unlock the trunk. (→P.383)
Replace the key battery with a new one if it is depleted. (→P.336)

■ **If a symbol indicating the trunk opens is shown on the multi-information display**

→P.125

■ **Customization**

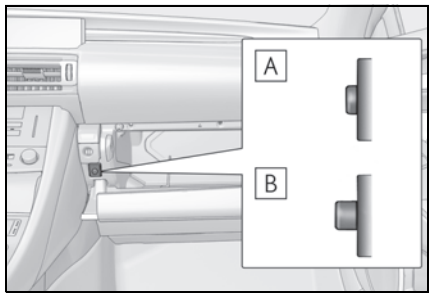
Some functions can be customized. (→P.404)

Luggage security system

To protect luggage stored in the trunk against theft, the luggage security system can be set to on.

1 Close the inside trunk door. (if equipped) (→P.271)

2 To disable the trunk opener, turn the main switch in the glove box off.



A On

B Off

When the main switch is off, the trunk lid cannot be opened even with the wireless remote control or entry function.

■ When leaving a key to the vehicle with a parking attendant

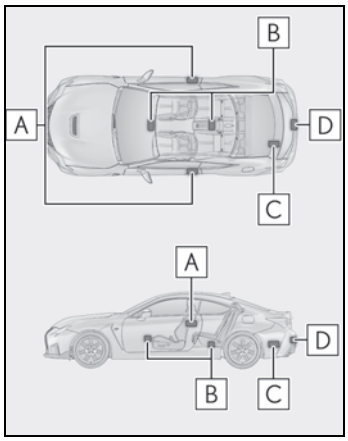
→P.121

Smart entry & start system

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key (including the card key) on your person, for example in your pocket. The driver should always carry the electronic key.

- Locks and unlocks the doors (→P.122)
- Opens the trunk (→P.127)
- Starts the engine (→P.160)

■ Antenna location



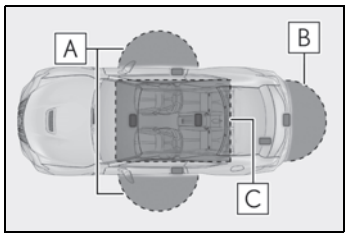
A Antennas outside the cabin

B Antennas inside the cabin

C Antenna inside the trunk

D Antenna outside the trunk

■ **Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)**



A When locking or unlocking the doors

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m (2.3 ft.) of an outside door handle. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

B When opening the trunk

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m (2.3 ft.) of the trunk release button.

C When starting the engine or changing engine switch modes

The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

■ **Alarms and warning messages**

An alarm sounds and warning messages are displayed on the multi-information display to protect against unexpected accidents or theft of the vehicle resulting from erroneous operation. When a warning message is displayed, take appropriate measures based on the displayed message. (→P.359)

When only an alarm sounds, circumstances and correction procedures are as follows.

● When an exterior alarm sounds once for 5 seconds

Situation	Correction procedure
The trunk was closed while the electronic key was still inside the trunk and both side doors were locked.	Retrieve the electronic key from the trunk and close the trunk lid.
An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door was open.	Close both side doors and lock the doors again.

● When an interior alarm sounds continuously

Situation	Correction procedure
The engine switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver's door was open (or the driver's door was opened while the engine switch was in ACCESSORY mode).	Turn the engine switch off and close the driver's door.
The engine switch was turned off while the driver's door was open.	Close the driver's door.

■ **Battery-saving function**

The battery-saving function will be activated in order to prevent the electronic key battery and the vehicle battery from being discharged while the vehicle is not in operation for a long time.

● In the following situations, the smart entry & start system may take some time to unlock the doors.
- The electronic key has been left within approximately 2 m (6 ft.) of the outside of the vehicle for 10 minutes or longer.
- The smart entry & start system has not been used for 5 days or longer.

● If the smart entry & start system has not

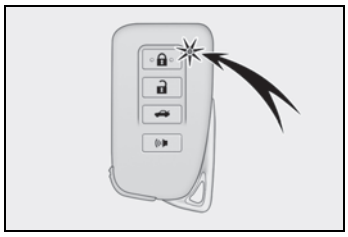
been used for 14 days or longer, the doors cannot be unlocked at the passenger door. In this case, take hold of the driver's door handle, or use the wireless remote control or mechanical key, to unlock the doors.

Electronic Key Battery-Saving Function

When battery-saving mode is set, battery depletion is minimized by stopping the electronic key from receiving radio waves.

Press twice while pressing and holding . Confirm that the electronic key indicator flashes 4 times.

While the battery-saving mode is set, the smart entry & start system cannot be used. To cancel the function, press any of the electronic key buttons.



Conditions affecting operation

The smart entry & start system uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart entry & start system, wireless remote control and engine immobilizer system from operating properly. (Ways of coping: →P.382)

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
  - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
  - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Coins
  - Hand warmers made of metal
  - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby
- When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
  - Another vehicle's electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
  - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
  - Digital audio players
  - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window
- When the electronic key is placed near a battery charger or electronic devices

Note for the entry function

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:
  - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
  - The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the rear bumper center when the trunk is opened.
  - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, rear package tray or floor, or in the door pockets or glove box when the engine is started or engine switch modes are changed.
- Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the doors will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.

- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone. However, only the doors detecting the electronic key can be used to unlock the vehicle.
- Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the engine if the electronic key is near the window.
- The doors may unlock or lock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash, when the electronic key is within the effective range. (The doors will automatically be locked after approximately 30 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)
- Touching the door lock or unlock sensor while wearing gloves may prevent lock or unlock operation.
- Some models: When the lock operation is performed using the lock sensor, recognition signals will be shown up to two consecutive times. After this, no recognition signals will be given.
- If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In this case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:
  - Place the electronic key in a location 2 m (6 ft.) or more away from the vehicle. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
  - Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P.131)
- If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a message may be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock both side doors.
- The lock sensor may not work properly if it comes into contact with ice, snow, mud, etc. Clean the lock sensor and attempt to operate it again.
- A sudden handle operation or a handle operation immediately after entering the effective range may prevent the doors from being unlocked. Touch the door unlock sensor and check that the doors are unlocked before pulling the door handle again.
- Unlocking the vehicle may take more time if another electronic key is within the effective range.

■ When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods

- To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 2 m (6 ft.) of the vehicle.
- The smart entry & start system can be deactivated in advance.

■ To operate the system properly

- Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention function may not operate.)

- Do not leave the electronic key inside the trunk.
  The key confinement prevention function may not operate, depending on the location of the key (close to a spare tire [if equipped], the inside edge of the trunk), conditions (inside a metal bag, close to metallic objects) and the radio waves in the surrounding area. (→P.129)

■ If the smart entry & start system does not operate properly

- Locking and unlocking the doors and opening the trunk: →P.382
- Starting the engine: →P.384

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (→P.404)

■ **If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting**

- Locking and unlocking the doors and opening the trunk:
  Use the wireless remote control or mechanical key. (→P.122, 127, 382)
- Starting the engine and changing engine switch modes: →P.384
- Stopping the engine: →P.161

WARNING

■ **Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

- People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the smart entry & start system antennas. (→P.130)
  The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask your Lexus dealer for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of the emitted radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.
- Users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.
  Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask your Lexus dealer for details on disabling the entry function.

Front seats

WARNING

■ When adjusting the seat position

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.

Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.

- Make sure to leave enough space around the feet so they do not get stuck.

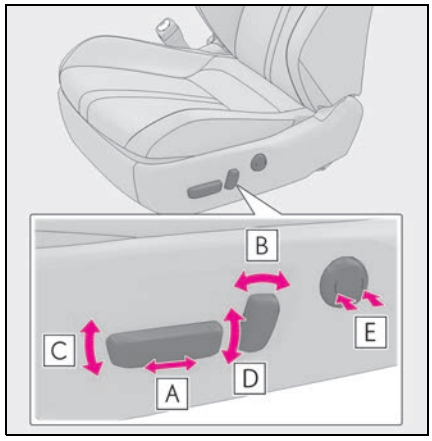
■ Seat adjustment

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.

If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

Adjustment procedure



A Seat position adjustment

B Seatback angle adjustment

C Seat cushion (front) angle adjustment

D Vertical height adjustment

E Lumbar support adjustment (driver's seat only)

■ Power easy access system

The driver's seat and steering wheel move in accordance with engine switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P.136)

■ When adjusting the seat

Take care when adjusting the seat so that the head restraint does not touch the ceiling.

Entering/exiting the rear seats (lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat)

■ Before entering/exiting the rear seats

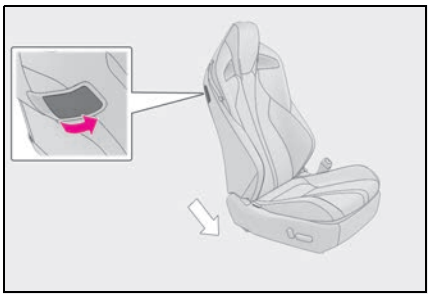
Remove the seat belt from the seat belt

guide. (→P.34)

■ **Entering/exiting the rear seat**

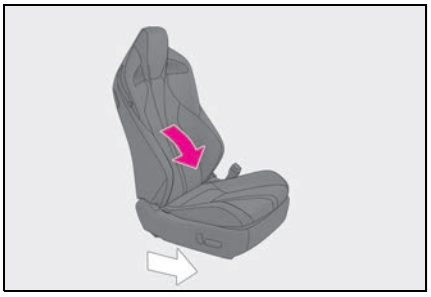
1 Pull the lever.

The front seat will lower automatically.



2 Fold the seatback completely forward.

The front seat will move forward automatically.



■ **Returning the front seat to its original position**

Move the seatback backward until it locks. The front seat will return to its original position automatically.

■ **Lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat**

- After the front seat is moved forward by operating the "Front, Fold & Return" seat lever, if a power seat adjusting switch or a driving position memory switch is pressed, the front seat will not return to its original position even if the front seatback is moved backward until it locks.
- The lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat will not operate in the following situations:
  - The front seat belt of the seat to be operated is fastened.
  - The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the shift lever is in a position other than P (driver's seat only).
- Operation of the lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat will stop in the following situations:
  - A power seat adjusting switch or a driving position memory switch is pressed.
  - The front seat belt of the seat which is operating is fastened.
  - The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the shift lever is moved to a position other than P (driver's seat only).

■ **Jam protection function**

While the lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat is operating, if an object is stuck either in front of or behind the front seat, the front seat will stop and then move in the opposite direction slightly.

WARNING

■ **Lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat**

- Before operating the lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat, ensure that any surrounding passengers or objects will not contact the seat.
- Make sure the seatback is locked securely before driving.
- Never operate the lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat while the vehicle is moving.

■ **Jam protection function**

Do not use a hand, foot, or any other part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.

3 Before driving

Power easy access system/driving position memory/memory recall function

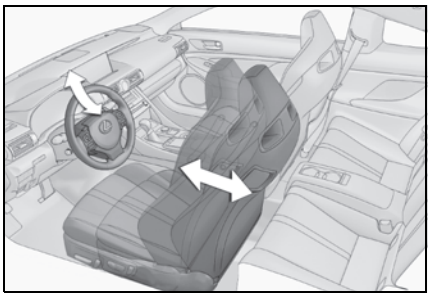
This feature automatically adjusts the driver's seat, steering wheel and outside rear view mirrors to make entering and exiting the vehicle easier or to suit your preferences.

Power easy access system

The seat and steering wheel* are automatically adjusted to allow the driver to enter and exit the vehicle easily.

When all of the following have been performed, the driver's seat and steering wheel* are automatically adjusted to a position that allows driver to enter and exit the vehicle easily.

- The shift lever has been shifted to P.
- The engine switch has been turned off.
- The driver's seat belt has been unfastened.



When any of the following has been performed, the driver's seat and steering wheel* automatically return to their original positions.

- The engine switch has been turned to ACCESSORY mode or IGNITION ON mode.
- The driver's seat belt has been fastened.

*: Power type

■ Operation of the power easy access system

When exiting the vehicle, the power easy access system may not operate if the seat is already close to the rear position, etc.

■ Customization

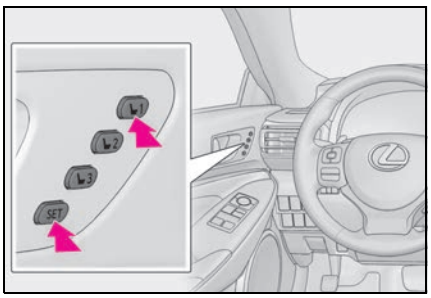
Some functions can be customized. (→P.404)

Recording a driving position into memory

1. Check that the shift lever is in P.
2. Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
3. Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel, and outside rear view mirrors to the desired positions.
4. While pressing the "SET" button, or within 3 seconds after the "SET" button is pressed, press button "1", "2" or "3" until the buzzer sounds.

If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position

will be overwritten.



WARNING

■ Seat adjustment caution

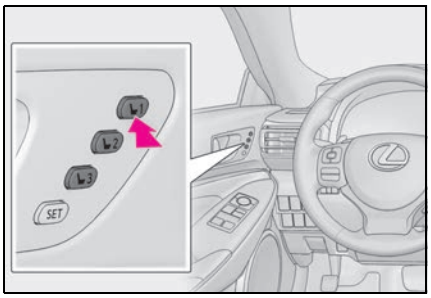
Take care during seat adjustment so that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

Recalling a driving position

1 Check that the shift lever is in P.

2 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

3 Press one of the buttons for the driving position you want to recall until the buzzer sounds.



■ To stop the position recall operation part-way through

Perform any of the following:

- Press the "SET" button.
- Press button "1", "2" or "3".
- Operate any of the seat adjustment switches (only cancels seat position recall).
- Operate the tilt and telescopic steering control switch (only cancels steering wheel position recall).

■ Seat positions that can be memorized (→P.134)

The adjusted positions other than the position adjusted by lumbar support switch can be recorded.

■ Operating the driving position memory after turning the engine switch off

Recorded seat positions can be activated up to 180 seconds after the driver's door is opened and another 60 seconds after it is closed again.

■ In order to correctly use the driving position memory function

If a seat position is already in the furthest possible position and the seat is operated in the same direction, the recorded position may be slightly different when it is recalled.

Registering/canceling/recall a driving position to an electronic key (including a card key) (memory recall function)

■ Registering procedure

Record your driving position to button "1", "2" or "3" before performing the following:

Carry only the key you want to register, and then close the driver's door.

If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be recorded properly.

1 Check that the shift lever is in P.

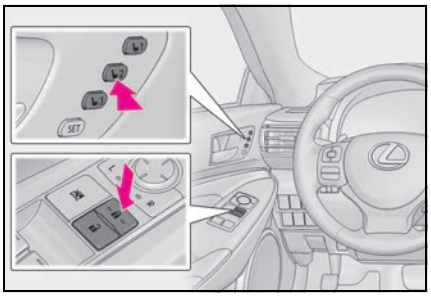
2 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

3 Before driving

3 Recall the driving position that you want to record.

4 While pressing the recalled button, press and hold the door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the buzzer sounds.

If the button could not be registered, the buzzer sounds continuously for approximately 3 seconds.



■ Cancelation procedure

Carry only the key you want to cancel and then close the driver's door.

If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be canceled properly.

1 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

2 While pressing the "SET" button, press and hold the door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the buzzer sounds twice.

If the button could not be canceled, the buzzer sounds continuously for approximately 3 seconds.

■ Recall procedure

1 Make sure that the doors are locked before recalling the driving position. Carry the electronic key that has been registered to the driving position, and then unlock and open the driver's door using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control.

The driving position will move to the recorded position (not including the steering wheel). However, the seat will move to a position slightly behind the recorded position in order to make entering the vehicle easier.

If the driving position is in a position that has already been recorded, the seat and outside rear view mirrors will not move.

2 Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode or IGNITION ON mode, or fasten a seat belt.

The seat and steering wheel will move to the recorded position.

■ Recalling the driving position using the memory recall function

- Different driving positions can be registered for each electronic key. Therefore, the driving position that is recalled may be different depending on the key being carried.
- If a door other than the driver's door is unlocked with the smart entry & start system, the driving position cannot be recalled. In this case, press the driving position button which has been set.

■ Customization

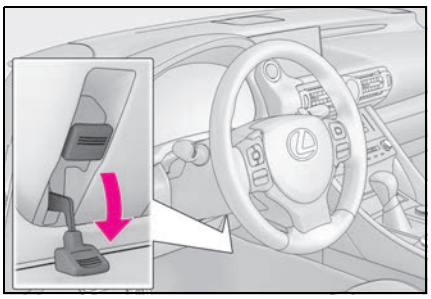
Some functions can be customized. (→P.404)

Steering wheel

Adjustment procedure

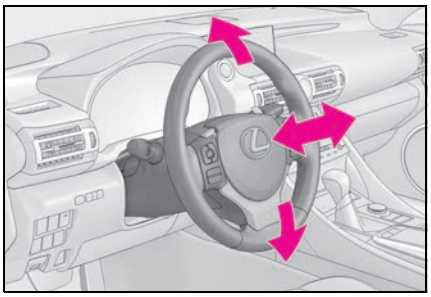
▶ Manual type

1 Hold the steering wheel and push the lever down.



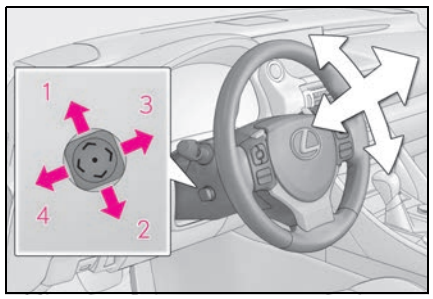
2 Adjust to the ideal position by moving the steering wheel horizontally and vertically.

After adjustment, pull the lever up to secure the steering wheel.



▶ Power type

Operating the switch moves the steering wheel in the following directions:



1 Up
2 Down
3 Toward the driver
4 Away from the driver

■ The steering wheel can be adjusted when (power type)

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode*.

*: If the driver's seat belt is fastened, the steering wheel can be adjusted regardless of engine switch mode.

■ Automatic adjustment of the steering position (power type)

A desired steering position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory system. (→P.136)

■ Power easy access system (power type)

The steering wheel and driver's seat move in accordance with engine switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P.136)

WARNING

■ Caution while driving

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

WARNING

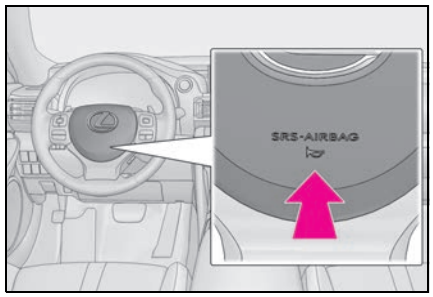
■ **After adjusting the steering wheel (manual type)**

Make sure that the steering wheel is securely locked.

Otherwise, the steering wheel may move suddenly, possibly causing an accident, and resulting in death or serious injury. Also, the horn may not sound if the steering wheel is not securely locked.

Horn

To sound the horn, press on or close to the mark.



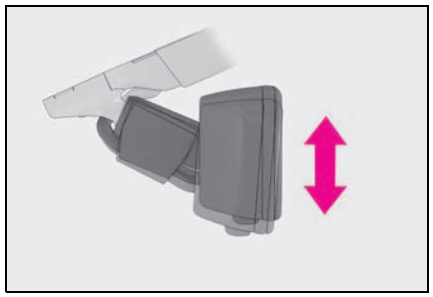
Inside rear view mirror

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

Adjusting the height of rear view mirror

The height of the rear view mirror can be adjusted to suit your driving posture.

Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.



WARNING

■ **Caution while driving**

Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.

Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Anti-glare function

Responding to the level of brightness of the headlights of vehicles behind, the reflected light is automatically reduced.

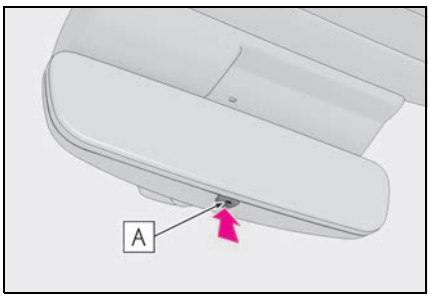
Turn the automatic anti-glare function

mode on/off

When the automatic anti-glare function is in ON mode, the indicator A illuminates.

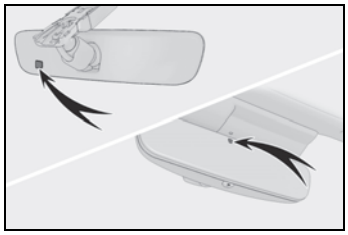
The function will set to ON mode each time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

Pressing the button turns the function to OFF mode. (The indicator A also turns off.)



■ To prevent sensor error

To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



Outside rear view mirrors

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

WARNING

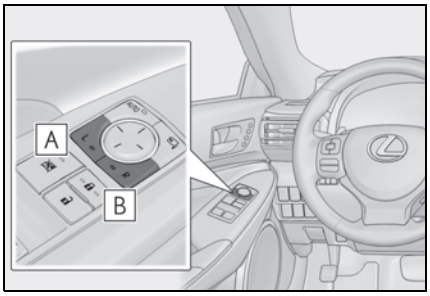
■ Important points while driving

Observe the following precautions while driving.
Failure to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

Adjustment procedure

1 To select a mirror to adjust, press the switch.

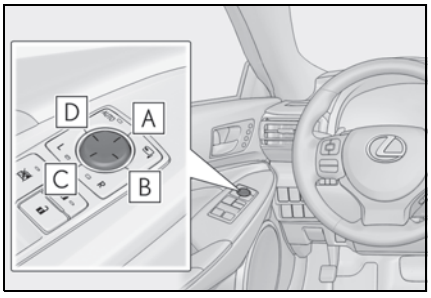


A Left

B Right

Pressing the same switch again will put the switch in neutral.

2 To adjust the mirror, press the switch.



A Up

B Right

C Down

D Left

■ **Mirror angle can be adjusted when**

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Defogging the mirrors (if equipped)**

The outside rear view mirrors can be cleared using the mirror defoggers. Turn on the rear window defogger to turn on the outside rear view mirror defoggers. (→P.259)

■ **Auto anti-glare function (if equipped)**

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to automatic mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P.140)

■ **Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle**

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P.136)

■ **Linked mirror function when reversing (if equipped)**

When either "L" or "R" of the mirror select switch is selected, the outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground.

To disable this function, select neither "L" nor "R".

To set the mirror angle used when the vehicle is reversing, adjust the mirror angle at a desired position with the shift lever in R.

The adjusted angle will be memorized and the mirror will automatically tilt to the memorized angle whenever the shift lever is shifted to R from next time.

The memorized downward tilt position of the mirror is linked to the normal position (angle adjusted with the shift lever in other than R). Therefore, if the normal position is changed after adjustment, the tilt position will also change.

When the normal position is changed, readjust the angle in reversing.

WARNING

■ **When the mirror defoggers are operating**

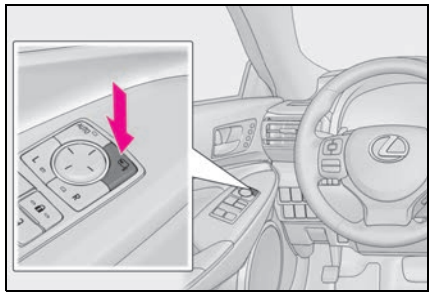
Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

Folding and extending the mirrors

■ Using the switch

Press the switch to fold the mirrors.

Press it again to extend them to the original position.



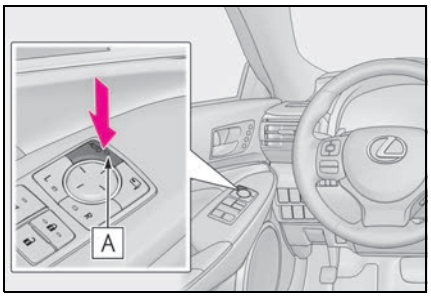
■ Setting automatic mode (if equipped)

Automatic mode allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.

Press the "AUTO" switch to set automatic mode.

The indicator A will come on.

Pressing the switch once more will return to manual mode.



■ When disconnecting and reconnecting battery terminals (vehicles with an automatic folding/extending mirror function)

The automatic folding/extending mirror function will return to off as default. To turn the function on, press the switch again to select on.

■ Using automatic mode in cold weather (if equipped)

When automatic mode is used in cold weather, the door mirror could freeze up and automatic stowing and return may not be possible. In this case, remove any ice and snow from the door mirror, then either operate the mirror using manual mode or move the mirror by hand.

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P.404)

WARNING

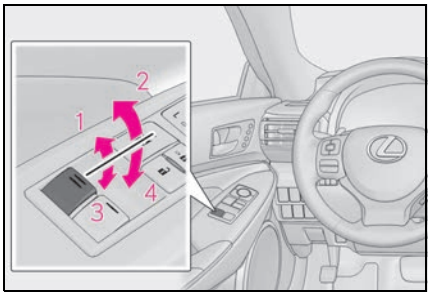
■ When a mirror is moving

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

Power windows

Opening and closing the power windows

The power windows can be opened and closed using the switches. Operating the switch moves the windows as follows:



1 Closing

2 One-touch closing*

3 Opening

4 One-touch opening*

*: To stop the window partway, operate the switch in the opposite direction.

■ The power windows can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Operating the power windows after turning the engine off

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds after the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. They cannot, however, be operated once either door is opened.

■ Jam protection function

If an object becomes jammed between the window and the window frame while the window is closing, window movement is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

■ Catch protection function

If an object becomes caught between the door and window while the window is opening, window movement is stopped.

■ When the window cannot be opened or closed

When the jam protection function or catch protection function operates unusually and the door window cannot be opened or closed, perform the following operations with the power window switch of that door.

- Stop the vehicle. With the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode, within 4 seconds of the jam protection function or catch protection function activating, continuously operate the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction or one-touch opening direction so that the door window can be opened and closed.
- If the door window cannot be opened and closed even when performing the above operations, perform the following procedure for function initialization.

1. Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
2. Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction and completely close the door window.
3. Release the power window switch for a moment, resume pulling the switch in the one-touch closing direction, and hold it there for approximately 6 seconds or more.
4. Press and hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening direction. After the door window is completely opened, continue holding the switch for an additional 1 second or more.
5. Release the power window switch for a moment, resume pushing the switch in the one-touch opening direction, and hold it there for approximately 4 seconds or more.
6. Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction again. After the door window is com-

pletely closed, continue holding the switch for a further 1 second or more.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, start again from the beginning. If the window reverses and cannot be fully closed or opened, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Door lock linked window operation**

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key.* (→P.383)
- Except for Korea: The power windows can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control.* (→P.122)

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ **Power windows open warning buzzer**

A buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster when the engine switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened with the power windows open.

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (→P.404)

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **Closing the windows**

- The driver is responsible for all the power window operations, including the operation for the passengers. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the power windows. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the power window. Also, when riding with a child, it is recommended to use the window lock switch. (→P.145)
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- When using the wireless remote control or mechanical key and operating the power windows, operate the power window after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window. Also do not let a child operate window by the wireless remote control or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

■ **Jam protection function**

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets jammed just before the window is fully closed. Be careful not to get any part of your body jammed in the window.

■ **Catch protection function**

- Never use any part of your body or clothing to intentionally activate the catch protection function.
- The catch protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window is fully opened. Be careful not to get any part of your body or clothing caught in the window.

Preventing accidental operation (window lock switch)

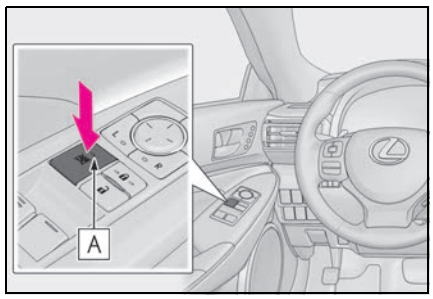
This function can be used to prevent

children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.

Press the switch.

The indicator [A] will come on and the passenger windows will be locked.

The passenger window can still be opened and closed using the driver's switch even if the lock switch is on.



■ When the battery is disconnected

The window lock switch is disabled. If necessary, press the window lock switch after reconnecting the battery.

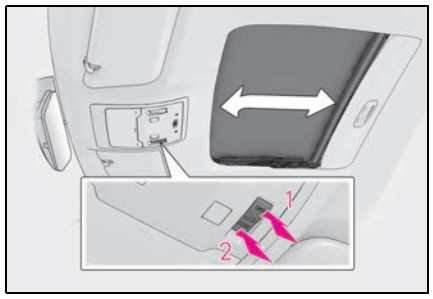
Moon roof*

*: If equipped

Use the overhead switches to open and close the moon roof and tilt it up and down.

Operating the moon roof

■ Opening and closing



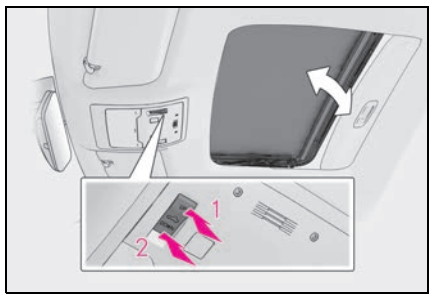
1 Opens the moon roof*

The moon roof tilts up and then fully opens.

2 Closes the moon roof*

*: Lightly press either way of the moon roof switch to stop the moon roof partway.

■ Tilting up and down



1 Tilts the moon roof up*

2 Tilts the moon roof down*

*: Lightly press either way of the moon roof

switch to stop the moon roof partway.

■ **The moon roof can be operated when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Operating the moon roof after turning the engine off**

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds after the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. It cannot, however, be operated once either door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while the moon roof is closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

■ **Sunshade**

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

■ **Door lock linked moon roof operation**

- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key.* (→P.383)
- Except for Korea: The moon roof can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control.* (→P.120)

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ **If the moon roof does not close normally**

Perform the following procedure:

1 Stop the vehicle.

2 Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch.*

The moon roof will close, reopen and pause for approximately 10 seconds. Then it will close again and stop at the completely closed position.

3 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

*: If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

If the moon roof does not fully close even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **If the moon roof does not move normally**

If the moon roof does not open or close normally or the automatic opening function does not operate, perform the following initialization procedure.

1 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

2 Operate the moon roof.

Depending on the kind of malfunction perform either of the following:

▶ If the moon roof does not open when the "OPEN" switch is pressed

3 Press and hold the "DOWN" switch or "CLOSE" switch until the moon roof is completely closed.
The moon roof will open and close a few times before it closes completely.

4 Confirm that the moon roof has completely stopped and release the switch.

▶ If the moon roof does not open completely automatically even though it tilts up and opens while the "OPEN" switch is being pressed and held

3 Press and hold the "OPEN" switch until the moon roof opens completely.

4 Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch until the moon roof closes completely.

5 Press and hold the "UP" switch until the moon roof tilts up and stops.

6 Press and hold the "DOWN" switch until the moon roof tilts down and stops at the completely closed position.

If you release the switch while the moon roof is moving, perform the procedure again from the beginning.

If, after performing the above procedures correctly, the moon roof still does not open or close normally or the automatic opening function does not operate, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ Moon roof open warning buzzer

A buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster when the engine switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened with the moon roof open.

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P.404)

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Opening the moon roof

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

■ Opening and closing the moon roof

- The driver is responsible for moon roof opening and closing operations. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the moon roof. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the moon roof.
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.



- When using the wireless remote control or mechanical key and operating the moon roof, operate the moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the moon roof. Also, do not let a child operate moon roof by the wireless remote control or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the moon roof.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

■ Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.

WARNING

- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof is fully closed. Also, the jam protection function is not designed to operate while the moon roof switch is being pressed. Take care so that your fingers, etc. do not get caught.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the moon roof

- Before opening, make sure that there are no foreign objects such as stones or ice around the opening.
- Do not hit the face or edge of the moon roof with hard objects.

■ Operating the moon roof

There is the possibility that water or rain will get into the vehicle if you operate the moon roof after a rainfall, snowfall or car wash. Wipe the moon roof dry with a cloth before operating it.

4-1. Before driving

Driving the vehicle 152

Cargo and luggage 158

Trailer towing 159

4-2. Driving procedures

Engine (ignition) switch 160

Automatic transmission 163

Turn signal lever 168

Parking brake 169

ASC (Active Sound Control) 169

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers

Headlight switch 170

Automatic High Beam 172

Fog light switch 174

Windshield wipers and washer 175

4-4. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap 182

4-5. Using the driving support systems

Lexus Safety System + ... 185

PCS (Pre-Collision System) 188

LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 196

RSA (Road Sign Assist) 204

Dynamic radar cruise control 207

Cruise control 216

BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 218

Lexus parking assist-sensor 226

Driving mode select switch 232

Launch control 233

Active rear wing 235

TVD (Torque Vectoring Differential) 238

Driving assist systems 239

4-6. Driving tips

Winter driving tips 244

Eco-friendly driving tips 246

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving:

Driving procedure

■ **Starting the engine**

→P.160

■ **Driving**

1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (→P.163)

2 Release the parking brake. (→P.169)

3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

■ **Stopping**

1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to P or N. (→P.163)

■ **Parking the vehicle**

1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

2 Set the parking brake (→P.169), and shift the shift lever to P (→P.163).

3 Press the engine switch to stop the engine.

4 Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

If parking on a hill, block the wheels as needed.

■ **Starting off on a steep uphill**

1 Make sure that the parking brake is set and shift the shift lever to D.

2 Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

3 Release the parking brake.

■ **When starting off on an uphill**

The hill-start assist control will activate. (→P.240)

■ **Driving in the rain**

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

■ **Engine speed while driving**

In the following conditions, the engine speed may become high while driving. This is due to automatic up-shifting control or down-shifting implementation to meet driving conditions. It does not indicate sudden acceleration.

- The vehicle is judged to be driving uphill or downhill
- When the accelerator pedal is released
- When the brake pedal is depressed while sport mode is selected

■ **Restraining the engine output (Brake Override System)**

- When the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed at the same time, the engine output may be restrained.

● A warning message is displayed on the multi-information display while the system is operating.

■ **Restraining sudden start (Drive-Start Control)**

● When the following unusual operation is performed, the engine output may be restrained.
- When the shift lever is shifted from R to D, D to R, N to R, P to D, or P to R (D includes M) with the accelerator pedal depressed, a warning message appears on the multi-information display. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instruction.
- When the accelerator pedal is depressed too much while the vehicle is in reverse.

● While Drive-Start Control is being activated, your vehicle may have trouble escaping from the mud or fresh snow. In such case, deactivate TRC (→P.240) to cancel Drive-Start Control so that the vehicle may become able to escape from the mud or fresh snow.

■ **Breaking in your new Lexus**

To extend the life of the vehicle, observing the following precautions is recommended:

● For the first 300 km (186 miles):

Avoid sudden stops.

● For the first 1000 km (621 miles):
- Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
- Avoid sudden acceleration.
- Do not drive continuously in low gears.
- Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

■ **Drum-in-disc type parking brake system**

Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system. This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drum are replaced. Have your Lexus dealer perform the bedding down operation.

■ **Operating your vehicle in a foreign country**

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P.396)

■ **Brake pads and discs**

The brake pads and discs are designed for use under high load conditions. Therefore, brake noise may be generated depending on the vehicle speed, braking force and vehicle environment (temperature, humidity, etc.).

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **When starting the vehicle**

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

■ **When driving the vehicle**

● Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
- Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident.
- When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
- Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly. This allows you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
- Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.

WARNING

- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials. The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. These hot parts may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.
- During normal driving, do not turn off the engine. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
  However, in the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P.344
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
  Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P.163)
- Do not adjust the positions of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
  Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle.

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle.
- Sudden acceleration, engine braking due to shifting, or changes in engine speed could cause the vehicle to skid.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected.

■ When shifting the shift lever

- Do not let the vehicle roll backward while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in R.
  Doing so may cause the engine to stall or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- Do not shift the shift lever to P while the vehicle is moving.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to a driving position while the vehicle is moving backward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to R while the vehicle is moving forward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Moving the shift lever to N while the vehicle is moving will disengage the engine from the transmission. Engine braking is not available when N is selected.
- Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. Shifting the shift lever to a gear other than P or N may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

WARNING

■ If a brake pad wear warning message is displayed

Have the brake pads checked and replaced by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Rotor damage may result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

Moderate levels of the brake pad and disc wear allow enhanced braking power. As a result, the discs may wear more quickly than conventional brake discs. Therefore, when replacing the brake pads, Lexus recommends that you also have the thickness of the discs measured.

It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

■ When the vehicle is stopped

- Do not race the engine.
  If the vehicle is in any gear other than P or N, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.
- In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the engine is running, and apply the parking brake as necessary.
- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.
- Avoid revving or racing the engine.
  Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
  Doing so may result in the following:
  - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
  - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of glasses to deform or crack.
  - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the vehicle. If a cigarette lighter is in a place such as the glove box or on the floor, it may be lit accidentally when luggage is loaded or the seat is adjusted, causing a fire.
- Do not attach adhesive discs to the windshield or windows. Do not place containers such as air fresheners on the instrument panel or dashboard. Adhesive discs or containers may act as lenses, causing a fire in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a door or window open if the curved glass is coated with a metallized film such as a silver-colored one. Reflected sunlight may cause the glass to act as a lens, causing a fire.
- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to P, stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
  Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
  If the vehicle is parked with the shift lever in P but the parking brake is not set, the vehicle may start to move, possibly leading to an accident.

WARNING

- Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
  Doing so may cause burns.

■ When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, if you accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

■ When braking

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
  Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also, the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
- If the brake booster device does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid hills or sharp turns that require braking.
  In this case, braking is still possible, but the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Also, the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.
- Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls.
  Each push on the brake pedal uses up the reserve for the power-assisted brakes.
- The brake system consists of 2 individual hydraulic systems; if one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase.
  Have your brakes fixed immediately.

For vehicles equipped with carbon ceramic brakes (CCB), in situations such as the following, braking performance may be temporarily reduced:

- When the brake pads or brake discs have recently been replaced
- When the brakes are wet, such as after washing the vehicle or when driving through water or snow
- When the temperature of the brake discs is low

If the wheels become full of snow, such as when driving through deep snow, ice may become stuck between a brake pad and disk and braking performance may be reduced.
Drive with sufficient space between your vehicle and preceding vehicles, at a moderate speed and depress the brake more firmly than normal when decelerating.

■ If the vehicle becomes stuck

Do not spin the wheels excessively when a driven wheel is up in the air, or the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, etc. This may damage the driveline components or propel the vehicle forward or backward, causing an accident.

NOTICE

■ When driving the vehicle

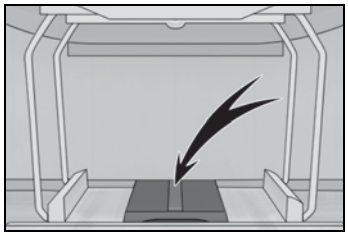
- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time while driving, as this may restrain the engine output.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill.

■ When parking the vehicle

- Always set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

NOTICE

- Vehicles with titanium mufflers: Be careful when parking in a parking spot with anything protruding from the surface, such as a multi-level parking system, as the protruding area may contact and damage the muffler.



Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for an extended period of time. Doing so may damage the power steering motor.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.
- Vehicles with titanium mufflers: As the vehicle's ground clearance is low, when driving over bumps or areas where the road height changes, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the muffler.

If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds or vibrations.
- The vehicle will lean abnormally.

Information on what to do in case of a flat tire (→P.362, 369)

When encountering flooded roads

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Lexus dealer check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transmission, differential, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft, bearings and suspension joints (where possible), and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

Precaution for CCB (Carbon Ceramic Brake) discs (if equipped)

Be careful not to subject the CCB discs to any kind of strong impact.

Even if there is no obvious damage, in the following situations, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer:

- If the vehicle is involved in an accident that may affect the suspension or wheels
- If the brake pads have worn out and the metal part of the pad is in contact with the CCB disc surface

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load:

WARNING

■ **Things that must not be carried in the trunk**

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the trunk:

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

■ **Storage precautions**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, may block the driver's vision, or may result in items hitting the driver or passengers, possibly causing an accident.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the trunk whenever possible.
- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations.
  - At the feet of the driver
  - On the front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
  - On the package tray
  - On the instrument panel
  - On the dashboard
  - In front of the Center Display
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment.

■ **Load and distribution**

- Do not overload your vehicle.
- Do not apply loads unevenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

Trailer towing

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Lexus also does not recommend the installation of a tow hitch or the use of a tow hitch carrier for a wheelchair, scooter, bicycle, etc. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing or for the use of tow hitch mounted carriers.



Engine (ignition) switch

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the engine or changes engine switch modes.

Starting the engine

1 Check that the parking brake is set.

2 Check that the shift lever is in P.

3 Firmly depress the brake pedal.

 and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.
If it is not displayed, the engine cannot be started.

4 Press the engine switch shortly and firmly.

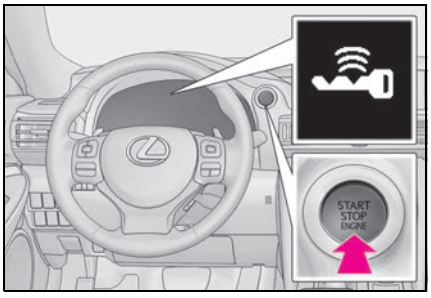
When operating the engine switch, one short, firm press is enough.

It is not necessary to press and hold the switch.

The engine will crank until it starts or for up to 30 seconds, whichever is less.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the engine is completely started.

The engine can be started from any engine switch mode.



■ **If the engine does not start**

- The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P.83) Contact your Lexus dealer.
- Check that the shift lever is securely set in P. The engine may not start if the shift lever is displaced out of P.

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P.118

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

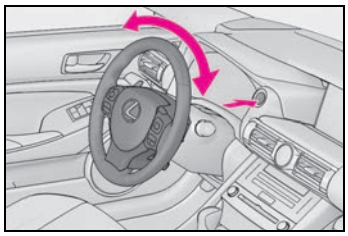
→P.131

■ **Notes for the entry function**

→P.131

■ **Steering lock function**

- After turning the engine switch off and opening and closing the doors, the steering wheel will be locked due to the steering lock function. Operating the engine switch again automatically cancels the steering lock.
- When the steering lock cannot be released, "Steering Wheel Lock Press Engine Switch while Turning Wheel" will be displayed on the multi-information display.
  Check that the shift lever is in P. Press the engine switch while turning the steering wheel left and right.



- To prevent the steering lock motor from overheating, operation of the motor may be suspended if the engine is turned on and off repeatedly in a short period of time. In this case, refrain from operating the engine switch. After about 10 seconds, the steering lock motor will resume functioning.

■ Electronic key battery

→P.336

■ Operation of the engine switch

- If the switch is not pressed shortly and firmly, the engine switch mode may not change or the engine may not start.
- If attempting to restart the engine immediately after turning the engine switch off, the engine may not start in some cases. After turning the engine switch off, please wait a few seconds before restarting the engine.

■ Customization

If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting, refer to P.382.

WARNING

■ When starting the engine

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances. Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Caution while driving

If engine failure occurs while the vehicle is moving, do not lock or open the doors until the vehicle reaches a safe and complete stop. Activation of the steering lock in this circumstance may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ When starting the engine

- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the engine switch

If the engine switch seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately.

Stopping the engine

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Set the parking brake (→P.169), and shift the shift lever to P.
3. Press the engine switch.
4. Release the brake pedal and check that the display on the meters is off.

WARNING

■ Stopping the engine in an emergency

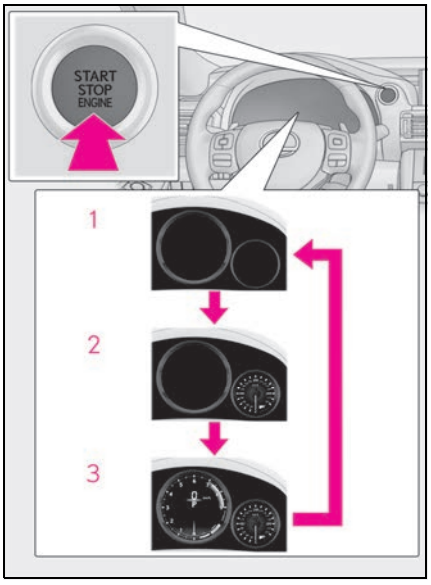
- If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the engine switch for more than 2 seconds, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession. (→P.344)

However, do not touch the engine switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

- If the engine switch is operated while the vehicle is running, a warning message will be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer sounds.
- To restart the engine after performing an emergency shutdown, shift the shift lever to N and then press the engine switch.

Changing engine switch modes

Modes can be changed by pressing the engine switch with brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)



1 Off*

The emergency flashers can be used. The analog speedometer and the tachometer will not be illuminated. However, if the welcome illumination is operating, the analog speedometer will illuminate. (Welcome illumination: →P.101)

2 ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

The analog speedometer is illuminated.

3 IGNITION ON mode

All electrical components can be used. The analog speedometer and the tachometer will be illuminated.

*: If the shift lever is in a position other than P when turning off the engine, the engine switch will be turned to ACCESSORY mode, not to off.

Auto power off function

If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode for more than 20 minutes or IGNITION ON mode (with the engine not running) for more than an hour with the shift lever in P, the engine switch will automatically turn off. However, this function cannot entirely prevent battery discharge. Do not leave the vehicle with the engine switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time when the engine is not running.

NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

- Do not leave the engine switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time without the engine running.
- If the analog speedometer is illuminated and the engine is not running, the engine switch is not off. Exit the vehicle after turning the engine switch off. However, if the welcome illumination is operating, the analog speedometer will be illuminated even though the engine switch is off. (Welcome illumination: →P.101)

When stopping the engine with the shift lever in a position other than P

If the engine is stopped with the shift lever in a position other than P, the engine switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. Perform the following procedure to turn the switch off:

1 Check that the parking brake is set.

2 Shift the shift lever to P.

3 Check that "Turn Off Vehicle" is displayed on the multi-information display and then press the engine switch once.

4 Check that "Turn Off Vehicle" on the multi-information display is off.

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not stop the engine when the shift lever is in a position other than P. If the engine is stopped in another shift lever position, the engine switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode, battery discharge may occur.

Automatic transmission

Select the shift position depending on your purpose and situation.

Shift position purpose and functions

Shift position	Objective or function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral (Condition in which the power is not transmitted)
D	Normal driving *1
M	M mode driving *2 (→P.166)

*1: To improve fuel efficiency and reduce noise, shift the shift lever to D for normal driving.

*2: Any gear range can be fixed when driving in M mode.

■ To protect the automatic transmission

If the automatic transmission fluid temperature is high, "Transmission Fluid Temp High See Owner's Manual" will be displayed on the multi-information display and the vehicle will go into transmission protection mode automatically. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ When driving with cruise control or dynamic radar cruise control activated

Even when performing the following actions with the intent of enabling engine braking, engine braking will not occur because cruise control or dynamic radar cruise control will not be canceled.

- While driving in the D position, downshifting to 7, 6, 5 or 4. (→P.165)
- When switching the driving mode to sport mode while driving in the D position. (→P.232)

■ **Restraining sudden start (Drive-Start Control)**

→P.153

■ **AI-SHIFT**

- The AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear according to driver performance and driving conditions.

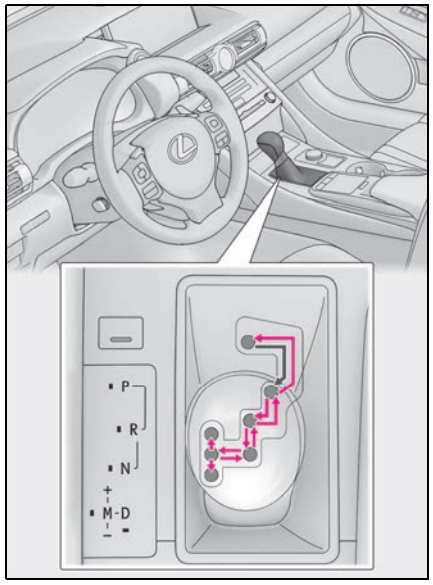
The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in D. (Shifting the shift lever to the M position cancels the function.)

WARNING

■ **When driving on slippery road surfaces**

Be careful of downshifting and sudden acceleration, as this could result in the vehicle skidding to the side or spinning.

Shifting the shift lever



While the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, move the shift lever with the brake pedal depressed.

When shifting the shift lever between P and D, make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped.

■ **Shift lock system**

The shift lock system is a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever in starting.
The shift lever can be shifted from P only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the brake pedal is being depressed.

■ **If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P**

First, check whether the brake pedal is being depressed.

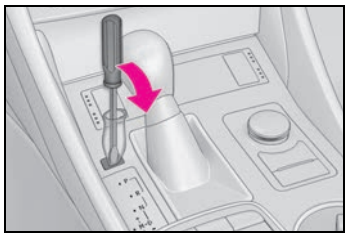
If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake pedal, there may be a problem with the shift lock system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted.

Releasing the shift lock:

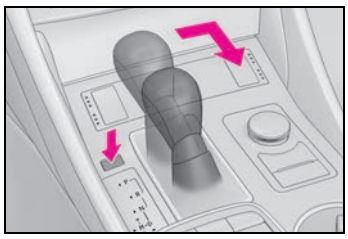
1 Set the parking brake.
2 Turn the engine switch to off.
3 Depress the brake pedal.
4 Pry the cover up with a flathead screwdriver or equivalent tool.

To prevent damage to the cover, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



5 Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.



WARNING

■ To prevent an accident when releasing the shift lock

Before pressing the shift lock override button, make sure to set the parking brake and depress the brake pedal.
If the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed instead of the brake pedal when the shift lock override button is pressed and the shift lever is shifted out of P, the vehicle may suddenly start, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

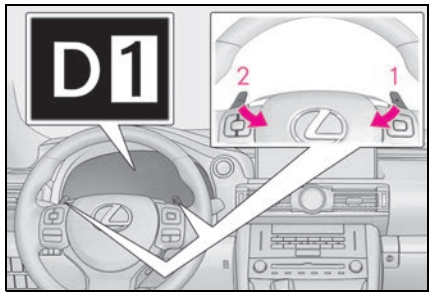
Selecting the driving mode

■ Driving mode

→P.232

Selecting shift ranges in the D position

To drive using temporary shift range selection, operate the "-" or "+" paddle shift switch.
When the "-" paddle shift switch is operated, the shift range will be downshifted to a range that enables engine braking force that is suitable to driving conditions. When the "+" paddle shift switch is operated, the shift range will be one gear higher than the gear in use during normal D position driving.
Changing the shift range allows restriction of the highest gear, preventing unnecessary upshifting and enabling the level of engine braking force to be selected.



1 Upshifting
2 Downshifting

The selected shift range, from D1 to D8, will be displayed on the meter.

To return to normal D position driving, the

"+" paddle shift switch must be held down for a period of time.

Meter display	Function
D2 - D8	A gear in the range between 1 and the selected gear is automatically chosen depending on vehicle speed and driving conditions
D1	Setting the gear at 1

A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking forces than a higher shift range.

■ Automatic deactivation of shift range selection in the D position

Shift range selection in the D position will be deactivated in the following situations:

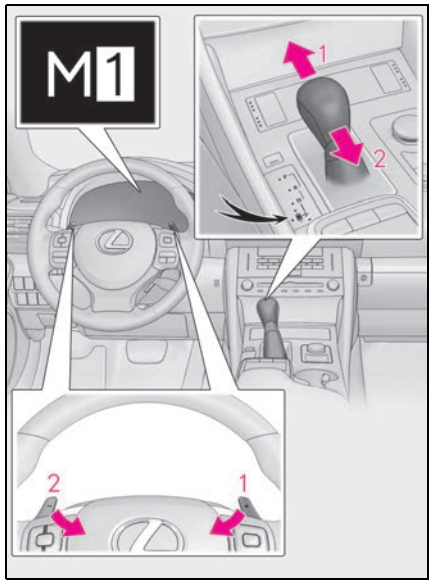
- When the vehicle comes to a stop
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed for more than a certain period of time
- When the shift lever is shifted to a position other than D

■ Downshifting restriction warning buzzer

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

Selecting gears in the M position

To enter M mode, shift the shift lever to M. Gears can then be selected by operating the shift lever or paddle shift switches, allowing you to drive in the gear of your choosing.



1 Upshifting

2 Downshifting

The gear changes once every time the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated.

The selected gear, from M1 to M8, will be fixed and displayed on the meter.

When in the M position, the gear will not change unless the shift lever or paddle shift switches are operated.

However, even when in the M position, the gears will be automatically changed in the following situation:

- When vehicle speed drops (downshift only).
- When a gear change is necessary to protect the engine or automatic transmission when the engine coolant temperature or automatic transmission fluid temperature is low, or other reasons.

In the following situations, the gear will

not shift even if the shift lever or paddle shift switches are operated.

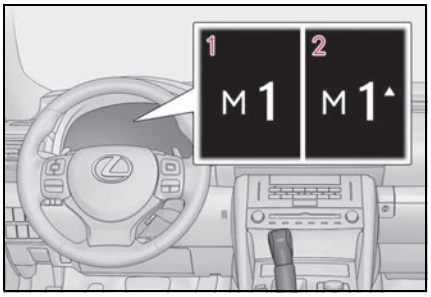
- "Slippery Road. Cannot Shift to Lower Gear" is displayed on the multi-information display.
- The vehicle speed is low (upshift only).

Downshifting restriction warning buzzer

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

Gear Shift Indicator (if equipped)

The Gear Shift Indicator display is a guide to help the driver achieve improved fuel economy and reduced exhaust emissions within limits of engine performance.



1 When not in operation

2 Shift-up indicator

Gear Shift Indicator function

- This function automatically operates during M mode.
- By following the Shift-up indicator and shifting up accordingly, it is possible to achieve improved fuel economy and reduced exhaust emissions.
- The Gear Shift Indicator does not have a similar function for down-shifting.
- Depending on the driving conditions, the Gear Shift Indicator may not display the Shift-up indicator while driving in M mode.

WARNING

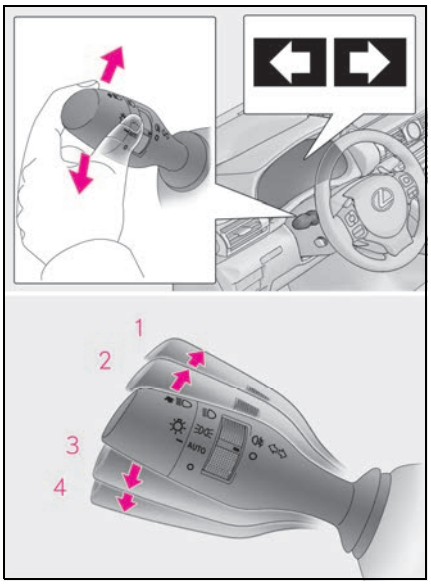
Gear Shift Indicator display (if equipped)

For safety, the driver should not look only at the display. Refer to the display when it is safe to do so while considering actual traffic and road conditions. Failure to do so may lead to an accident.

Turn signal lever

Operating instructions

The lever will return to its original position immediately after operation.



1 Right turn

2 Lane change to the right (move the lever partway and release it)

The right hand signals will flash 3 times.

3 Lane change to the left (move the lever partway and release it)

The left hand signals will flash 3 times.

4 Left turn

■ If the turn signals do not stop flashing after turning left or right, or if you want to stop them flashing

Operate the lever in the opposite direction to either position **2** or **3**. If you move the lever to either position **1** or **4**, the selected turn signals will flash.

■ Turn signals can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ If the indicator flashes faster than usual

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

■ If the turn signals stop flashing before a lane change has been performed

Operate the lever again.

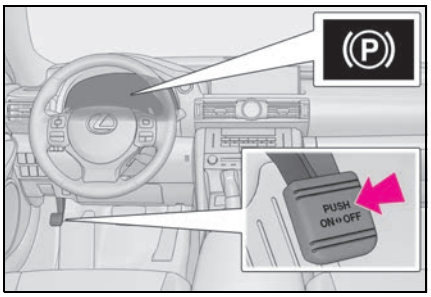
■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P.404)

Parking brake

Operating instructions

To set the parking brake, fully depress the parking brake pedal with your left foot while depressing the brake pedal with your right foot.
(Depressing the pedal again releases the parking brake.)



■ **Parking the vehicle**

→P.152

■ **Parking brake engaged warning buzzer**

A buzzer will sound if the vehicle is driven with the parking brake engaged. "Release Parking Brake" is displayed on the multi-information display.

■ **Usage in winter time**

→P.245

NOTICE

■ **Before driving**

Fully release the parking brake. Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.

ASC (Active Sound Control)*

*: if equipped

The ASC system sonically emphasizes the vehicle's response to the driver's operation of the accelerator pedal and shift lever or paddle shift switches. The dynamic engine sound enabled by this system helps the driver further enjoy the feeling of unity with the vehicle, particularly when driving in M mode.
(→P.166)

■ **The ASC system can be operated when**

The driving mode select switch is in SPORT S+ mode. (→P.232)

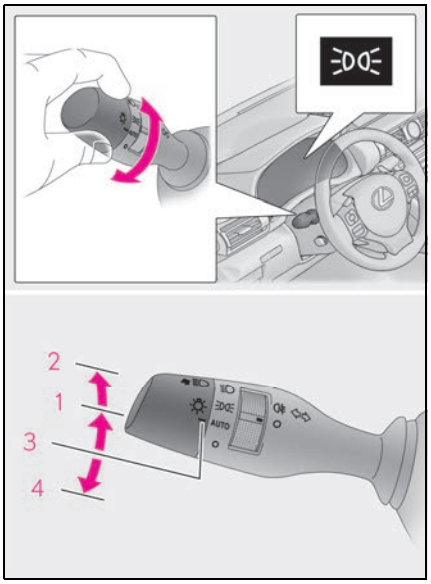
4 Driving

Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

Operating instructions

Operating the switch turns on the lights as follows:



1 The front position, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

2 The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

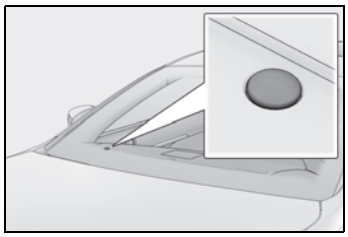
3 AUTO The headlights, daytime running lights (→P.170) and all the lights listed above turn on and off automatically. (When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.)

4 (if equipped) The daytime running lights turn on. (→P.170)

■ **Daytime running light system**

To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers during daytime driving, the daytime running lights turn on automatically whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released with the headlight switch off or in the "AUTO" position. (Illuminate brighter than the front position lights.) Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

■ **Headlight control sensor**



The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.
Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.

■ **Automatic light off system**

▶ Type A

If you open the driver's door with the engine switch off, all lights are turned off.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch off once and then back to or .

▶ Type B

● When the light switch is in or : The headlights turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off.

● When the light switch is in AUTO: The headlights and all lights turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch off once and then back to ≡D◐≡ or ≡D.

■ **Light reminder buzzer**

A buzzer sounds when the engine switch is turned off or turned to ACCESSORY mode and the driver's door is opened while the lights are turned on.

■ **Automatic headlight leveling system**

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

■ **Customization**

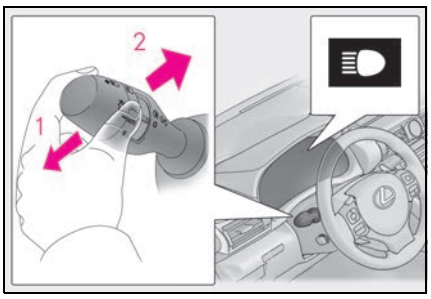
Some functions can be customized. (→P.404)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

Turning on the high beam headlights



1 With the headlights on, push the lever away from you to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever toward you to the center position to turn the high beams off.

2 Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beams once.

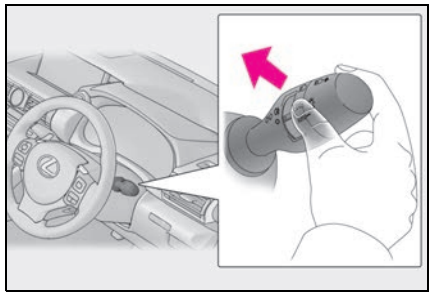
You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

Follow me home system (if equipped)

This system allows the headlights and front position lights to be turned on for 30 seconds when the engine switch is off.

Pull the lever toward you and release it with the light switch is in AUTO after turning the engine switch off.

Pull the lever toward you and release it again to turn off the lights.



4 Driving

Automatic High Beam*

*: If equipped

The Automatic High Beam uses a camera sensor located behind the upper portion of the windshield to assess the brightness of the lights of vehicles ahead, streetlights, etc., and automatically turns the high beams on or off as necessary.

WARNING

■ Limitations of the Automatic High Beam

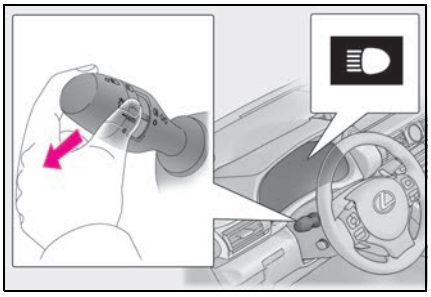
Do not overly rely on the Automatic High Beam. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning the high beams on or off manually if necessary.

■ To prevent incorrect operation of the Automatic High Beam system

Do not overload the vehicle.

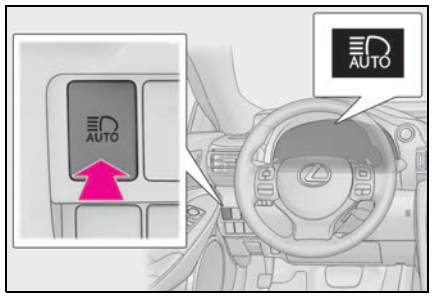
Activating the Automatic High Beam

1 Push the lever away from you with the headlight switch in the ≡D or AUTO position.



2 Press the Automatic High Beam switch.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will come on when the system is operating.



■ Conditions to turn the high beams on/off automatically

● When all of the following conditions are met, the high beams will be turned on automatically (after approximately 1 second):
- The vehicle speed is approximately 30 - 40 km/h (19 - 25 mph)* or more.
- The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
- There are no vehicles ahead with headlights or tail lights turned on.
- There are few streetlights on the road ahead.

● If any of the following conditions is met, the high beams will turn off automatically:
- The vehicle speed is below approximately 25 - 30 km/h (16 - 19 mph)*.
- The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
- Vehicles ahead have their headlights or tail lights turned on.
- There are many streetlights on the road ahead.

*: The vehicle speed at which the high beams are automatically turned on/off may vary depending on the country for which the vehicle is approved.

■ Camera sensor detection information

● The high beams may not be automatically turned off in the following situations:
- When a vehicle suddenly appears from around a curve

- When the vehicle is cut in front of by another vehicle
- When vehicles ahead cannot be detected due to repeated curves, road dividers or roadside trees
- When vehicles ahead appear in a faraway lane on a wide road
- When the lights of vehicles ahead are not on

● The high beams may be turned off if a vehicle ahead that is using fog lights without its headlights turned on is detected.

● House lights, street lights, traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs and other reflective objects may cause the high beams to change to the low beams, or the low beams to remain on.

● The following factors may affect the amount of time taken for the high beams to turn on or off:

- The brightness of the headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of vehicles ahead
- The movement and direction of vehicles ahead
- When a vehicle ahead only has operational lights on one side
- When a vehicle ahead is a two-wheeled vehicle
- The condition of the road (gradient, curve, condition of the road surface, etc.)
- The number of passengers and amount of luggage in the vehicle

● The high beams may turn on or off unexpectedly.

● Bicycles or similar vehicles may not be detected.

● In the following situations the system may not be able to correctly detect the surrounding brightness level. This may cause the low beams to remain on or the high beams to flash or dazzle pedestrians or vehicles ahead. In such a case, it is necessary to manually switch between the high and low beams.

- When driving in inclement weather (heavy rain, snow, fog, sandstorms, etc.)
- When the windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt, etc.
- When the windshield is cracked or damaged
- When the camera sensor is deformed or dirty
- When the temperature of the camera sensor is extremely high
- When the surrounding brightness level is equal to that of headlights, tail lights or fog lights
- When headlights or tail lights of vehicles ahead are turned off, dirty, changing color, or not aimed properly
- When the vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc. from a preceding vehicle
- When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and darkness
- When frequently and repeatedly driving ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces (such as stone-paved roads, gravel roads, etc.)
- When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road
- When there is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or mirror
- When the back of a preceding vehicle is highly reflective, such as a container on a truck
- When the vehicle's headlights are damaged or dirty, or are not aimed properly
- When the vehicle is listing or titling due to a flat tire, a trailer being towed, etc.
- When the headlights are changed between the high beams and low beams repeatedly in an abnormal manner
- When the driver believes that the high beams may be flashing or dazzling pedestrians or other drivers
- When the vehicle is used in an area in which vehicles travel on the opposite side of the road of the country for which the vehicle was designed, for example using a vehicle designed for right-hand traffic in a left-hand traffic area, or vice versa

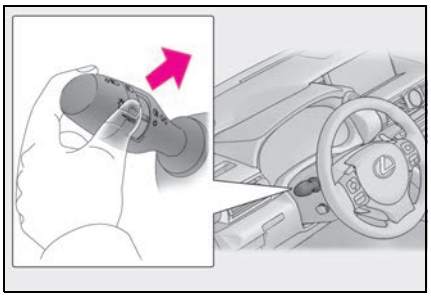
Turning the high beams on/off manually

■ Switching to the low beams

Pull the lever to its original position.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off.

Push the lever away from you to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.

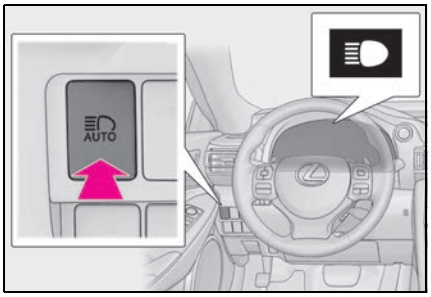


■ Switching to the high beams

Press the Automatic High Beam switch.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off and the high beam indicator will turn on.

Press the switch to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.

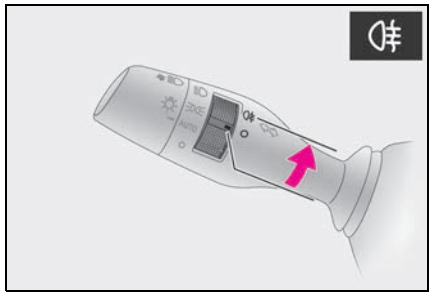


Fog light switch*

*: If equipped

The fog light secure excellent visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain and fog.

Operating instructions



Turns the rear fog light on

Releasing the switch ring returns it to O .

Operating the switch ring again turns the rear fog light off.

■ Operating conditions

The headlights are turned on.

■ Rear fog lights

- When the rear fog lights are on, the rear fog light indicator will illuminate in amber.
- Use the rear fog lights when driving in poor visibility conditions, such as rain or fog, to make your vehicle more visible to following vehicles. If the rear fog lights are used when visibility is not poor, they may impede the visibility of drivers in following vehicles. Use the rear fog lights only when necessary.

Windshield wipers and washer

Operating the lever can use the windshield wipers or the washer.

NOTICE

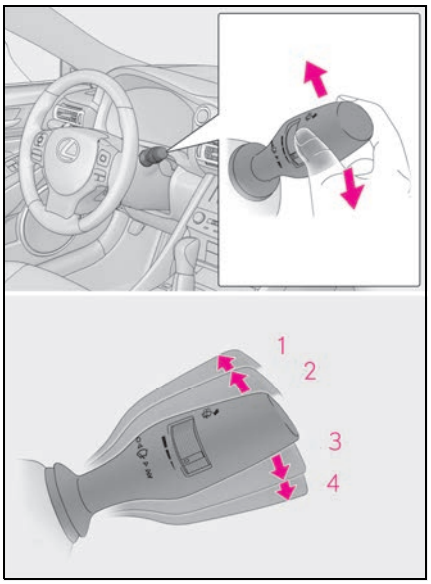
■ When the windshield is dry

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

Operating the wiper lever

Operating the lever operates the wipers or washer as follows. The lever will return to its original position immediately after operation.

▶ Intermittent windshield wipers with interval adjuster



1 Move the lever up by 2 levels

2 Move the lever up by 1 level

3 Move the lever down by 1 level

4 Move the lever down by 2 levels

Depending on the operating state of the wipers when the wiper lever is operated, the wipers will operate as follows.

- Current wiper operation: Off

Wiper lever operation	Wiper operation
	Temporary operation
	Temporary operation
	Intermittent operation
	High speed operation

- Current wiper operation: Intermittent operation

Wiper lever operation	Wiper operation
	Off
	Off
	Low speed operation
	High speed operation

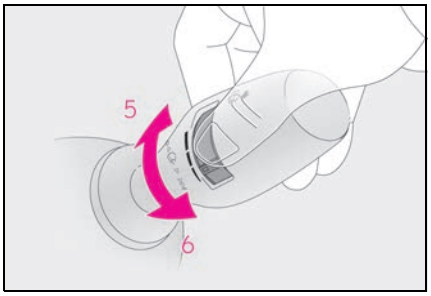
- Current wiper operation: Low speed operation

Wiper lever operation	Wiper operation
O	Off
⌓	Intermittent operation
▽	High speed operation
▽▽	High speed operation

- Current wiper operation: High speed operation

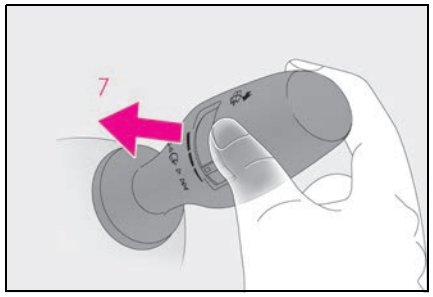
Wiper lever operation	Wiper operation
O	Off
⌓	Low speed operation
▽	No change
▽▽	No change

Wiper intervals can be adjusted when intermittent operation is selected.



5 Increases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency

6 Decreases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency



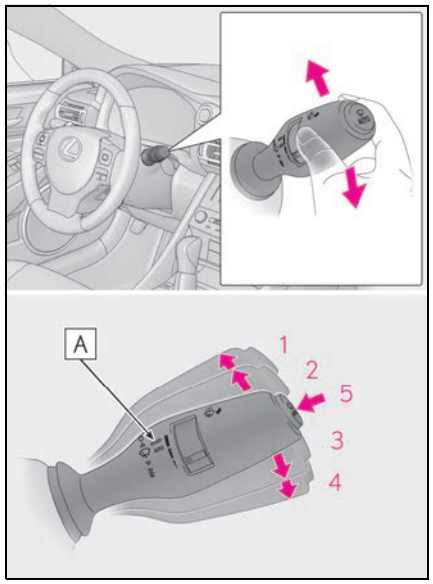
7 Washer/wiper dual operation

Pulling the lever operates the wipers and washer.

The wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.

When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the headlights are on, if the lever is pulled, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.

▶ Rain-sensing windshield wipers



1 Move the lever up by 2 levels

2 Move the lever up by 1 level

3 Move the lever down by 1 level

4 Move the lever down by 2 levels

5 AUTO mode on/off switch

With AUTO mode selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.

The AUTO mode indicator [A] will turn on when AUTO mode is selected.

Depending on the operating state of the wipers when the wiper lever is operated, the wipers will operate as follows.

- Current wiper operation: Off

Wiper lever operation	Wiper operation
	Temporary operation
	Temporary operation
	Low speed operation
	High speed operation

- Current wiper operation: Low speed operation

Wiper lever operation	Wiper operation
	Off
	Off
	High speed operation
	High speed operation

- Current wiper operation: High speed operation

Wiper lever operation	Wiper operation
	Off
	Low speed operation
	No change
	No change

- Current wiper operation: AUTO mode (Intermittent operation)

Wiper lever operation	Wiper operation
	Off
	Temporary operation*1
	Low speed operation*2
	High speed operation*2

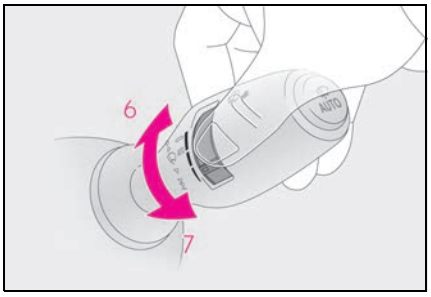
- Current wiper operation: AUTO mode (Continuously)

Wiper lever operation	Wiper operation
O	Off
△	No change
▽	Low speed operation *2
▽▽	High speed operation *2

*1: After temporary operation, the mode will return to AUTO mode.

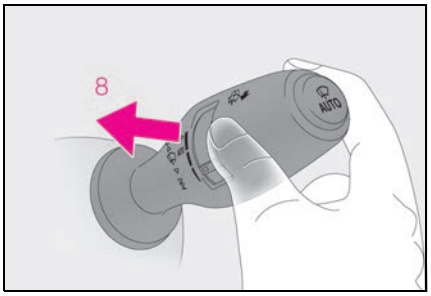
*2: AUTO mode will be canceled.

When AUTO mode is selected, the sensor sensitivity can be adjusted by turning the switch ring.



6 Increases the sensitivity

7 Decreases the sensitivity



8 Washer/wiper dual operation

Pulling the lever operates the wipers and washer.

The wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.

When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the headlights are on, if the lever is pulled, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.

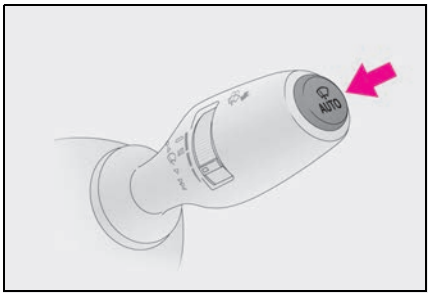
Switching between the intermittent windshield wipers and rain-sensing windshield wipers (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

The wipers can be used as intermittent windshield wipers, which operate regardless of vehicle speed or amount of raindrops. The intermittent windshield wiper operation can be switched when the vehicle is stopped and the wiper is off. The wiper operation cannot be switched during AUTO mode or while the intermittent windshield wipers are operating.

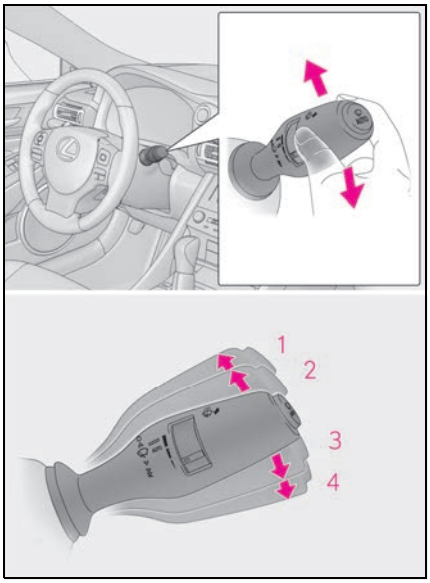
Press and hold AUTO until the AUTO mode indicator stops flashing.

If AUTO is pressed and held until the AUTO mode indicator stops flashing again, it will return to its previous state.

The wiper can be switched when the vehicle is stopped and the wipers are off.



■ Operation of the intermittent windshield wipers with interval adjuster



1 Move the lever up by 2 levels

2 Move the lever up by 1 level

3 Move the lever down by 1 level

4 Move the lever down by 2 levels

Depending on the operating state of the wipers when the wiper lever is operated, the wipers will operate as follows.

- Current wiper operation: Off

Wiper lever operation	Wiper operation
	Temporary operation
	Temporary operation
	Intermittent operation
	High speed operation

- Current wiper operation: Intermittent operation

Wiper lever operation	Wiper operation
	Off
	Off
	Low speed operation
	High speed operation

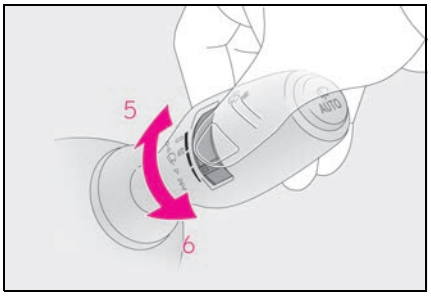
- Current wiper operation: Low speed operation

Wiper lever operation	Wiper operation
	Off
	Intermittent operation
	High speed operation
	High speed operation

- Current wiper operation: High speed operation

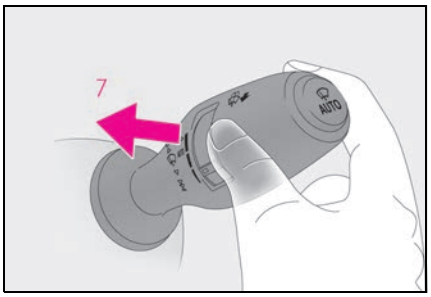
Wiper lever operation	Wiper operation
O	Off
△	Low speed operation
▽	No change
⧖	No change

Wiper intervals can be adjusted when intermittent operation is selected.



5 Increases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency

6 Decreases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency



7 Washer/wiper dual operation

Pulling the lever operates the wipers and washer.

The wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.

When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the headlights are on, if the lever is pulled, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.

■ The windshield wiper and washer can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Dripping prevention wiper sweep

After performing a washing and wiping operation several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.

However, this final wiper operation will not be performed while driving.

■ Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

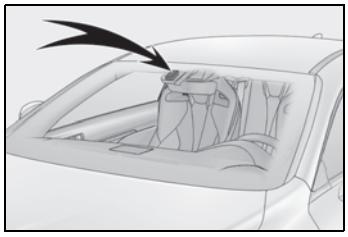
Vehicle speed affects the following even when the wipers are not in AUTO mode.

- Intermittent wiper interval
- Wiper operation when the washer is being used (delay until drip prevention wiper sweep occurs)

With low speed windshield wiper operation selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only when the vehicle is stationary.

■ Raindrop sensor (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

- The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.
  An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs etc. are present on the windshield.



- If the wiper is turned to AUTO mode while the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the wipers will operate once to show that AUTO mode is activated.
- If the temperature of the raindrop sensor is 85°C (185°F) or higher, or -30°C (-22°F) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than AUTO mode.

When the windshield wipers are in temporary operation (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

AUTO mode cannot be activated even if AUTO is pressed.

If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

WARNING

Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in AUTO mode

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in AUTO mode. Take care that your fingers or anything else do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

Caution regarding the use of washer fluid

When it is cold, do not use the washer fluid until the windshield becomes warm. The fluid may freeze on the windshield and cause low visibility. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

When a nozzle becomes blocked

In this case, contact your Lexus dealer. Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

Opening the fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap:

Before refueling the vehicle

- Close both side doors and windows, and turn the engine switch off.
- Confirm the type of fuel.

■ Fuel types

→P.403

■ Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your vehicle has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

⚠ WARNING

■ When refueling the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it. A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel. Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle. Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged. This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

■ When refueling

Observe the following precautions to prevent fuel overflowing from the fuel tank:

- Securely insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck.
- Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off.
- Do not top off the fuel tank.

NOTICE

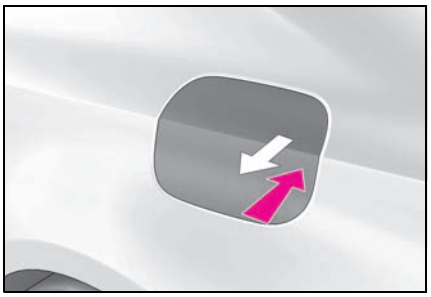
■ Refueling

Do not spill fuel during refueling. Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control system to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

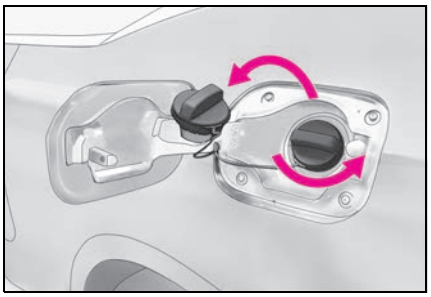
Opening the fuel tank cap

1 With the doors unlocked, press the center of the rear edge of the fuel filler door.

Push until you hear a click and take your hand away to slightly open the fuel filler door. Then open the door fully by hand.



2 Turn the fuel tank cap slowly and remove it, then put it into the holder on the fuel filler door.

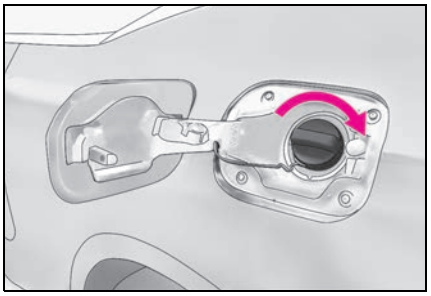


■ If the fuel filler door cannot be opened

→P.382

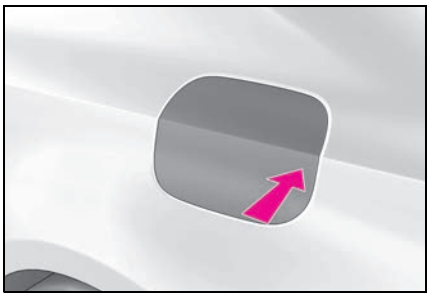
Closing the fuel tank cap

1 After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap until you hear a click. Once the cap is released, it will turn slightly in the opposite direction.



2 Close the fuel filler door, and press the center of the rear edge of the fuel filler door until you hear a click.

When you lock the doors, the fuel filler door will also lock.



■ When closing the fuel filler door

Do not lock the doors before closing the fuel filler door, as the fuel filler door cannot be closed if the doors are locked. If the doors are locked and the fuel filler door cannot be closed, unlock the doors and then close the fuel filler door.

■ Fuel filler door lock condition

The fuel filler door may not be locked even when the vehicle's doors are locked in the following situations:

- When operating the door lock button inside the vehicle
- When the automatic door locking system is operated (→P.125)

WARNING

■ When replacing the fuel tank cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

Lexus Safety System +*

*: If equipped

The Lexus Safety System + consists of the following drive assist systems and contributes to a safe and comfortable driving experience:

Driving assist system

■ **PCS (Pre-Collision System)**

→P.188

■ **LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)**

→P.196

■ **Automatic High Beam**

→P.172

■ **RSA (Road Sign Assist) (on some models)**

→P.204

■ **Dynamic radar cruise control**

→P.207

WARNING

■ Lexus Safety System +

The Lexus Safety System + is designed to operate under the assumption that the driver will drive safely, and is designed to help reduce the impact to the occupants and the vehicle in the case of a collision or assist the driver in normal driving conditions.

As there is a limit to the degree of recognition accuracy and control performance that this system can provide, do not overly rely on this system. The driver is always responsible for paying attention to the vehicle's surroundings and driving safely.

Vehicle data recording

The pre-collision system is equipped with a sophisticated computer that will record certain data, such as:

- Accelerator status
- Brake status
- Vehicle speed
- Operation status of the pre-collision system functions
- Information (such as the distance and relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead or other objects)

The pre-collision system does not record conversations, sounds or pictures.

● Data usage

Lexus may use the data recorded in this computer to diagnose malfunctions, conduct research and development, and improve quality.

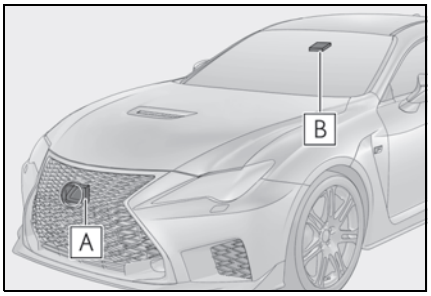
Lexus will not disclose the recorded data to a third party except:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or with the consent of the lessee if the vehicle is leased
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit
- For research purposes where the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Sensors

Two types of sensors, located behind

the front grille and windshield, detect information necessary to operate the drive assist systems.



A Radar sensor

B Camera sensor

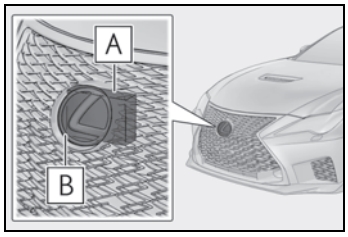
WARNING

■ To avoid malfunction of the radar sensor

Observe the following precautions.

Otherwise, the radar sensor may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Keep the radar sensor and front grille emblem clean at all times.



A Radar sensor

B Front grille emblem

If the front of the radar sensor or the front or back of the front grille emblem is dirty or covered with water droplets, snow, etc., clean it.

Clean the radar sensor and front grille emblem with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.

- Do not attach accessories, stickers (including transparent stickers) or other items to the radar sensor, front grille emblem or surrounding area.
- Do not subject the radar sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact. If the radar sensor, front grille, or front bumper has been subjected to a strong impact, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the radar sensor.
- Do not modify or paint the radar sensor, front grille emblem or surrounding area.
- If the radar sensor, front grille, or front bumper needs to be removed and installed, or replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ To avoid malfunction of the camera sensor

Observe the following precautions.

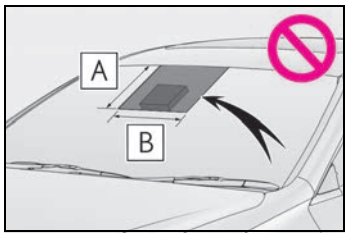
Otherwise, the camera sensor may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Keep the windshield clean at all times.
  - If the windshield is dirty or covered with an oily film, water droplets, snow, etc., clear the windshield.
  - If a glass coating agent is applied to the windshield, it will still be necessary to use the windshield wipers to remove water droplets, etc. from the area of the windshield in front of the camera sensor.

WARNING

- If the inner side of the windshield where the camera sensor is installed is dirty, contact your Lexus dealer.

- Do not attach objects, such as stickers, transparent stickers, and so forth, to the outer side of the windshield in front of the camera sensor (shaded area in the illustration).



A From the top of the windshield to approximately 1 cm (0.4 in.) below the bottom of the camera sensor

B Approximately 20 cm (7.9 in.) (Approximately 10 cm [4.0 in.] to the right and left from the center of the camera sensor)

- If the part of the windshield in front of the camera sensor is fogged up or covered with condensation or ice, use the windshield defogger to remove the fog, condensation or ice. (→P.259)

- If water droplets cannot be properly removed from the area of the windshield in front of the camera sensor by the windshield wipers, replace the wiper insert or wiper blade.

If the wiper inserts or wiper blades need to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.

- Do not attach window tinting to the windshield.

- Replace the windshield if it is damaged or cracked.
If the windshield needs to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.

- Do not get the camera sensor wet.

- Do not allow bright lights to shine into the camera sensor.

- Do not dirty or damage the camera sensor.
When cleaning the inside of the windshield, do not allow glass cleaner to contact the lens. Also, do not touch the lens.
If the lens is dirty or damaged, contact your Lexus dealer.

- Do not subject the camera sensor to a strong impact.

- Do not change the installation position or direction of the camera sensor or remove it.

- Do not disassemble the camera sensor.

- Do not modify any components of the vehicle around the camera sensor (inside rear view mirror, etc.) or ceiling.

- Do not attach any accessories that may obstruct the camera sensor to the hood, front grille or front bumper. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.

- If a surfboard or other long object is to be mounted on the roof, make sure that it will not obstruct the camera sensor.

- Do not modify the headlights or other lights.

PCS (Pre-Collision System)*

*: If equipped

The pre-collision system uses a radar sensor and camera sensor to detect vehicles and pedestrians*1 in front of your vehicle. When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle or pedestrian is high, a warning operates to urge the driver to take evasive action and the potential brake pressure is increased to help the driver avoid the collision. If the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle or pedestrian is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or help reduce the impact of the collision.

The pre-collision system can be disabled/enabled and the warning timing can be changed. (→P.191)

*1: Depending on the region in which the vehicle was sold, the pedestrian detection function may not be available. See the following table for details.

Regions

▶ Region A

Countries/areas	Function availability
Kazakhstan, Russia, Oman, Qatar, Kuwait, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates	The pedestrian detection function is available

▶ Region B

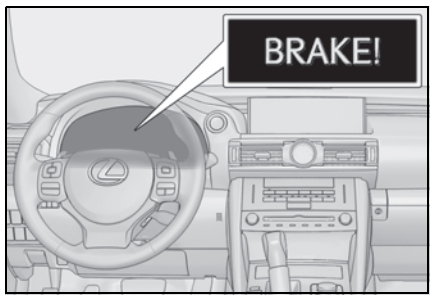
Countries/areas	Function availability
Korea, Singapore, Taiwan, Brunei, Malaysia, Jordan, Lebanon, South Africa	The pedestrian detection function is not available

The countries and areas for each region listed in the table are current as of March 2019. However, depending on when the vehicle was sold, the countries and areas of each region may be different. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.

System functions

■ **Pre-collision warning**

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, a buzzer will sound and a warning message will be displayed on the multi-information display to urge the driver to take evasive action.



■ **Pre-collision brake assist**

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, the system applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

■ **Pre-collision braking**

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, the system warns the driver. If the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or reduce the collision speed.

■ **Suspension control (if equipped)**

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, the AVS (→P.240) will control the damping force of the shock absorbers to help maintain an appropriate vehicle posture.

WARNING

■ **Limitations of the pre-collision system**

- The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings. Do not use the pre-collision system instead of normal braking operations under any circumstances. This system will not prevent collisions or lessen collision damage or injury in every situation. Do not overly rely on this system. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Although this system is designed to help avoid a collision or help reduce the impact of the collision, its effectiveness may change according to various conditions, therefore the system may not always be able to achieve the same level of performance.
  Read the following conditions carefully. Do not overly rely on this system and always drive carefully.
  - Conditions under which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision: →P.192
  - Conditions under which the system may not operate properly: →P.194
- Do not attempt to test the operation of the pre-collision system yourself. Depending on the objects used for testing (dummies, cardboard objects imitating detectable objects, etc.), the system may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident.

■ **Pre-collision braking**

- When the pre-collision braking function is operating, a large amount of braking force will be applied.
- If the vehicle is stopped by the operation of the pre-collision braking function, the pre-collision braking function operation will be canceled after approximately 2 seconds. Depress the brake pedal as necessary.

WARNING

- The pre-collision braking function may not operate if certain operations are performed by the driver. If the accelerator pedal is being depressed strongly or the steering wheel is being turned, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and possibly prevent the pre-collision braking function from operating.
- In some situations, while the pre-collision braking function is operating, operation of the function may be canceled if the accelerator pedal is depressed strongly or the steering wheel is turned and the system determines that the driver is taking evasive action.
- If the brake pedal is being depressed, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and possibly delay the operation timing of the pre-collision braking function.

When to disable the pre-collision system

In the following situations, disable the system, as it may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

- When the vehicle is being towed
- When your vehicle is towing another vehicle
- When transporting the vehicle via truck, boat, train or similar means of transportation
- When the vehicle is raised on a lift with the engine running and the tires are allowed to rotate freely
- When inspecting the vehicle using a drum tester such as a chassis dynamometer or speedometer tester, or when using an on vehicle wheel balancer
- When a strong impact is applied to the front bumper or front grille, due to an accident or other reasons
- If the vehicle cannot be driven in a stable manner, such as when the vehicle has been in an accident or is malfunctioning
- When the vehicle is driven in a sporty manner or off-road
- When the tires are not properly inflated
- When the tires are very worn
- When tires of a size other than specified are installed
- When tire chains are installed
- When a compact spare tire or an emergency tire puncture repair kit is used
- If equipment (snow plow, etc.) that may obstruct the radar sensor or camera sensor is temporarily installed to the vehicle

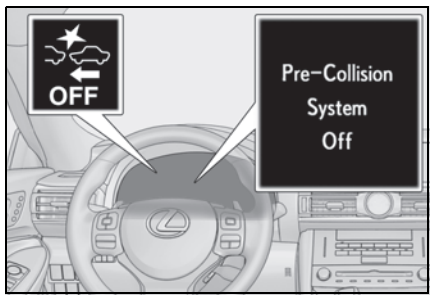
Changing settings of the pre-collision system

Enabling/disabling the pre-collision system

The pre-collision system can be enabled/disabled on  (→P.104) of the multi-information display.

The system is automatically enabled each time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

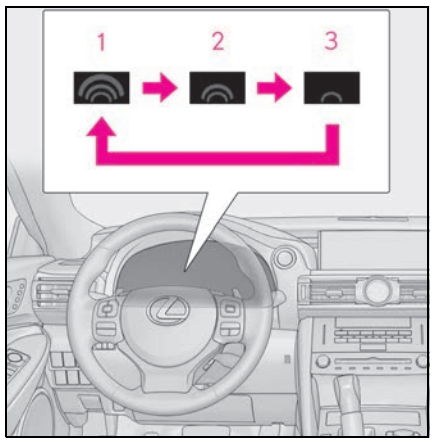
If the system is disabled, the PCS warning light will turn on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.



Changing the pre-collision warning timing

The pre-collision warning timing can be changed on (→P.104) of the multi-information display.

The operation timing setting is retained when the engine switch is turned off.



1 Far

The warning will begin to operate earlier than with the default timing.

2 Middle

This is the default setting.

3 Near

The warning will begin to operate later than with the default timing.

Operational conditions

Availability of the pedestrian detection function depends on the region in which the vehicle was sold. (For specific countries/areas: →P.188)
Read the following for details:

▶ Region A
(The pedestrian detection function is available)

The pre-collision system is enabled and the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle or pedestrian is high.

Each function is operational at the following speeds:

● Pre-collision warning:
- Vehicle speed is between approximately 10 and 180 km/h (7 and 110 mph). (For detecting a pedestrian, vehicle speed is between approximately 10 and 80 km/h [7 and 50 mph].)
- The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead is approximately 10 km/h (7 mph) or more.

● Pre-collision brake assist:
- Vehicle speed is between approximately 30 and 180 km/h (20 and 110 mph). (For detecting a pedestrian, vehicle speed is between approximately 30 and 80 km/h [20 and 50 mph].)
- The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead is approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) or more.

● Pre-collision braking:
- Vehicle speed is between approximately 10 and 180 km/h (7 and 110 mph). (For detecting a pedestrian, vehicle speed is between approximately 10 and 80 km/h [7 and 50 mph].)
- The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead is approximately 10 km/h (7 mph) or more.

The system may not operate in the following situations:

● If a battery terminal has been disconnected and reconnected and then the vehicle has not been driven for a certain

amount of time

- If the shift lever is in R
- If VSC is disabled (only the pre-collision warning function will be operational)

▶ Region B
(The pedestrian detection function is not available)

The pre-collision system is enabled and the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle is high.

Each function is operational at the following speeds:

- Pre-collision warning:
  - Vehicle speed is between approximately 15 and 180 km/h (10 and 110 mph).
  - The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is approximately 10 km/h (7 mph) or more.
- Pre-collision brake assist:
  - Vehicle speed is between approximately 30 and 180 km/h (20 and 110 mph).
  - The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) or more.
- Pre-collision braking:
  - Vehicle speed is between approximately 15 and 180 km/h (10 and 110 mph).
  - The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is approximately 10 km/h (7 mph) or more.

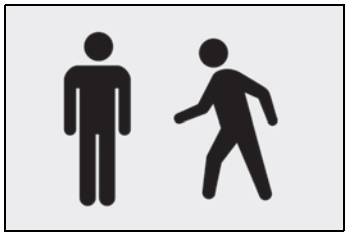
The system may not operate in the following situations:

- If a battery terminal has been disconnected and reconnected and then the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time
- If the shift lever is in R
- If VSC is disabled (only the pre-collision warning function will be operational)

■ Pedestrian detection function*2

The pre-collision system detects pedestrians based on the size, profile, and motion of a detected object. However, a pedestrian may not be detected depending on the surrounding brightness and the motion, posture, and angle of the detected object, preventing the system from operating properly. (→P.194)

*2: For countries/areas specified as Region B (→P.188), the pedestrian detection function may not be available.



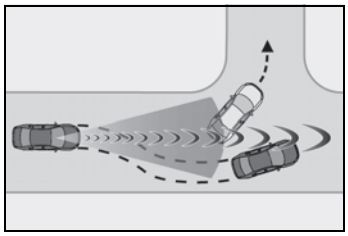
■ Cancelation of the pre-collision braking

If either of the following occur while the pre-collision braking function is operating, it will be canceled:

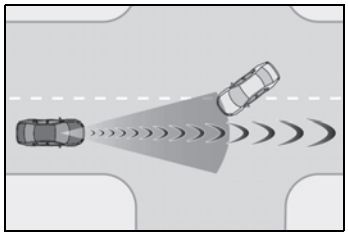
- The accelerator pedal is depressed strongly.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply or abruptly.

■ Conditions under which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision

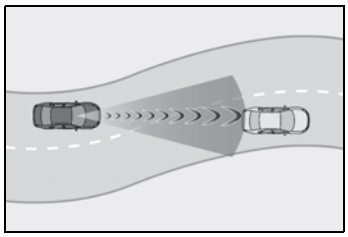
- In some situations such as the following, the system may determine that there is a possibility of a frontal collision and operate.
  - When passing a vehicle or pedestrian*2
  - When changing lanes while overtaking a preceding vehicle
  - When overtaking a preceding vehicle that is changing lanes
  - When overtaking a preceding vehicle that is making a left/right turn



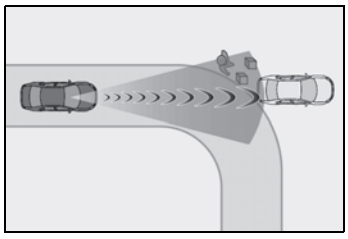
  - When passing a vehicle in an oncoming lane that is stopped to make a right/left turn



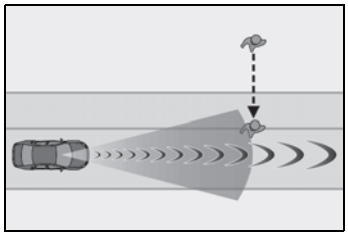
- When driving on a road where relative location to vehicle ahead in an adjacent lane may change, such as on a winding road



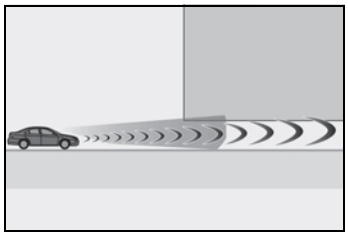
- When rapidly closing on a vehicle ahead
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered, such as when the road surface is uneven or undulating
- When approaching objects on the roadside, such as guardrails, utility poles, trees, or walls
- When there is a vehicle, pedestrian[*2], or object by the roadside at the entrance of a curve



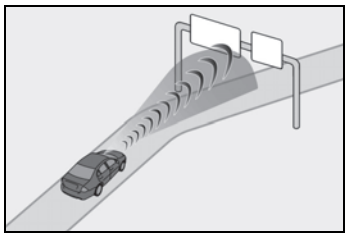
- When driving on a narrow path surrounded by a structure, such as in a tunnel or on an iron bridge
- When there is a metal object (manhole cover, steel plate, etc.), steps, or a protrusion on the road surface or roadside
- When a crossing pedestrian approaches very close to the vehicle[*2]



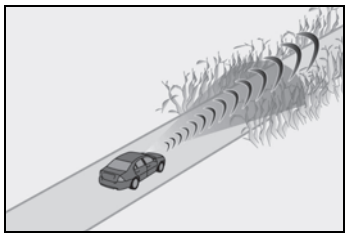
- When passing through a place with a low structure above the road (low ceiling, traffic sign, etc.)



- When passing under an object (billboard, etc.) at the top of an uphill road



- When rapidly closing on an electric toll gate barrier, parking area barrier, or other barrier that opens and closes
- When using an automatic car wash
- When driving through or under objects that may contact the vehicle, such as thick grass, tree branches, or a banner



- When the vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc. from a vehicle ahead

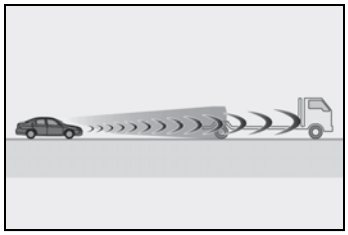
- When driving through steam or smoke
- When there are patterns or paint on the road or a wall that may be mistaken for a vehicle or pedestrian*2
- When driving near an object that reflects radio waves, such as a large truck or guardrail
- When driving near a TV tower, broadcasting station, electric power plant, or other location where strong radio waves or electrical noise may be present

*2: For countries/areas specified as Region B (→P.188), the pedestrian detection function may not be available.

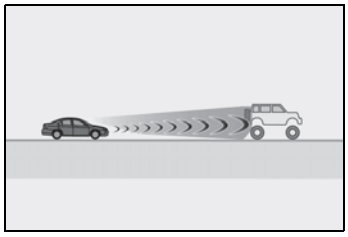
■ **Situations in which the system may not operate properly**

● In some situations such as the following, a vehicle may not be detected by the radar sensor and camera sensor, preventing the system from operating properly:

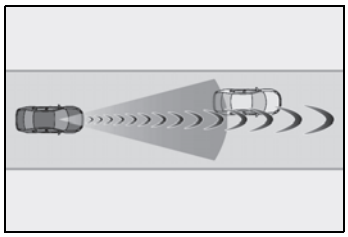
- If an oncoming vehicle is approaching your vehicle
- If a vehicle ahead is a motorcycle or bicycle
- When approaching the side or front of a vehicle
- If a preceding vehicle has a small rear end, such as an unloaded truck
- If a preceding vehicle has a low rear end, such as a low bed trailer



- If a vehicle ahead is carrying a load which protrudes past its rear bumper
- If a vehicle ahead has extremely high ground clearance

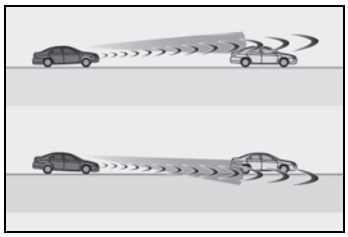


- If a vehicle ahead is irregularly shaped, such as a tractor or side car
- If the sun or other light is shining directly on a vehicle ahead
- If a vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle or emerges from beside a vehicle
- If a vehicle ahead makes an abrupt maneuver (such as sudden swerving, acceleration or deceleration)
- When suddenly cutting behind a preceding vehicle
- When a vehicle ahead is not directly in front of your vehicle



- When driving in inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or a sandstorm
- When the vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc. from a vehicle ahead
- When driving through steam or smoke
- When driving in a place where the surrounding brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrance or exit of a tunnel
- When a very bright light, such as the sun or the headlights of oncoming traffic, shines directly into the camera sensor
- When the surrounding area is dim, such as at dawn or dusk, or while at night or in a tunnel
- After the engine has started the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time
- While making a left/right turn and for a few seconds after making a left/right turn
- While driving on a curve and for a few seconds after driving on a curve

- If your vehicle is skidding
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered



- If the wheels are misaligned
- If a wiper blade is blocking the camera sensor
- The vehicle is wobbling.
- The vehicle is being driven at extremely high speeds.
- When driving on a hill
- If the radar sensor or camera sensor is misaligned

● In some situations such as the following, sufficient braking force may not be obtained, preventing the system from performing properly:

- If the braking functions cannot operate to their full extent, such as when the brake parts are extremely cold, extremely hot, or wet
- If the vehicle is not properly maintained (brakes or tires are excessively worn, improper tire inflation pressure, etc.)
- When the vehicle is being driven on a gravel road or other slippery surface

● Some pedestrians such as the following may not be detected by the radar sensor and camera sensor, preventing the system from operating properly[*2]:

- Pedestrians shorter than approximately 1 m (3.2 ft.) or taller than approximately 2 m (6.5 ft.)
- Pedestrians wearing oversized clothing (a rain coat, long skirt, etc.), making their silhouette obscure
- Pedestrians who are carrying large baggage, holding an umbrella, etc., hiding part of their body
- Pedestrians who are bending forward or squatting
- Pedestrians who are pushing a stroller, wheelchair, bicycle or other vehicle
- Groups of pedestrians which are close together
- Pedestrians who are wearing white and look extremely bright
- Pedestrians in the dark, such as at night or while in a tunnel
- Pedestrians whose clothing appears to be nearly the same color or brightness as their surroundings
- Pedestrians near walls, fences, guardrails, or large objects
- Pedestrians who are on a metal object (manhole cover, steel plate, etc.) on the road
- Pedestrians who are walking fast
- Pedestrians who are changing speed abruptly
- Pedestrians running out from behind a vehicle or a large object
- Pedestrians who are extremely close to the side of the vehicle (outside rear view mirror, etc.)

*2: For countries/areas specified as Region B (→P.188), the pedestrian detection function may not be available.

■ If the PCS warning light flashes or illuminates and a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display

The pre-collision system may be temporarily unavailable or there may be a malfunction in the system.

● In the following situations, the warning light will turn off, the message will disappear and the system will become operational when normal operating conditions return:

- When the radar sensor or camera sensor or the area around either sensor is hot, such as in the sun
- When the radar sensor or camera sensor or the area around either sensor is cold, such as in an extremely cold environment
- When a front sensor is dirty or covered with snow, etc.
- When the part of the windshield in front of the camera sensor is fogged up or covered with condensation or ice (Defogging the windshield: →P.259)
- If the camera sensor is obstructed, such as when the hood is open or a sticker is

attached to the windshield near the camera sensor

- If the PCS warning light continues to flash or remains illuminated or the warning message does not disappear even though the vehicle has returned to normal, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ If VSC is disabled

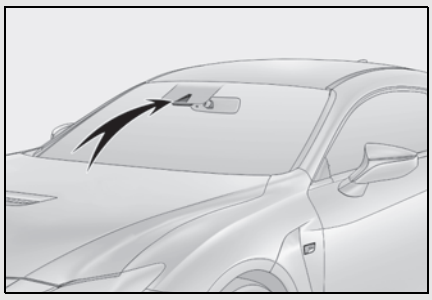
- If VSC is disabled (→P.239), the pre-collision brake assist and pre-collision braking functions are also disabled.
- The PCS warning light will turn on and "VSC Turned Off Pre-Collision Brake System Unavailable" will be displayed on the multi-information display.

LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)*

*: If equipped

When driving on highways and freeways with white (yellow) lines, this function alerts the driver when the vehicle might depart from its lane and provides assistance by operating the steering wheel to keep the vehicle in its lane.

The LDA system recognizes visible white (yellow) lines with the camera sensor on the upper portion of the front windshield.



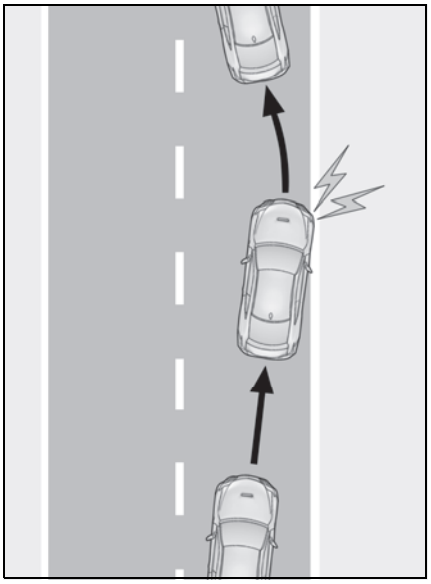
Functions included in LDA system

■ Lane departure alert function

When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display, and either the warning buzzer sounds or the steering wheel vibrates to alert the driver.

When the warning buzzer sounds or the steering wheel vibrates, check the surrounding road situation and carefully oper-

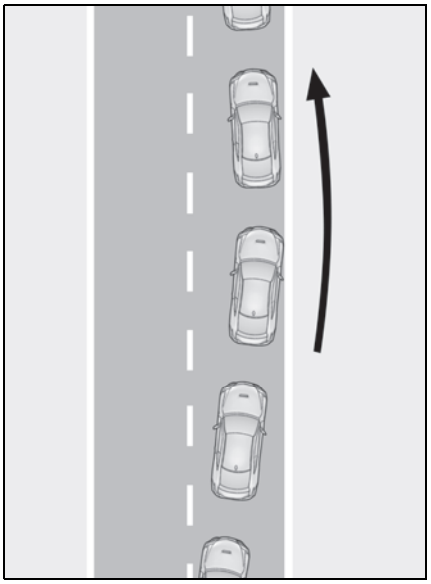
ate the steering wheel to move the vehicle back to the center of the lane.



Steering control function

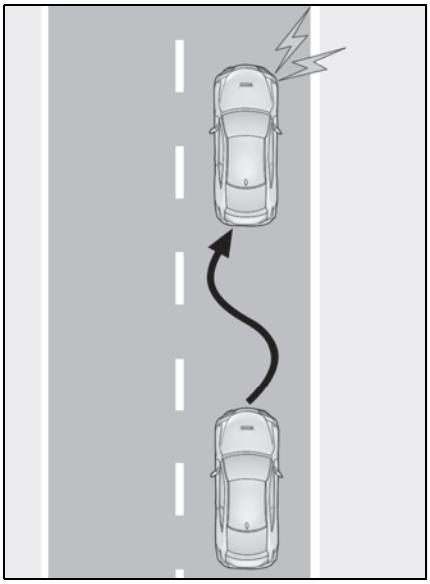
When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane, the system provides assistance as necessary by operating the steering wheel in small amounts for a short period of time to keep the vehicle in its lane.

If the system detects that the steering wheel has not been operated for a fixed amount of time or the steering wheel is not being firmly gripped, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display and the function is temporarily canceled.



Vehicle sway warning function

When the vehicle is swaying or appears as if it may depart from its lane multiple times, the warning buzzer sounds and a message is displayed on the multi-information display to alert the driver.



WARNING

■ Before using LDA system

Do not rely solely upon the LDA system. The LDA system does not automatically drive the vehicle or reduce the amount of attention that must be paid to the area in front of the vehicle. The driver must always assume full responsibility for driving safely by paying careful attention to the surrounding conditions and operating the steering wheel to correct the path of the vehicle. Also, the driver must take adequate breaks when fatigued, such as from driving for a long period of time.

Failure to perform appropriate driving operations and pay careful attention may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ To avoid operating LDA system by mistake

When not using the LDA system, use the LDA switch to turn the system off.

■ Situations unsuitable for LDA system

Do not use the LDA system in the following situations.
The system may not operate properly and lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- A spare tire, tire chains, etc. are equipped.
- When the tires have been excessively worn, or when the tire inflation pressure is low.
- Tires which differ by structure, manufacturer, brand or tread pattern are used.
- Objects or patterns that could be mistaken for white (yellow) lines are present on the side of the road (guardrails, curbs, reflective poles, etc.).
- Vehicle is driven on a snow-covered road.
- White (yellow) lines are difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, dust, etc.
- Asphalt repair marks, white (yellow) line marks, etc. are present due to road repair.
- Vehicle is driven in a temporary lane or restricted lane due to construction work.
- Vehicle is driven on a road surface which is slippery due to rainy weather, fallen snow, freezing, etc.
- Vehicle is driven in traffic lanes other than on highways and freeways.
- Vehicle is driven in a construction zone.
- During emergency towing

WARNING

■ **Preventing LDA system malfunctions and operations performed by mistake**

- Do not modify the headlights or place stickers, etc. on the surface of the lights.
- Do not modify the suspension etc. If the suspension etc. needs to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not install or place anything on the hood or grille. Also, do not install a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.).
- If your windshield needs repairs, contact your Lexus dealer.

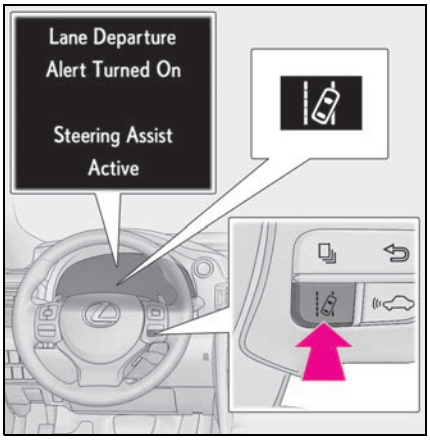
Turning LDA system on

Press the LDA switch to turn the LDA system on.

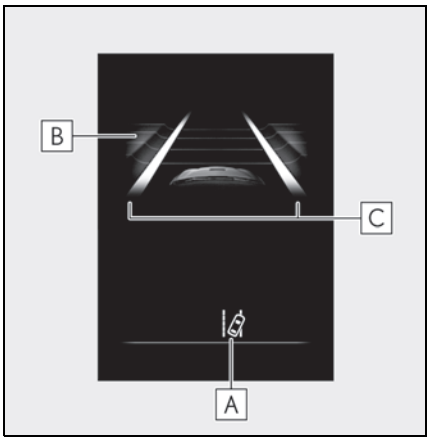
The LDA indicator illuminates and a message is displayed on the multi-information display.

Press the LDA switch again to turn the LDA system off.

When the LDA system is turned on or off, operation of the LDA system continues in the same condition the next time the engine is started.



Indications on multi-information display



A LDA indicator

The illumination condition of the indicator informs the driver of the system operation status.

Illuminated in white:
LDA system is operating.

Illuminated in green:
Steering wheel assistance of the steering control function is operating.

Flashing in orange:
Lane departure alert function is operating.

4 Driving

B Operation display of steering wheel operation support

Indicates that steering wheel assistance of the steering control function is operating.

C Lane departure alert function display

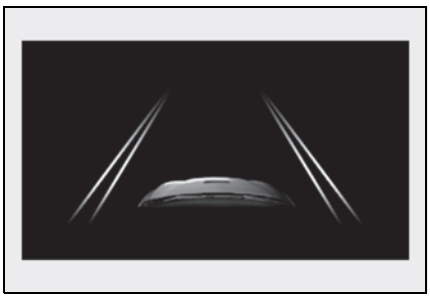
Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving assist system information screen.

▶ Inside of displayed white lines is white



Indicates that the system is recognizing white (yellow) lines. When the vehicle departs from its lane, the white line displayed on the side the vehicle departs from flashes orange.

▶ Inside of displayed white lines is black



Indicates that the system is not able to recognize white (yellow) lines or is temporarily canceled.

■ Operation conditions of each function

● Lane departure alert function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- LDA is turned on.
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
- System recognizes white (yellow) lines.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- Turn signal lever is not operated.
- Vehicle is driven on a straight road or around a gentle curve with a radius of more than approximately 150 m (492 ft.).
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.202)

● Steering control function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met in addition to the operation conditions for the lane departure alert function.

- Setting for "Steering Assist" in ⚙ of the multi-information display is set to "On". (→P.104)
- Vehicle is not accelerated or decelerated by a certain amount or more.
- Steering wheel is not operated with a steering force level suitable for changing lanes.
- ABS, VSC, TRC and PCS are not operating.
- TRC or VSC is not turned off.
- Hands off steering wheel warning is not displayed. (→P.201)

● Vehicle sway warning function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- Setting for "Sway Warning" in ⚙ of the multi-information display is set to "On". (→P.104)
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.202)

■ **Temporary cancellation of functions**

When the operation conditions are no longer met, a function may be temporarily canceled. However, when the operation conditions are met again, operation of the function is automatically restored. (→P.200)

For Korea: If the operation conditions are no longer met while the steering control function is operating, the buzzer may sound and indicate that the function has temporarily stopped operating.

■ **Steering control function**

Depending on the vehicle speed, lane departure situation, road conditions, etc., the driver may not feel the function is operating or the function may not operate at all.

■ **Lane departure alert function**

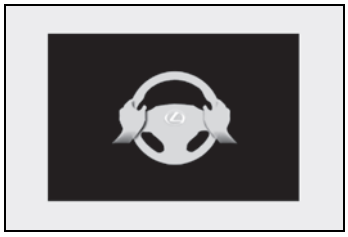
The warning buzzer may be difficult to hear due to external noise, audio playback, etc. Also, it may be difficult to feel steering wheel vibrations due to the road conditions etc.

■ **Hands off steering wheel warning**

When the system determines that the driver has removed their hands from the steering wheel while the steering control function is operating, a warning message urging the driver to hold the steering wheel and the symbol shown in the illustration are displayed on the multi-information display.

If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel, a warning message and the symbol shown in the illustration are displayed on the multi-information display, and the function is temporarily canceled. This warning also operates in the same way when the driver continuously operates the steering wheel only a small amount. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel when using this system, regardless of warnings.

For Korea: If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel, a buzzer sounds, a warning message and the symbol shown in the illustration are displayed on the multi-information display, and the function is temporarily canceled. This warning also operates in the same way when the driver continuously operates the steering wheel only a small amount. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel when using this system, regardless of warnings.



Depending on the vehicle and road conditions, the warning may not operate.

■ **Vehicle sway warning function**

When the system determines that the vehicle is swaying while the vehicle sway warning function is operating, a buzzer sounds and a warning message urging the driver to rest and the symbol shown in the illustration are simultaneously displayed on the multi-information display.



Depending on the vehicle and road conditions, the warning may not operate.

■ **White (yellow) lines are only on one side of road**

The LDA system will not operate for the side on which white (yellow) lines could not be recognized.

■ **Conditions in which functions may not operate properly**

In the following situations, the camera sensor may not detect white (yellow) lines and various functions may not operate normally.

- There are shadows on the road that run parallel with, or cover, the white (yellow)

lines.

- The vehicle is driven in an area without white (yellow) lines, such as in front of a tollgate or checkpoint, or at an intersection, etc.
- The white (yellow) lines are cracked, "Raised pavement marker" or stones are present.
- The white (yellow) lines cannot be seen or are difficult to see due to sand, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a road surface that is wet due to rain, puddles, etc.
- The traffic lines are yellow (which may be more difficult to recognize than lines that are white).
- The white (yellow) lines cross over a curb, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a bright surface, such as concrete.
- The vehicle is driven on a surface that is bright due to reflected light, etc.
- The vehicle is driven in an area where the brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrances and exits of tunnels, etc.
- Light from the headlights of an oncoming vehicle, the sun, etc. enters the camera.
- The vehicle is driven where the road diverges, merges, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a slope.
- The vehicle is driven on a road which tilts left or right, or a winding road.
- The vehicle is driven on an unpaved or rough road.
- The vehicle is driven around a sharp curve.
- The traffic lane is excessively narrow or wide.
- The vehicle is extremely tilted due to carrying heavy luggage or having improper tire pressure.
- The distance to the preceding vehicle is extremely short.
- The vehicle is moving up and down a large amount due to road conditions during driving (poor roads or road seams).
- The headlight lenses are dirty and emit a faint amount of light at night, or the beam axis has deviated.
- The vehicle is struck by a crosswind.
- The vehicle has just changed lanes or crossed an intersection.
- Snow tires, etc. are equipped.

■ **Warning message**

If the following warning message is displayed on the multi-information display and the LDA indicator illuminates in orange, follow the appropriate troubleshooting procedure.

Warning message	Details/Actions
"Lane Departure Alert Malfunction Visit Your Dealer"	The system may not be operating properly. →Have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.
"Front Camera Vision Blocked Clean and Demist Windshield"	Dirt, rain, condensation, ice, snow, etc. are present on the windshield in front of the camera sensor. →Turn the LDA system off, remove any dirt, rain, condensation, ice, snow, etc. from the windshield, and then turn the LDA system back on.

Warning message	Details/Actions
"Front Camera Unavailable"	The operation conditions of the camera sensor (temperature, etc.) are not met. →When the operation conditions of the camera sensor (temperature, etc.) are met, the LDA system will become available. Turn the LDA system off, wait for a little while, and then turn the LDA system back on.
"Lane Departure Alert Unavailable"	The LDA system is temporarily canceled due to a malfunction in a sensor other than the camera sensor. →Turn the LDA system off and follow the appropriate troubleshooting procedures for the warning message. Afterward, drive the vehicle for a short time, and then turn the LDA system back on.
"Lane Departure Alert Unavailable Below Approx 50km/h"	The LDA system cannot be used as the vehicle speed is less than approximately 50 km/h (32 mph). →Drive the vehicle at approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
"Lane Departure Alert Unavailable at Current Speed"	The LDA system cannot be used as the vehicle speed is too high. →Slow down.

If a different warning message is displayed, follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

■ **Customization**

The following settings can be changed.

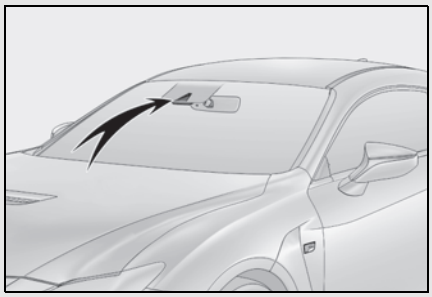
Function	Setting details
Lane departure alert function	Adjust alert sensitivity
	Adjust alert type
Steering control function	Turn steering wheel assistance on and off
Vehicle sway warning function	Turn function on and off
	Adjust alert sensitivity

For how to change settings, refer to P.404

RSA (Road Sign Assist)*

*: If equipped

RSA recognizes specific road signs using the camera sensor and provides information to the driver via the multi-information display.



If the system judges that the vehicle is being driven over the speed limit, performing prohibited actions, etc. in relation to the recognized road signs, it alerts the driver using a warning display and warning buzzer*.

*: This setting needs to be customized.

WARNING

■ Before using the RSA

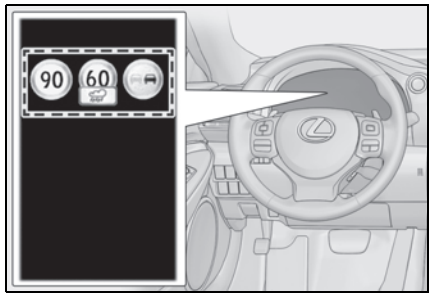
Do not rely solely upon the RSA system. RSA is a system which supports the driver by providing information, but it is not a replacement for a driver's own vision and awareness. Drive safely by always paying careful attention to the traffic rules.

Inappropriate or negligent driving could lead to an unexpected accident.

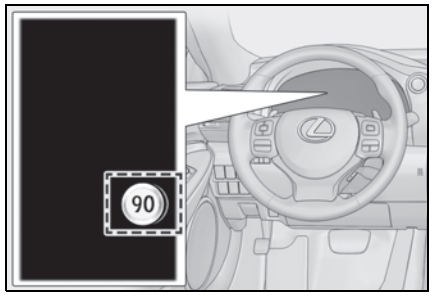
Indication on the multi-information display

After the camera sensor recognizes a sign, it is displayed on the multi-information display when the vehicle passes the sign.

- When the driving assist system information is selected, a maximum of 3 signs can be displayed. (→P.104)



- When other than the driving assist system information is selected, a speed limit sign or an all canceled sign can be displayed. (→P.104)

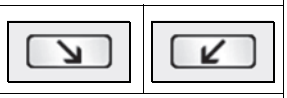


A no overtaking sign and a speed limit sign with supplemental mark are not displayed. However, if signs other than speed limit signs are recognized, they are mentioned in a stack under the current speed limit sign.

Types of recognized road signs

The following types of road signs, including electronic signs and blinking signs, are recognized.

A non-official (not meeting the Vienna Convention) or a recently introduced traffic sign may not be recognized.

Type		Multi-information display
Speed limit begins/ends		
Speed limit with supplemental mark (Displayed simultaneously with speed limit) (Display example) 	Wet	
	Rain	
	Ice	
	On/off ramp*	
	Supplemental mark exists (Contents not recognized)	
No overtaking begins/ends		
No-entry		
All canceled (All restrictions canceled. Returns to default road regulation.)		

*: If the turn signal indicator is not operated when changing lanes, the mark does not display.

Warning display

In the following situations, the RSA system alerts the driver using a warning display.

- When the vehicle speed exceeds the speed warning threshold applied to the speed limit of the sign displayed on the multi-information display, the sign color becomes inverted.
- If it is detected that your vehicle is overtaking when a no overtaking sign is displayed on the multi-information display, the sign flashes.
- When the RSA system recognizes a no-entry sign and detects that the vehicle has entered a no-entry area based on the map information of the navigation system, the no-entry sign flashes.

Depending on the situation, traffic environment (traffic direction, speed, unit) may be detected incorrectly and a warning display may not operate properly.

■ Automatic turn-off of RSA sign display

One or more signs automatically turn off in the following situations.

- A new sign is not recognized for a certain distance.
- The road changes due to a left or right turn, etc.

■ Conditions in which the function may not operate or detect correctly

In the following situations, RSA does not operate normally and may not recognize signs, display the incorrect sign, etc. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.

- The camera sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact being applied to the sensor, etc.
- Dirt, snow, stickers, etc. are on the windshield near the camera sensor.
- In inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or sand storms
- Light from an oncoming vehicle, the sun, etc. enters the camera sensor.
- The sign is dirty, faded, tilted or bent, and if an electronic sign, the contrast is poor.
- All or part of the sign is hidden by the leaves of a tree, a pole, etc.
- The sign is only visible to the camera sensor for a short amount of time.
- The driving scene (turning, lane change, etc.) is judged incorrectly.
- Even if it is a sign not appropriate for the currently traveled lane, such a sign exists directly after a freeway branches, or in an adjacent lane just before merging.
- Stickers are attached to the rear of the preceding vehicle.
- A sign resembling a system compatible sign is recognized.
- The vehicle is driven in a country with a different direction of traffic.
- Side road speed signs may be detected and displayed (if positioned in sight of the camera sensor) while the vehicle is traveling on the main road.
- Roundabout exit road speed signs may be detected and displayed (if positioned in sight of the camera sensor) while traveling on a roundabout.

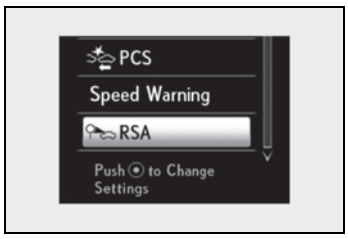
■ When driving vehicle in country with different speed unit

Since RSA recognizes signs based on the set unit of the meter, it is necessary to change the set unit of the meter. Adjust the set unit of the meter to the speed unit of signs in the current location. (→P.404)

■ Turning the system on/off

1 Select on the settings display (→P.104)

2 Press on the steering wheel.



■ Speed limit sign display

If the engine switch was last turned off while a speed limit sign was displayed on the multi-information display, the same sign displays again when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

■ Customization

Setting (e.g. speeding warning threshold) can be changed.

(Customizable feature:→P.404)

Dynamic radar cruise control*

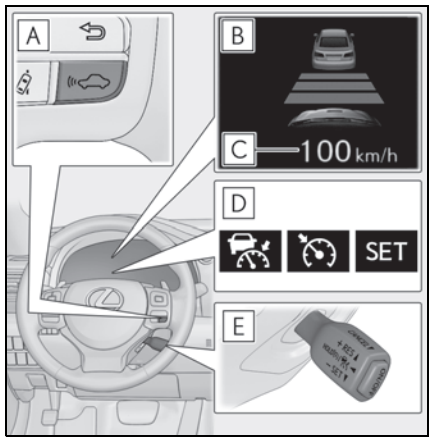
*: If equipped

In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates and decelerates to match the speed changes of the preceding vehicle even if the accelerator pedal is not depressed. In constant speed control mode, the vehicle runs at a fixed speed.

Use the dynamic radar cruise control on freeways and highways.

- Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode (→P.209)
- Constant speed control mode (→P.213)

System Components



A Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch

B Display

C Set speed

4 Driving

D Indicators

E Cruise control switch

WARNING

■ Before using dynamic radar cruise control

Driving safely is the sole responsibility of the driver. Do not rely solely on the system, and drive safely by always paying careful attention to your surroundings.

The dynamic radar cruise control provides driving assistance to reduce the driver's burden. However, there are limitations to the assistance provided.

Set the speed appropriately depending on the speed limit, traffic flow, road conditions, weather conditions, etc. The driver is responsible for checking the set speed.

Even when the system is functioning normally, the condition of the preceding vehicle as detected by the system may differ from the condition observed by the driver. Therefore, the driver must always remain alert, assess the danger of each situation and drive safely. Relying on this system or assuming the system ensures safety while driving can lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Cautions regarding the driving assist systems

Observe the following precautions, as there are limitations to the assistance provided by the system.
Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

● Assisting the driver to measure following distance

The dynamic radar cruise control is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.

● Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance

The dynamic radar cruise control determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is within a set range. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.

● Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle

The dynamic radar cruise control has limited capability to prevent or avoid a collision with a vehicle traveling ahead. Therefore, if there is ever any danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

■ To avoid inadvertent dynamic radar cruise control activation

● Switch the dynamic radar cruise control off using the "ON/OFF" button when not in use.

WARNING

■ Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control

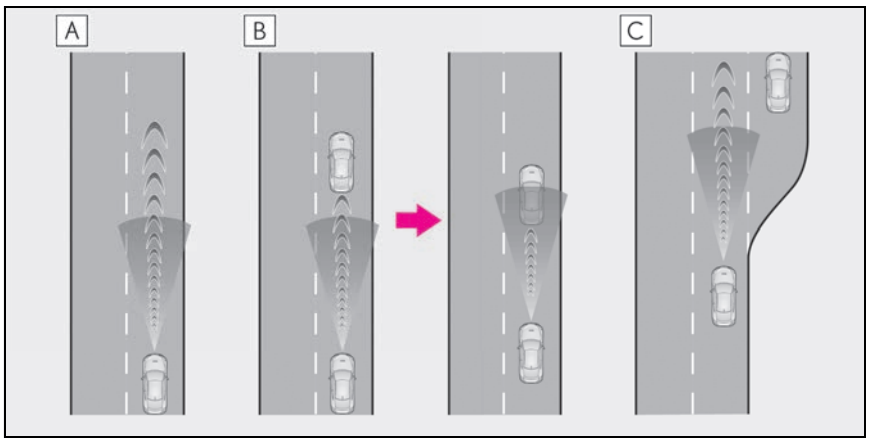
Do not use dynamic radar cruise control in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Roads where there are pedestrians, cyclists, etc.
- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- At entrances to freeways and highways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from detecting correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
- When there is rain, snow, etc. on the front surface of the radar sensor or camera sensor
- In traffic conditions that require frequent repeated acceleration and deceleration
- During emergency towing
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar sensor to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 100 m (328 ft.) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close in when traveling on downhill slopes.



A Example of constant speed cruising
When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch.

B Example of deceleration cruising and follow-up cruising
When a preceding vehicle driving slower than the set speed appears

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes (the stop lights will come on at this time). The system will respond to changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver. Approach warning warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.

C Example of acceleration
When there are no longer any preceding vehicles driving slower than the set speed

The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

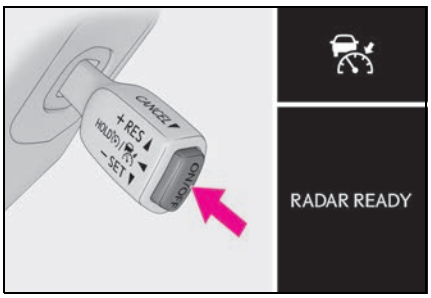
1 Press the "ON/OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Radar cruise control indicator will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

If the "ON/OFF" button is pressed and held for 1.5 seconds or more, the system turns on in constant speed control mode.

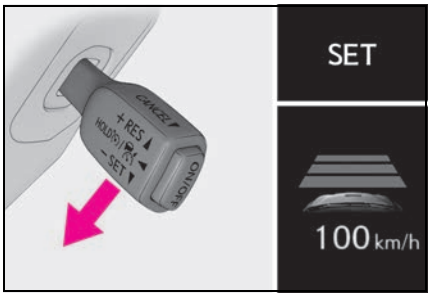
(→P.213)



2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 50 km/h [30 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.

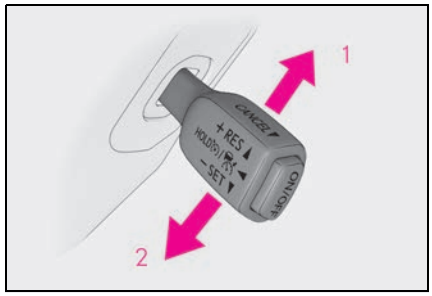
Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.



Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is displayed.



1 Increases the speed

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever up or down to change the speed, and release when the desired speed is reached.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: Increases or decreases in 5 km/h (3.1 mph)*1 or 5 mph (8 km/h)*2 increments for as long as the lever is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P.213), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1.6 km/h (1 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the lever is operated

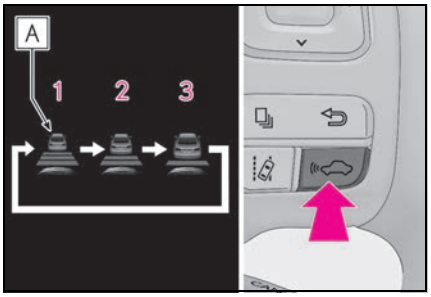
Large adjustment: The speed will continue to change while the lever is held.

*1: When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

*2: When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Pressing the switch changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:



1 Long
2 Medium
3 Short

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

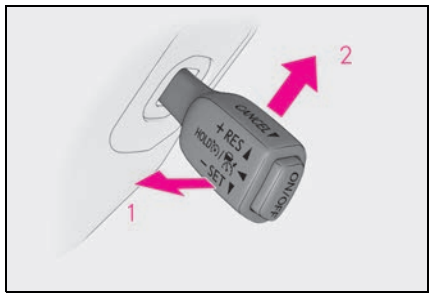
If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark [A] will also be displayed.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 50 m (160 ft.)
Medium	Approximately 40 m (130 ft.)
Short	Approximately 30 m (100 ft.)

Canceling and resuming the speed control



1 Pulling the lever toward you cancels the speed control.

The speed control is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

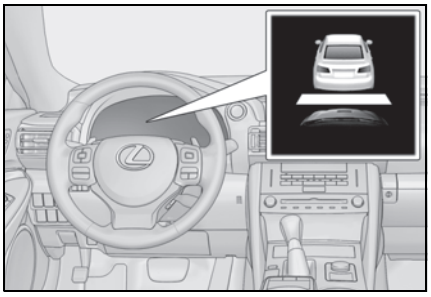
2 Pushing the lever up resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

However, cruise control does not resume when the vehicle speed is approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or less.

Approach warning (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is

not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Depress the brake pedal to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.



■ **Warnings may not occur when**

In the following instances, warnings may not occur even when the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is small.

- When the speed of the preceding vehicle matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the preceding vehicle is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- When depressing the accelerator pedal

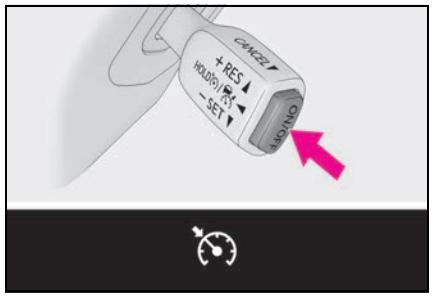
Selecting constant speed control mode

When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed without controlling the vehicle-to-vehicle distance. Select this mode only when vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode does not function correctly due to a dirty radar sensor, etc.

1 With the cruise control off, press and hold the "ON/OFF" button for 1.5 seconds or more.

Immediately after the "ON/OFF" button is pressed, the radar cruise control indicator will come on. Afterwards, it switches to the cruise control indicator.

Switching to constant speed control mode is only possible when operating the lever with the cruise control off.



2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 50 km/h [30 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.

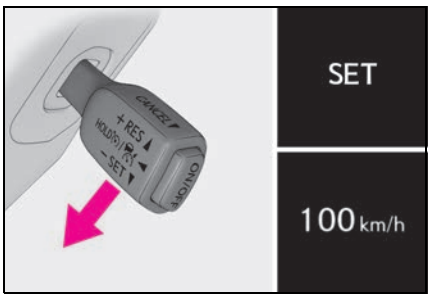
Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

Adjusting the speed setting: →P.211

Canceling and resuming the speed setting:

→P.212



■ **Dynamic radar cruise control can be set when**

- The shift lever is in D.
- Range 4 or higher of D has been selected by using the paddle shift switch.
- Vehicle speed is at or above approximately 50 km/h (30 mph).

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

The vehicle can accelerate by operating the accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the preceding vehicle.

■ **Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode**

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed falls at or below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.
- The sensor cannot detect correctly because it is covered in some way.
- Pre-collision braking is activated.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Automatic cancelation of constant speed control mode**

Constant speed control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set vehicle speed.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.
- Pre-collision braking is activated.

If constant speed control mode is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Brake system operation sound**

If the brakes are applied automatically while the vehicle is in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, a brake system operation sound may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Warning messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control**

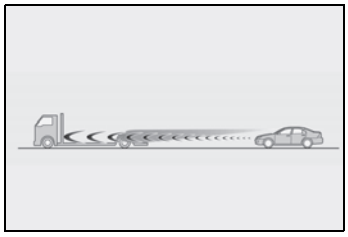
Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead**

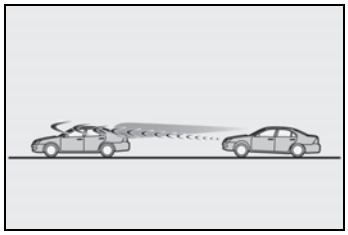
In the case of the following and depending on the conditions, operate the brake pedal when deceleration of the system is insufficient or operate the accelerator pedal when acceleration is required.
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P.212) may not be activated.

- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds

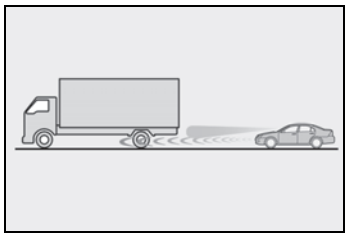
- Vehicles that are not moving in the same lane
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board, etc.)



- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane
- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the detecting of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment, etc.)



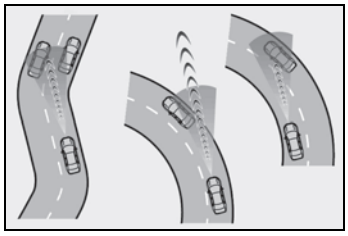
- Preceding vehicle has an extremely high ground clearance



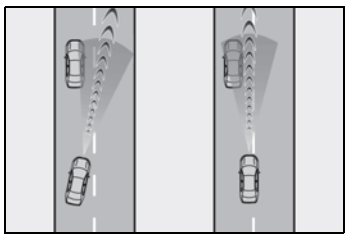
■ Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly

In the case of the following conditions, operate the brake pedal (or accelerator pedal, depending on the situation) as necessary.
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, the system may not operate properly.

- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow



- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable



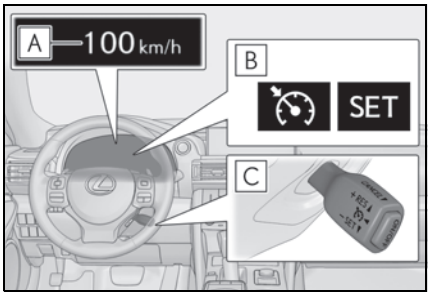
- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly
- When driving on a road surrounded by a structure, such as in a tunnel or on a bridge
- When the vehicle speed is decreasing to the set speed after the vehicle accelerates by depressing the accelerator pedal

Cruise control*

*: If equipped

Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.

System components



A Set speed

B Indicators

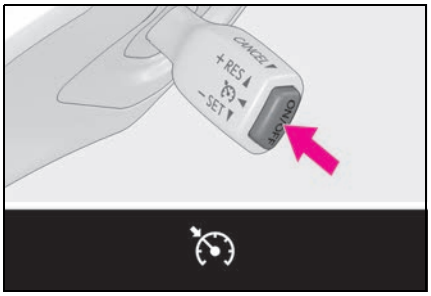
C Cruise control switch

Setting the vehicle speed

1 Press the "ON/OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

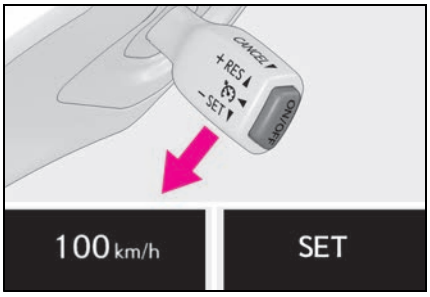
Cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.



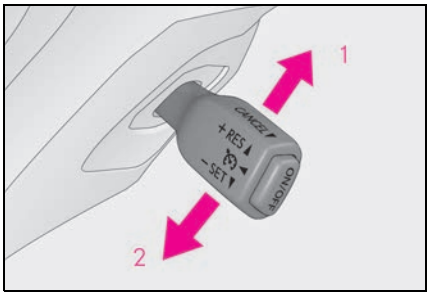
2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (above approximately 40 km/h [25 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator and set speed will be displayed on the multi-information display.
The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.



Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is obtained.



1 Increases the speed

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

The set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

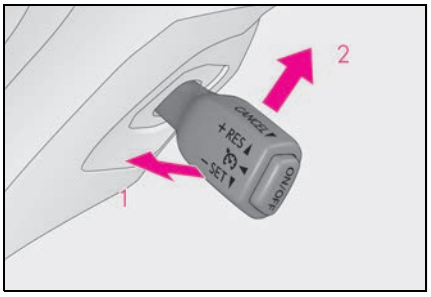
Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the lever is operated.

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

*1: When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

*2: When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

Canceling and resuming the constant speed control



1 Pulling the lever toward you cancels the constant speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

2 Pushing the lever up resumes the constant speed control.

However, resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

■ Cruise control can be set when

- The shift lever is in D.
- Range 4 or higher of D has been selected by using the paddle shift.
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

■ Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

- The vehicle can be accelerated by operating accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes.
- Even without canceling the cruise control, the set speed can be increased by first accelerating the vehicle to the desired speed and then pushing the lever down to set the new speed.

■ Automatic cruise control cancelation

Cruise control is automatically canceled in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set speed.
- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off by pressing the VSC OFF switch.

■ If the warning message for the cruise control is shown on the multi-information display

Press the "ON/OFF" button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system. If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ WARNING

■ To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake

Switch the cruise control off using the "ON/OFF" button when not in use.

WARNING

■ Situations unsuitable for cruise control

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills

Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.

- During emergency towing

BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)*

*: If equipped

The Blind Spot Monitor is a system that uses rear side radar sensors installed on the inner side of the rear bumper on the left and right side to assist the driver in confirming safety when changing lanes.

Summary of the Blind Spot Monitor

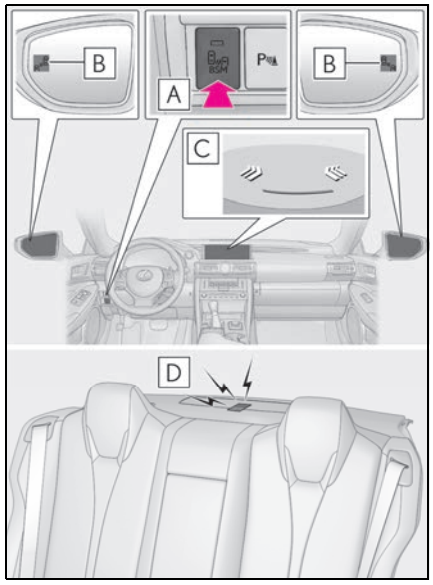
The Blind Spot Monitor is a system that has 2 functions:

- The BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) function
  Assists the driver in making a decision when changing lanes
- The RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert*1/Rear Crossing Traffic Alert*2) function
  Assists the driver when backing up

*1: Except for Russia and Kazakhstan

*2: For Russia and Kazakhstan

These functions use same sensors.



A BSM main switch

This switch is for both the BSM function and RCTA function.
Pressing the switch turns the system on or off. When the switch is turned on, the indicator on the switch illuminates.

B Outside rear view mirror indicators

BSM function:
When a vehicle is detected in a blind spot of the outside rear view mirrors or approaching rapidly from behind into a blind spot, the outside rear view mirror indicator on the detected side will illuminate. If the turn signal lever is operated toward the detected side, the outside rear view mirror indicator will flash.

RCTA function:
When a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, both outside rear view mirror indicators will flash.

C Center Display

If a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, the RCTA icon (→P.223) for the detected side will be displayed on the Center Display.

This illustration shows an example of a vehicle approaching from both sides of the vehicle.

D RCTA buzzer (RCTA function only)

If a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, a buzzer will sound. The buzzer also sounds for approximately 1 second immediately after the BSM main switch is operated to turn the system on.

Outside rear view mirror indicator visibility

In strong sunlight, the outside rear view mirror indicator may be difficult to see.

Hearing the RCTA buzzer

The RCTA buzzer may be difficult to hear over loud noises, such as if the audio system volume is high.

When "Blind Spot Monitor Unavailable" is shown on the multi-information display

Ice, snow, mud, etc., may be attached to the rear bumper around the sensors. (→P.220) The system should return to normal operation after removing the ice, snow, mud, etc. from the rear bumper. Additionally, the sensors may not operate normally when driving in extremely hot or cold environments.

When there is a malfunction in the Blind Spot Monitor

If a system malfunction is detected due to any of the following, a warning message will be displayed: (→P.359)

- A sensor is malfunctioning
- A sensor is dirty or covered with snow or a sticker
- The outside temperature is extremely high or low
- Sensor voltage is abnormal

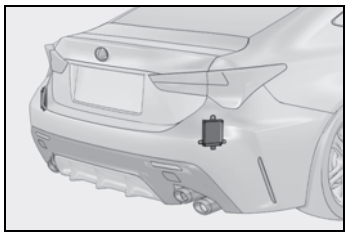
● A sensor is misaligned

WARNING

■ Handling the radar sensor

Blind Spot Monitor sensors are installed behind the left and right sides of the rear bumper respectively. Observe the following to ensure the Blind Spot Monitor can function correctly.

● Keep the sensors and the surrounding areas on the rear bumper clean at all times.
If a sensor or its surrounding area on the rear bumper is dirty or covered with snow, the Blind Spot Monitor may not operate and a warning message (→P.359) will be displayed. In this situation, clear off the dirt or snow and drive the vehicle with the operation conditions of the BSM function (→P.222) satisfied for approximately 10 minutes. If the warning message does not disappear, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.



● Do not subject a sensor or its surrounding area on the rear bumper to a strong impact.
If a sensor is moved even slightly off position, the system may malfunction and vehicles may not be detected correctly.
In the following situations, have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- A sensor or its surrounding area is subject to a strong impact.
- If the surrounding area of a sensor is scratched or dented, or part of them has become disconnected.

● Do not disassemble the sensor.

● Do not attach stickers to the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper.

● Do not modify the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper.

● Do not paint the rear bumper any color other than an official Lexus color.

■ Cautions regarding the use of the function

The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

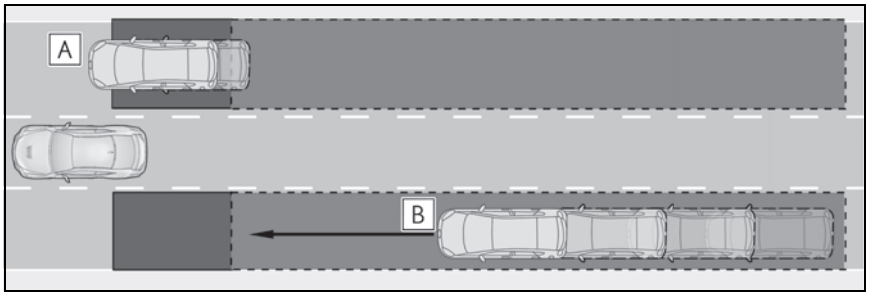
The BSM function is a supplementary function which alerts the driver that a vehicle is in a blind spot of the outside rear view mirrors or is approaching rapidly from behind into a blind spot. Do not overly rely on the BSM function. As the function cannot judge if it is safe to change lanes, over reliance could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

As the system may not function correctly under certain conditions, the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary.

The RCTA function is only a supplementary function which alerts the driver that a vehicle is approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle. As the RCTA function may not function correctly under certain conditions, the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary. Over reliance on this function may lead to an accident resulting death or serious injury.

BSM function

The BSM function uses radar sensors to detect the following vehicles traveling in adjacent lanes and advises the driver of the presence of such vehicles via the indicators on the outside rear view mirrors.

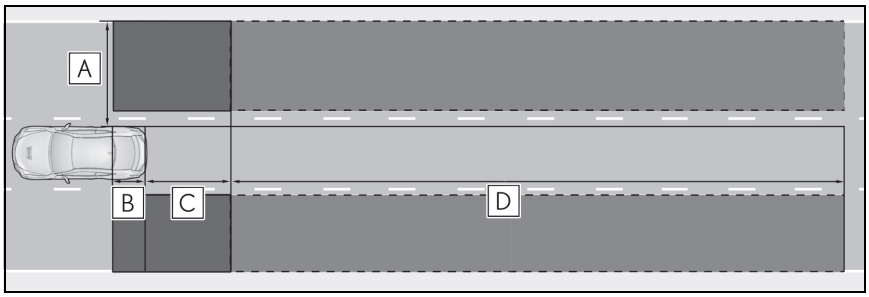


A Vehicles that are traveling in areas that are not visible using the outside rear view mirrors (the blind spots)

B Vehicles that are approaching rapidly from behind in areas that are not visible using the outside rear view mirrors (the blind spots)

BSM function detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.



The range of each detection area is:

A Approximately 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) to 3.5 m (11.5 ft.) from either side of the vehicle*1

B Approximately 1 m (3.3 ft.) forward of the rear bumper

C Approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) from the rear bumper

D Approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) to 60 m (197 ft.) from the rear bumper*2

*1: The area between the side of the vehicle and 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) from the side of the vehicle cannot be detected.

*2: The greater the difference in speed between your vehicle and the detected vehicle is, the farther away the vehicle will be detected, causing the outside rear view mirror indicator to illuminate or flash.

■ **The BSM function is operational when**

The BSM function is operational when all of the following conditions are met:

- The BSM main switch is on.
- The shift lever is in a position other than R.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph).

■ **The BSM function will detect a vehicle when**

The BSM function will detect a vehicle present in the detection area in the following situations:

- A vehicle in an adjacent lane overtakes your vehicle.
- You overtake a vehicle in an adjacent lane slowly.
- Another vehicle enters the detection area when it changes lanes.

■ **Conditions under which the BSM function will not detect a vehicle**

The BSM function is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects:

- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.*
- Vehicles traveling in the opposite direction
- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Following vehicles that are in the same lane*
- Vehicles traveling 2 lanes away from your vehicle*
- Vehicles which are being overtaken rapidly by your vehicle*

*: Depending on the conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

■ **Conditions under which the BSM function may not function correctly**

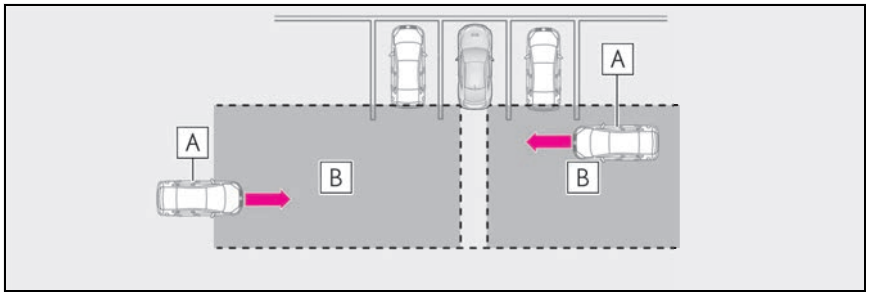
- The BSM function may not detect vehicles correctly in the following situations:
  - When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
  - When mud, snow, ice, a sticker, etc. is covering the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper
  - When driving on a road surface that is wet with standing water during bad weather, such as heavy rain, snow, or fog
  - When multiple vehicles are approaching with only a small gap between each vehicle
  - When the distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle is short
  - When there is a significant difference in speed between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
  - When the difference in speed between your vehicle and another vehicle is changing
  - When a vehicle enters a detection area traveling at about the same speed as your vehicle
  - As your vehicle starts from a stop, a vehicle remains in the detection area
  - When driving up and down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, dips in the road, etc.
  - When driving on roads with sharp bends, consecutive curves, or uneven surfaces
  - When vehicle lanes are wide, or when driving on the edge of a lane, and the vehicle in an adjacent lane is far away from your vehicle
  - When a bicycle carrier or other accessory is installed to the rear of the vehicle
  - When there is a significant difference in height between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
  - Immediately after the BSM main switch is turned on
- Instances of the BSM function unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and/or object may increase in the following situations:

- When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
- When the distance between your vehicle and a guardrail, wall, etc. that enters the detection area is short
- When driving up and down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, dips in the road, etc.
- When vehicle lanes are narrow, or when driving on the edge of a lane, and a vehicle traveling in a lane other than the adjacent lanes enters the detection area
- When driving on roads with sharp bends, consecutive curves, or uneven surfaces
- When the tires are slipping or spinning
- When the distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle is short
- When a bicycle carrier or other accessory is installed to the rear of the vehicle

RCTA function

■ Operation of the RCTA function

The RCTA function uses radar sensors to detect vehicles approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle and alerts the driver of the presence of such vehicles by flashing the outside rear view mirror indicators and sounding a buzzer.

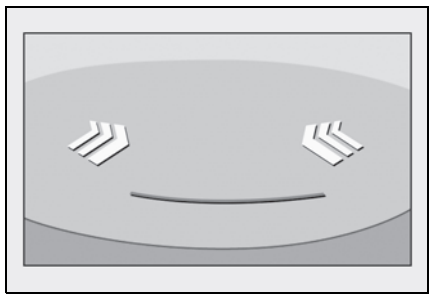


A Approaching vehicles

B Detection areas of approaching vehicles

■ RCTA icon display

When a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, the following will be displayed on the Center Display.



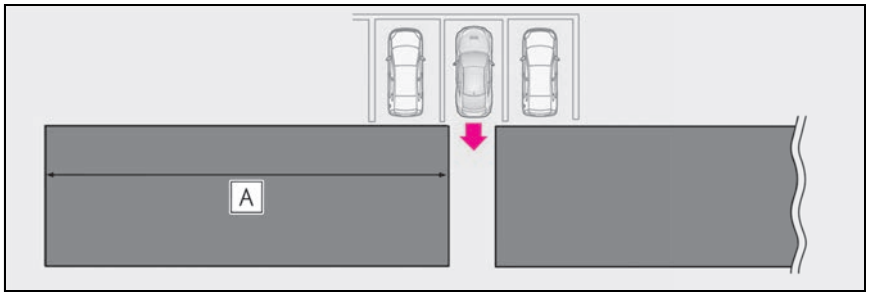
This illustration shows an example of a vehicle approaching from both sides of the vehicle.

: The RCTA function is malfunc-

tioning (→P.219)

RCTA function detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.



The buzzer can alert the driver of faster vehicles approaching from farther away.

Example:

Approaching vehicle	Speed	A Approximate alert distance
Fast	28 km/h (18 mph)	20 m (65 ft.)
Slow	8 km/h (5 mph)	5.5 m (18 ft.)

■ The RCTA function is operational when

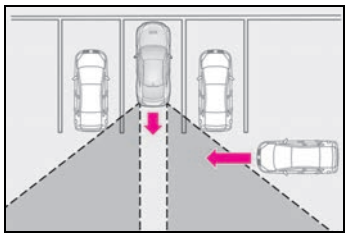
The RCTA function operates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The BSM main switch is on.
- The shift lever is in R.
- The vehicle speed is less than approximately 8 km/h (5 mph).
- The approaching vehicle speed is between approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) and 28 km/h (18 mph).

■ Conditions under which the RCTA function will not detect a vehicle

The RCTA function is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects:

- Vehicles approaching from directly behind
- Vehicles backing up in a parking space next to your vehicle
- Vehicles that the sensors cannot detect due to obstructions



- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.*
- Vehicles moving away from your vehicle
- Vehicles approaching from the parking spaces next to your vehicle*

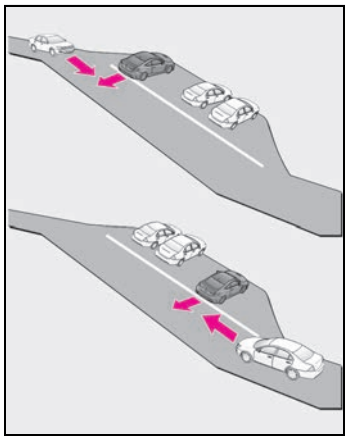
*: Depending on the conditions, detection

of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

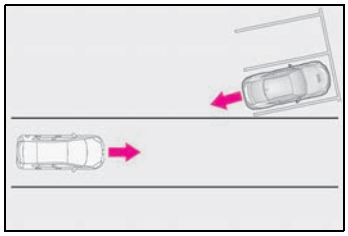
■ **Conditions under which the RCTA function may not function correctly**

● The RCTA function may not detect vehicles correctly in the following situations:

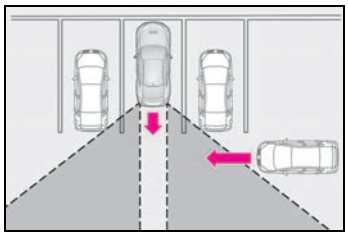
- When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
- When mud, snow, ice, a sticker, etc. is covering the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper
- When driving on a road surface that is wet with standing water during bad weather, such as heavy rain, snow, or fog
- When multiple vehicles are approaching with only a small gap between each vehicle
- When a vehicle is approaching at high speed
- When backing up on a slope with a sharp change in grade



- When backing out of a shallow angle parking spot

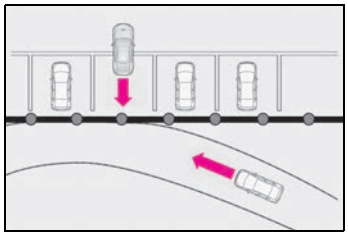


- Immediately after the BSM main switch is turned on
- Immediately after the engine is started with the BSM main switch on
- When the sensors cannot detect a vehicle due to obstructions



● Instances of the RCTA function unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and/or object may increase in the following situations:

- When a vehicle passes by the side of your vehicle
- When the parking space faces a street and vehicles are being driven on the street

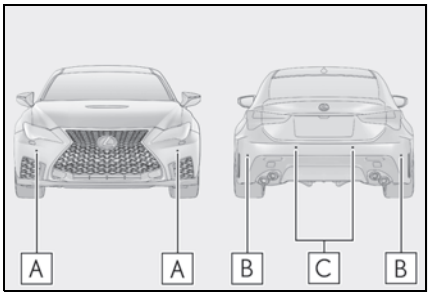


- When the distance between your vehicle and metal objects, such as a guardrail, wall, sign, or parked vehicle, which may reflect electrical waves toward the rear of the vehicle, is short

Lexus parking assist-sensor

The distance from your vehicle to nearby obstacles when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage is measured by the sensors and communicated via the multi-information display, Center Display and a buzzer. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

Types of sensors



A Front corner sensors

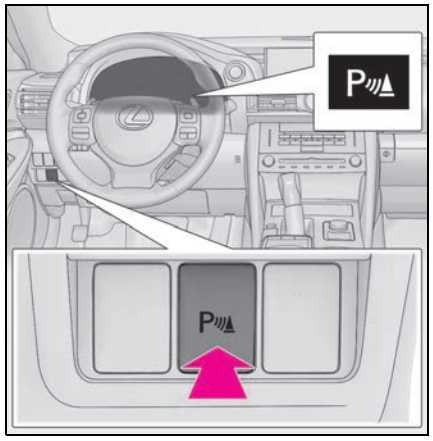
B Rear corner sensors

C Rear center sensors

Lexus parking assist-sensor switch

Turns the Lexus parking assist-sensor on/off

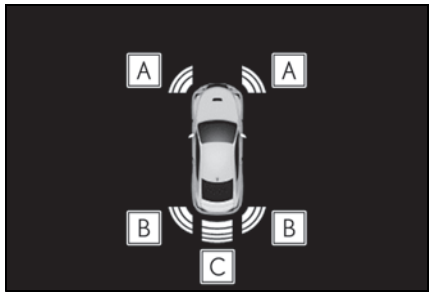
When on, the indicator light comes on to inform the driver that the system is operational.



Display

When the sensors detect an obstacle, a graphic is shown on the multi-information display and Center Display depending on the position and distance to the obstacle.

■ Multi-information display



A Front corner sensor detection

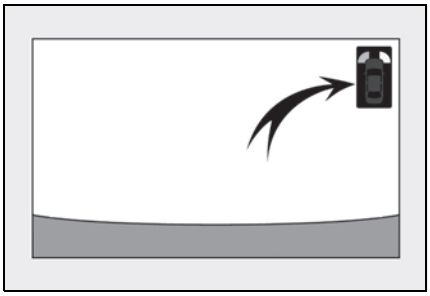
B Rear corner sensor detection

C Rear center sensor detection

■ Center Display

A graphic is shown when the Lexus parking assist monitor is displayed (insert display).

A simplified image is displayed on the Center Display when an object is detected.



WARNING

■ When using the Lexus parking assist-sensor

Observe the following precautions. Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.

- Do not use the sensor at speeds in excess of 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The sensor's detection areas and reaction times are limited. When moving forward or reversing, check the areas surrounding the vehicle (especially the sides of the vehicle) for safety, and drive slowly, using the brake to control the vehicle's speed.
- Do not install accessories within the sensor's detection areas.
- The area directly under the bumpers is not detected.
  Thin posts or objects lower than a sensor may not be detected when approached, even if they have been detected once.

■ When to disable the function

In the following situations, disable the function as it may operate even though there is no possibility of a collision.

- The vehicle is equipped with a fender pole, wireless antenna or fog lights.
- The front or rear bumper or a sensor receives a strong impact.
- A non-genuine Lexus suspension (lowered suspension, etc.) is installed.
- Towing eyelets are installed.
- A backlit license plate is installed.

■ When using Lexus parking assist-sensor

In the following situations, the system may not function correctly due to a sensor malfunction, etc. Have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

- The Lexus parking assist-sensor operation display flashes or shows continuously, and a beep sounds when no objects are detected.
- If the area around a sensor collides with something, or is subjected to strong impact.
- If the bumper or grille collides with something.
- If the display flashes or is displayed continuously and a buzzer does not sound, except when the mute function has been turned on.
- If a display error occurs, first check the sensor.
  If the error occurs even when there is no ice, snow or mud on the sensor, it is likely that the sensor is malfunctioning.

■ Notes when washing the vehicle

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area.

Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

- When using a high pressure washer to wash the vehicle, do not spray the sensors directly, as doing so may cause a sensor to malfunction.

WARNING

- When using steam to clean the vehicle, do not direct steam too close to the sensors as doing so may cause a sensor to malfunction.

The Lexus parking assist-sensor can be operated when

- Front corner sensors:
  - The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
  - The shift lever is in a position other than P.
  - The vehicle speed is less than about 10 km/h (6 mph). (At any speed when the shift lever is in R)
- Rear corner and rear center sensors:
  - The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
  - The shift lever is in R.

Muting the buzzer sound

- To mute the buzzer sound:

The buzzer can be temporarily muted by pressing "OK" of the meter control switches while an obstacle detection display is shown on the multi-information display.

- To cancel the mute:

Mute will be automatically canceled in the following situations.

- When the shift lever is changed (except shifting from D to N, or N to D).
- When the vehicle speed has reached or exceeded 10 km/h (6 mph) with the shift lever in D.
- When the Lexus parking assist-sensor is turned off once and turned on again.
- When the engine switch is turned off once and turned to IGNITION ON mode again.

If "Clean Parking Assist Sensor" is displayed on the multi-information display

A sensor may be covered with ice, snow, dirt, etc. Remove the ice, snow, dirt, etc., from the sensor to return the system to normal.

Also, due to ice forming on a sensor at low temperatures, a warning message may be displayed or the sensor may not be able to detect an object. Once the ice melts, the system will return to normal.

Sensor detection information

- The following situations may occur during use.
  - The sensors may be able to only detect objects near the front and rear bumpers.
  - Depending on the shape of the object and other factors, the detection distance may shorten, or detection may be impossible.
  - There will be a short delay between object detection and display. Even at low speeds, there is a possibility that the object will come within the sensor's detection areas before the display is shown and the warning beep sounds.
  - It might be difficult to hear the buzzer due to the volume of the audio system or air flow noise of the air conditioning system.
  - It may be difficult to hear the buzzer if buzzers for other systems are sounding.

Conditions under which the function may not function correctly

Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect objects. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.

- There is dirt, snow or ice on a sensor. (Cleaning the sensors will resolve this problem.)
- A sensor is frozen. (Thawing the area will resolve this problem.) In especially cold weather, if a sensor is frozen the sensor display may be displayed abnormally, or objects, such as a wall, may not be detected.
- A sensor is covered in any way.
- When a sensor or the area around a sensor is extremely hot or cold.
- On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.
- The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud

noises producing ultrasonic waves.

- There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity.
- A sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
- If a sensor is hit by a large amount of water, such as when driving on a flooded road.
- If the vehicle is significantly tilted.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall or curved curb.
- If objects draw too close to the sensor.

■ **Objects which may not be properly detected**

The shape of the object may prevent the sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following objects:

- Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
- Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb sound waves
- Sharply-angled objects
- Low objects
- Tall objects with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle

People may not be detected if they are wearing certain types of clothing.

■ **Customization**

Settings can be changed. (→P.412)

Sensor detection display, obstacle distance

■ **Multi-information display and Center Display**

Sensors that detect an obstacle will illuminate continuously or blink.

- Approximate distance to object: 150 cm (4.9 ft.) to 60 cm (2.0 ft.) (Rear center sensor)

Multi-information display	Insert display (Center Display)
 (continuous)	 (blinking slowly)

- Approximate distance to object: 70 cm (2.3 ft.) to 50 cm (1.6 ft.) (Front corner sensor)
  Approximate distance to object: 60 cm (2.0 ft.) to 45 cm (1.5 ft.) (Rear corner sensor, Rear center sensor)

Multi-information display	Insert display (Center Display)
 (continuous)	 (blinking)

4 Driving

- Approximate distance to object: 50 cm (1.6 ft.) to 30 cm (1.0 ft.) (Front corner sensor)
  Approximate distance to object: 45 cm (1.5 ft.) to 30 cm (1.0 ft.) (Rear corner sensor)
  Approximate distance to object: 45 cm (1.5 ft.) to 35 cm (1.1 ft.) (Rear center sensor)

Multi-information display	Insert display (Center Display)
 (continuous)	 (blinking rapidly)

- Approximate distance to object: Less than 30 cm (1.0 ft.) (Corner sensor)
  Approximate distance to object: Less than 35 cm (1.1 ft.) (Rear center sensor)

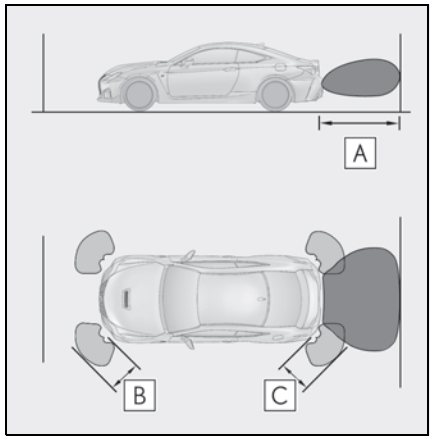
Multi-information display	Insert display (Center Display)
 (blinking)	 (continuous)

Buzzer operation and distance to an obstacle

A buzzer sounds when the sensors are operating.

- The buzzer beeps faster as the vehicle approaches an obstacle. When the vehicle comes within the following distance of the obstacle, the buzzer sounds continuously:
  - Corner sensors: Approximately 30 cm (1.0 ft.)
  - Rear center sensors: Approximately 35 cm (1.1 ft.)
- When 2 or more obstacles are detected simultaneously, the buzzer system responds to the nearest obstacle. If one or both come within the above distances, the beep will repeat a long tone, followed by fast beeps.

Detection range of the sensors



A Approximately 150 cm (4.9 ft.)

B Approximately 70 cm (2.3 ft.)

C Approximately 60 cm (2.0 ft.)

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object, etc.

Setting up Lexus parking assist-sensor

You can change the warning beep volume and Center Display operating conditions.

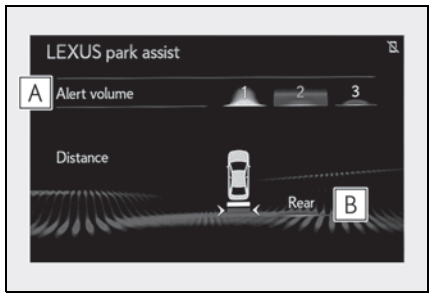
1 Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch. (→P.250)

2 Select "Setup" on the "Menu" screen.

3 Select "Vehicle" on the "Setup" screen.

4 Select "LEXUS park assist" on the vehicle settings screen.

5 Select the desired button.



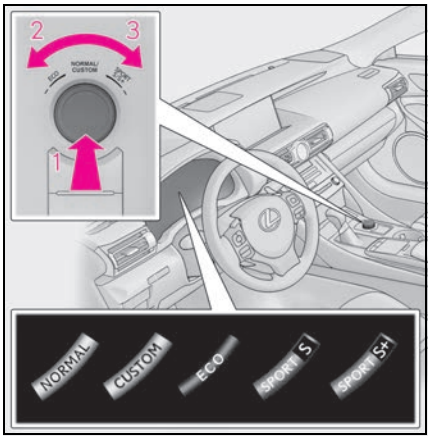
A The alert volume can be adjusted.

B Rear center sensor display and tone indication can be set.

Driving mode select switch

The driving modes can be selected to suit driving condition.

Selecting a drive mode



1 Normal mode/Custom mode

Normal mode and custom mode are selected by pressing the driving mode select switch. Each time the switch is pressed, the driving mode changes between normal mode and custom mode. When custom mode is selected, the "CUSTOM" indicator will be illuminated.

When Eco drive mode or sport mode is selected, pressing the switch changes the driving mode to normal mode.

• Normal mode

Provides an optimal balance of fuel economy, quietness, and dynamic performance. Suitable for city driving.

• Custom mode

Allows you to drive with the following functions set to your preferred settings. Custom mode settings can only be changed on the drive mode customization display of the Center Display. (→P.252)

Function	Setting
Powertrain	Normal
	Power
	Eco
Chassis	Normal
	Sport
Air conditioning system	Normal
	Eco

2 Eco drive mode

Helps the driver accelerate in an eco-friendly manner and improve fuel economy through moderate throttle characteristics and by controlling the operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling).

When not in Eco drive mode, if the driving mode select switch is turned to the left, the Eco drive mode indicator will come on.

3 Sport mode

• SPORT S mode

Controls the transmission and engine to provide quick, powerful acceleration. Also, gear shift timing is controlled to suit sporty driving, making this mode is suitable for when agile driving response is desired, such as when driving on roads with many curves.

When not in SPORT S mode, if the driving mode select switch is turned to the right, the "SPORT S" indicator will come on.

• SPORT S+ mode

Provides earlier downshift timing than SPORT S mode in order to maintain a high engine speed and provides faster gear changes. This mode also changes the steering feel, suspension control and

VDIM control, making it suitable for powerful sporty driving.

When in SPORT S mode, if the driving mode select switch is turned to the right, the "SPORT S+" indicator will come on.

■ **Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode**

Eco drive mode controls the heating/cooling operations and fan speed of the air conditioning system to enhance fuel efficiency (→P.255). To improve air conditioning performance, adjust the fan speed or turn off Eco drive mode.

■ **Automatic deactivation of sport mode and custom mode**

If the engine switch is turned off after driving in sport mode or custom mode, the drive mode will be changed to normal mode.

■ **Driving mode pop-up display (vehicles with a 10.3-inch display)**

When the driving mode is changed, the selected driving mode will be temporarily displayed on the side display. (→P.252)

Launch control

By controlling the engine torque, this function restrains tire slippage, providing optimal acceleration when starting off. (Do not use this function on public roads.)

Operating instruction

■ **Operating launch control**

1 Stop the vehicle.

2 Firmly and fully depress the brake pedal with your left foot.

Continue depressing the brake pedal.

3 Shift the shift lever to D.

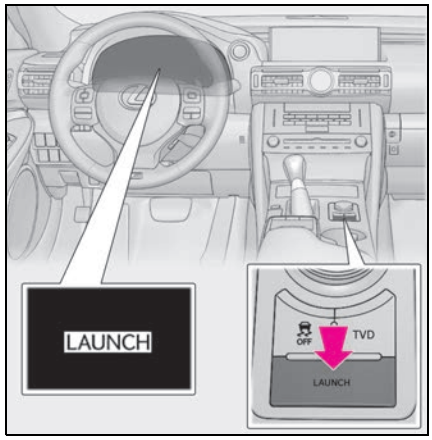
4 Select SPORT S+ mode.

5 Press the OFF switch.

The "EXPERT" indicator will come on together with the "TRC OFF" and VSC OFF indicators.

6 Press the "LAUNCH" switch.

The "LAUNCH" indicator will illuminate.



4 Driving

7 Firmly and fully depress the accelerator pedal.

The control standby state will be entered and the engine speed will be automatically maintained between 1500-2000 r/min.

If the "LAUNCH" indicator turns off, release the accelerator pedal and perform this procedure again from **6**.

8 Within 3 seconds of depressing the accelerator pedal, release the brake pedal to start off.

The "LAUNCH" indicator will turn off 3 seconds after the accelerator pedal is depressed.

If the brake pedal is not released before the "LAUNCH" indicator turns off, release the accelerator pedal and perform this procedure again from **6**.

After starting off, when the accelerator pedal is released, launch control will stop operating.

Canceling launch control

Perform any of the following:

- Shift the shift lever to any position other than D.
- Operate the drive mode switch to select any mode other than SPORT S+ mode.
- Press the OFF switch.
- Press the "LAUNCH" switch.

Operation condition

When all of the following conditions are met, launch control can be enabled:

- The engine and transmission are sufficiently warmed up.
- The engine, transmission, driving support systems, etc. are not malfunctioning.

Launch control will not operate properly when

In the following situations, launch control may not operate properly:

- When the brake pedal is not firmly depressed and the rear wheels slip.
- When starting off on a road surface that is wet with rain, standing water, etc.
- When starting off on a slick road surface.
- When the vehicle has not been properly maintained (tires are worn out, tire pressure is low, etc.).

WARNING

Launch control precautions

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not use on public roads.
- Use only when road and ambient conditions are safe.
- Before use, ensure that no people or obstructions are nearby.
- Proper use of launch control requires an expert level of driving skill. When using launch control, always check the track conditions and surrounding area.
- Do not start off with the rear wheels spinning.

NOTICE

To avoid damage to the vehicle when using launch control

- As launch control applies a large load on vehicle components, do not use it excessively.
- Always follow the correct operation procedures as described in this manual.

NOTICE

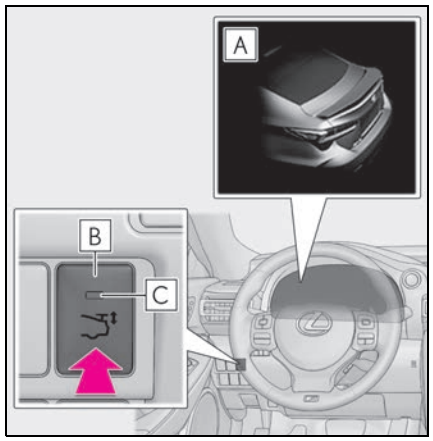
- Only use launch control on dry, paved roads, as slippery or loose road surfaces may cause damage to the vehicle.
- When using launch control repeatedly, wait approximately 10 minutes between each use.

Active rear wing*

*: If equipped

The RC F is equipped with an active rear wing that operates automatically while the vehicle is being driven. This active rear wing enhances aerodynamic performance, especially at high speeds, contributing to a more stable ride. The active rear wing can be controlled using a switch.

System components



A Multi-information display (→P.104)

Displays the status of the active rear wing

B Active rear wing switch

Operates the active rear wing manually

C Indicator

Illuminates when the active rear wing is raised and turns off when it is retracted

Operating conditions

- The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

4 Driving

- The trunk is closed.
- The active rear wing has been activated in a customized setting.

■ **Conditions which stop the operation**

In the following situations operation of the active rear wing will stop:

- The engine switch is turned off while the active rear wing is operating.
- The trunk is opened while the active rear wing is operating.
- The raising operation of the active rear wing is interrupted by an object, etc.
- The active rear wing is operated in an unusual manner causing it to stop at an irregular position.

In such cases, pressing the active rear wing switch will fully raise the active rear wing. Or, begin driving the vehicle and the active rear wing will raise automatically when the vehicle speed reaches 25 km/h (16 mph).

■ **When there is a malfunction in the system**

A warning message will be displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.360)

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (→P.404)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent system damage**

- Do not apply pressure to the active rear wing when pushing or pulling the vehicle.
- Do not lean on the active rear wing.
- Do not attach any accessories or other objects to the active rear wing.
- Do not modify or disassemble the active rear wing.
- Do not subject the active rear wing to severe impact.

Automatic operation

The active rear wing will operate automatically at the following speeds according to the selected driving mode (→P.232). (Always observe the legal speed limit when driving on public roads.)

- When other than Eco drive mode is selected

Up: Approximately 80 km/h (50 mph)

Down: Approximately 40 km/h (25 mph)

- When Eco drive mode is selected

Up: Approximately 130 km/h (80 mph)

Down: Approximately 40 km/h (25 mph)

Manual operation

Operate the active rear wing switch to raise/retract the active rear wing manually. (The active rear wing retracts when it is raised and raises when retracted.)

■ **Operation by switch**

Vehicle speed	Up/Down
0 km/h (0 mph) (vehicle stopped)	Press/Press and hold*
Approximately 0 – 20 km/h (0 – 12 mph)	Operation not possible
Approximately 20 – 130 km/h (12 – 80 mph)	Press/Press
Approximately 130 km/h (80 mph) or more	Operation not possible

*: Press and hold the switch until the indicator turns off. If the switch is released while the active rear wing is moving, it will return to the raised position automatically.

Restoring automatic operation after the active rear wing is operated manually

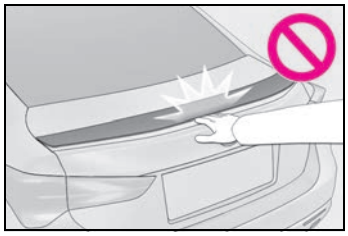
If the active rear wing is operated manually, automatic operation will resume according to the vehicle speed.

WARNING

When manually operating the active rear wing

Observe the following precautions before operating the active rear wing. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Ensure that the surrounding area is free of any objects that may come into contact with or get caught on the active rear wing.
- If there are people near the active rear wing, make sure that there is no possibility of their clothing, personal belongings or body parts getting caught. Children especially should be warned not to touch the active rear wing while it is being operated.



- If there is a risk that an object may become caught on the active rear wing during operation, stop operation immediately.

NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Do not operate the active rear wing repeatedly while the engine is turned off.

TVD (Torque Vectoring Differential)*

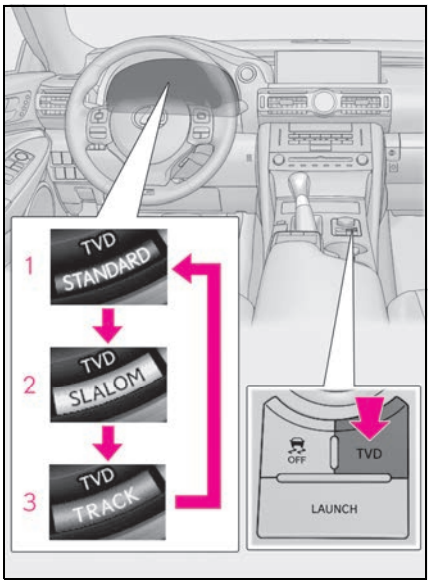
*: If equipped

The TVD system distributes driving force (torque) between the right and left rear wheels automatically. This system contributes to enhanced steering response while cornering and increased traction when exiting a corner, providing an agile driving experience.

Changing TVD control modes

Pressing the "TVD" switch changes the TVD control mode.

The current TVD control mode will be displayed on the meters.



1 STANDARD mode

This is the default mode and provides an optimum balance of driving agility and stability.

2 SLALOM mode

This mode emphasizes enhanced steering response.

3 TRACK mode

This mode emphasizes stability for high speed sporty driving.

■ Operating conditions

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Automatic cancelation of the selected TVD control mode

SLALOM and TRACK mode are canceled when the engine switch is turned off. When the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the TVD system will be in STANDARD mode.

■ Automatic disabling of the TVD system

If a malfunction is detected in the TVD system, a warning message will be displayed on the multi-information display (→P.360) and the TVD system will be disabled automatically. If the system is disabled, driving force will not be distributed by the TVD but through normal differential operation.

■ To protect the system

The TVD fluid temperature may become excessively high when driving for a long time under extremely high load conditions. In this case, a warning message will be displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.360)

⚠ WARNING

■ Cautions regarding the use of the system

The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Do not overly rely on the TVD system. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

TVD control status on the multi-information display

The multi-information display shows the distribution of driving force between the right and left rear wheels. (→P.104)

Driving assist systems

To keep enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

Summary of the driving assist systems

■ ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface

■ Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed when the system detects a panic stop situation

■ VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces

Provides cooperative control of the ABS, TRC, VSC and EPS.
Helps to maintain directional stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling steering performance.

■ TRC (Traction Control)

Helps to maintain drive power and pre-

vent the drive wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads

■ Hill-start assist control

Helps to reduce the backward movement of the vehicle when starting on an uphill

■ EPS (Electric Power Steering)

Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel

■ AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System)

By independently controlling the damping force of the shock absorbers for each of the 4 wheels according to the road and driving conditions, this system helps riding comfort with superior vehicle stability, and helps good vehicle posture (→P.232)

■ VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management)

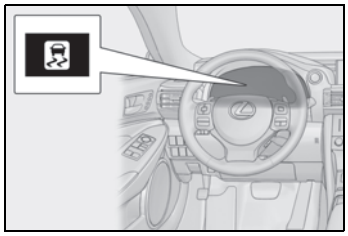
Provides integrated control of the ABS, brake assist, TRC, VSC, hill-start assist control and EPS systems
Helps to maintain vehicle stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling the brakes, engine output and steering assist.

■ Emergency brake signal

When the brakes are applied suddenly, the stop lights automatically flash to alert the vehicle behind

■ When the TRC/VSC systems are operating

The slip indicator light will flash while the TRC/VSC systems are operating.



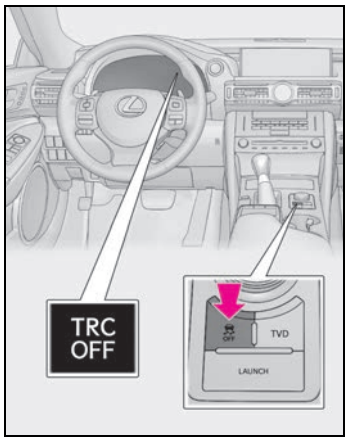
■ Disabling the TRC system

If the vehicle gets stuck in mud, dirt or snow, the TRC system may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. Pressing the OFF switch to turn the system off may make it easier for you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

To turn the TRC system off, quickly press and release the OFF switch.

The "TRC OFF" indicator light will come on.

Press the OFF switch again to turn the system back on.



■ Turning off both TRC and VSC system

To turn the TRC and VSC systems off, press

and hold the switch for more than 3 seconds.

The "TRC OFF" indicator light and the VSC OFF indicator light will come on.*

Press the switch again to turn the systems back on.

*: On vehicles with PCS (Pre-Collision System), pre-collision brake assist and precollision braking will also be disabled. The pre-collision system warning light will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.196)

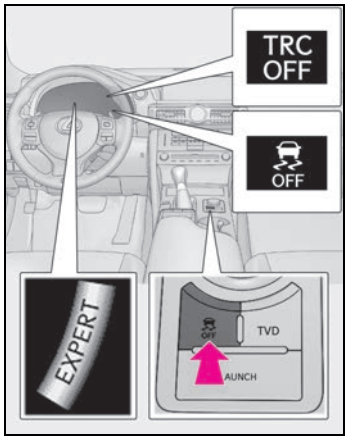
Expert mode

When expert mode is selected, it is possible to drive in a more sporty manner than other drive modes. Expert mode disables the TRC and VSC systems but the engine and brakes may be controlled depending on the vehicle behavior.

To select expert mode, press the switch when in SPORT S+ mode.

The "EXPERT" indicator will come on together with the TRC OFF and VSC OFF indicators.

To cancel expert mode, press the switch or use the driving mode select switch to select a driving mode other than SPORT S+ mode.



When the "TRC OFF" indicator light comes on even if the switch has not been pressed

TRC is temporary deactivated. If the indicator light continues to remain on, contact your Lexus dealer.

Operating conditions of hill-start assist control

When the following four conditions are met, the hill-start assist control will operate:

- The shift lever is in a position other than P or N (when starting off forward/backward on an upward incline).
- The vehicle is stopped.
- The accelerator pedal is not depressed.
- The parking brake is not engaged.

Automatic system cancelation of hill-start assist control

The hill-start assist control will turn off in any of the following situations:

- The shift lever is moved to P or N.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The parking brake is engaged.
- Approximately 2 seconds elapse after the brake pedal is released.

Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, TRC, VSC and hill-start assist control systems

- A sound may be heard from the engine

compartment when the brake pedal is depressed repeatedly, when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.

- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.
  - The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the ABS is activated.
  - The brake pedal may move down slightly after the ABS is activated.

EPS operation sound

When the steering wheel is operated, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

Reactivation of the TRC/VSC systems

Even after the TRC/VSC systems have been turned off, turning the engine off and then on again will automatically reactivate the TRC/VSC systems.

Reactivation of the TRC system linked to vehicle speed

When only the TRC system is turned off, the TRC system will turn on when vehicle speed increases. However, when both TRC and VSC systems are turned off, the systems will not turn on even when vehicle speed increases.

Reduced effectiveness of the EPS system

The effectiveness of the EPS system is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result. Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the engine off. The EPS system should return to normal within 10 minutes.

Operating conditions of emergency brake signal

When the following three conditions are met, the emergency brake signal will operate:

- The emergency flashers are off.
- Actual vehicle speed is over 55 km/h (35 mph).
- The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that it is a sudden braking operation.

Automatic system cancelation of emergency brake signal

The emergency brake signal will turn off in any of the following situations:

- The emergency flashers are turned on.
- The brake pedal is released.
- The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that is not a sudden braking operation.

WARNING

The ABS does not operate effectively when

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded (such as excessively worn tires on a snow covered road).
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on wet or slick roads.

Stopping distance when the ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, especially in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road

WARNING

- When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces

■ TRC may not operate effectively when

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRC system is operating. Drive the vehicle carefully in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

■ Hill-start assist control does not operate effectively when

- Do not overly rely on hill-start assist control. Hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered with ice.
- Unlike the parking brake, hill-start assist control is not intended to hold the vehicle stationary for an extended period of time. Do not attempt to use hill-start assist control to hold the vehicle on an incline, as doing so may lead to an accident.

■ When the TRC/VSC is activated

The slip indicator light flashes. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes.

■ When the TRC/VSC systems are turned off

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are the systems to help ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn the TRC/VSC systems off unless necessary.

■ Expert mode precautions

- Do not use on public roads.
- Use only when the road conditions and safety of the surrounding area can be ensured.
- Proper use of expert mode requires a professional level of driving skill. When using expert mode, always check the road conditions and surrounding area and drive more carefully than usual.

■ Replacing tires

Make sure that all tires are of the specified size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level.

The ABS, TRC and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle.
Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

■ Handling of tires and the suspension

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system to malfunction.

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

Preparation for winter

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the condition of the battery.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires.

Ensure that all tires are the specified size and the same brand.

- For Russia: Tire chains can only be installed on the rear tires. However, tire chains cannot be installed on 275/35ZR19 rear tires.

Before installing tire chains, change all four tires and wheels to those of the specified size for use with tire chains (front tires: 235/40R19, rear tires: 235/40R19, wheels: 19 × 8 1/2 J 45 inset). Use the specified type of tire chains and install them on the rear tires only.

For details, contact your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the specified size.
- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
- Do not drive at speeds in excess of the speed limit or the speed limit specified for the snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

■ Driving with tire chains

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 50 km/h (30 mph), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.
- Do not use LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) system. (if equipped)

NOTICE

■ Repairing or replacing snow tires

Request repairs or replacement of snow tires from Lexus dealers or legitimate tire retailers.
This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions:

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated on the exterior lights, vehicle's roof, chassis, around the tires or on the brakes.
- Remove any snow or mud from the bottom of your shoes before getting in the vehicle.

When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly, keep a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead, and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

When parking the vehicle

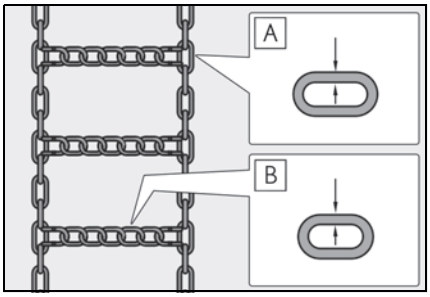
- Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to P without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If the vehicle is parked without setting the parking brake, make sure to block the wheels. Failure to do so may be dangerous because it may cause the vehicle to move unexpectedly, possibly leading to an accident.
- If the vehicle is parked without setting the parking brake, confirm that the shift lever cannot be moved out of P*.

*: The shift lever will be locked if it is attempted to be shifted from P to any other position without depressing the brake pedal. If the shift lever can be shifted from P, there may be a problem with the shift lock system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Selecting tire chains

Tire chains can be mounted on 235/40R19 rear tires. They cannot be mounted on 275/35ZR19 rear tires. Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the tire chains.

Chain size is regulated for each tire size.



A Side chain (3 mm [0.12 in.] in diameter)

B Cross chain (4 mm [0.16 in.] in diameter)

Regulations on the use of tire chains

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.

■ **Tire chain installation**

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the rear tires. Do not install tire chains on the front tires.
- Install tire chains on rear tires as tightly as possible. Retighten chains after driving 0.5—1.0 km (1/4—1/2 mile).
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided with the tire chains.

NOTICE

■ **Fitting tire chains**

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

Eco-friendly driving tips

For improved fuel economy and reduced CO_2 emissions, pay attention to the following points:

Using Eco drive mode

When using Eco drive mode, the torque corresponding to the accelerator pedal depression amount can be generated more smoothly than it is in normal conditions. In addition, the operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling) will be minimized, improving the fuel economy. (→P.232)

Use of Eco Driving Indicator

The Eco-friendly driving is possible by keeping the bar display of the Eco Driving Indicator shown in the multi-information display within the Zone of Eco driving. (→P.106)

Accelerator pedal/brake pedal operation

Drive your vehicle smoothly. Avoid abrupt acceleration and deceleration. Gradual acceleration and deceleration will help reduce excessive fuel consumption.

When braking

Observe conditions in front of and around the vehicle, and estimate your

stopping position. Release the accelerator pedal early and continue coasting. Use the brake pedal to adjust your stopping position. Make sure to operate the brake pedal gently.

Delays

Repeated acceleration and deceleration, as well as long waits at traffic lights, will lead to bad fuel economy. Check traffic reports before leaving and avoid delays as much as possible.

Highway driving

Control and maintain the vehicle at a constant speed. Before stopping at a toll booth or similar, allow plenty of time to release the accelerator pedal and gently apply the brakes.

Air conditioning

Use the air conditioning only when necessary. Doing so can help reduce excessive fuel consumption.

In summer: When the ambient temperature is high, use the recirculated air mode. Doing so will help to reduce the burden on the air conditioning system and reduce fuel consumption as well.

In winter: Turn the A/C switch on only when both heating and dehumidifying are needed, and if only heating is needed, turn the A/C switch off. Turning the A/C switch on when unnecessary leads to excessive fuel consumption.

Performing idling stops

- Avoid unnecessary idling. Stop the engine when parking the vehicle to reduce excessive fuel consumption, even it is only for a short period of time.
- Except in severe environment, such as when the outside temperature is extremely low, warming up the engine before driving is unnecessary. Rather than idling, it is more efficient to drive the vehicle gently to warm up each part while avoiding increasing the engine revolutions unnecessarily and accelerating or decelerating suddenly.

Luggage

Carrying heavy luggage will lead to poor fuel economy. Avoid carrying unnecessary luggage. Installing a large roof rack will also cause poor fuel economy.

Regular maintenance

- Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure frequently. Improper tire inflation pressure can cause poor fuel economy. Also, as snow tires can cause large amounts of friction, their use on dry roads can lead to poor fuel economy. Use tires that are appropriate for the season and road conditions.
- Use oil and fluid of the recommended quality, which affect fuel

consumption and the life of the vehicle. Also, check oil and fluid periodically. (→P.303)

5-1. Remote Touch/Display

Remote Touch 250

Center Display 252

5-2. Using the air conditioning system

Automatic air conditioning system 255

Heated steering wheel/seat heaters/seat ventilators 263

5-3. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list 266

5-4. Using the storage features

List of storage features 268

Trunk features 270

5-5. Using the other interior features

Other interior features 271

Garage door opener 274

Remote Touch

The Remote Touch can be used to operate the Center Display.

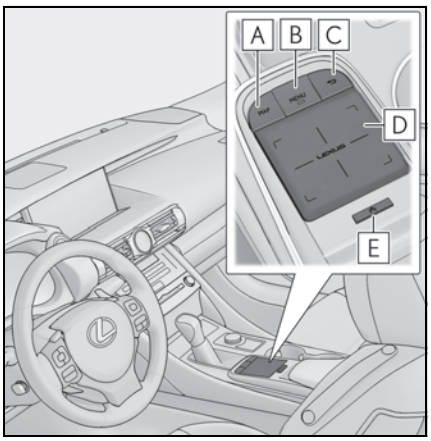
For details on the Remote Touch, refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

The illustrations below are for left-hand drive vehicles.

Remote Touch operation

■ **Switches**

▶ Vehicles with a 10.3-inch display



A "MAP" button

Press to display the compass mode screen.

Vehicles with navigation function:
Press this button to display the vehicle's current position.

B "MENU" button

Press this button to display the menu screen.

C Back button

Press this button to display the previous screen.

D Touchpad

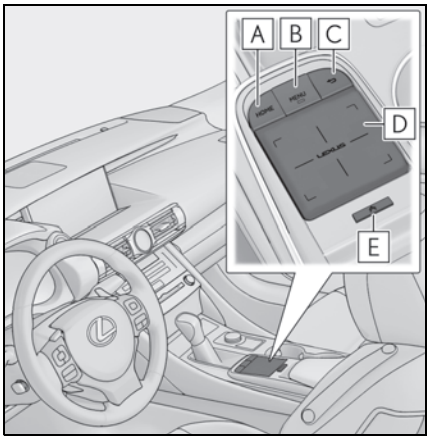
Slide your finger on the touchpad and move the pointer to select a function, letter and screen button.

Press the touchpad to enter the selected function, letter or screen button. Certain finger movements on the touchpad can perform functions, such as changing map scalings and scrolling list screens.

E Sub function button

When is displayed on the screen, a function screen assigned to the screen can be displayed.

▶ Vehicles with a 7-inch display



A "HOME" button

Press this button to display the "Home" screen.

B "MENU" button

Press this button to display the menu screen.

C Back button

Press this button to display the previous screen.

D Touchpad

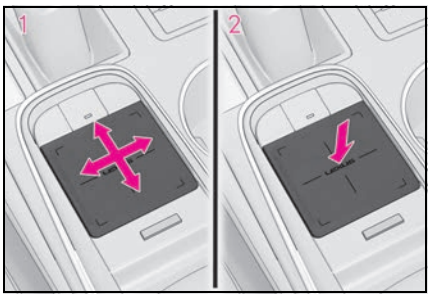
Slide your finger on the touchpad and move the pointer to select a function, letter and screen button.

Press the touchpad to enter the selected function, letter or screen button. Certain finger movements on the touchpad can perform functions, such as scrolling list screens.

E Sub function button

When is displayed on the screen, a function screen assigned to the screen can be displayed.

Using the touchpad



1 Select: Touch the touchpad to select the desired button on the screen.

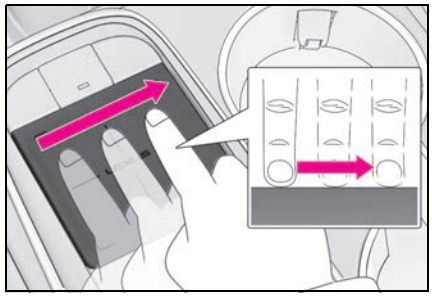
2 Enter: Buttons on the screen can be selected by either depressing or double tapping the touchpad. Once a button has been selected, the screen will change.

Touch operation

Operations are performed by touching the touchpad with your finger.

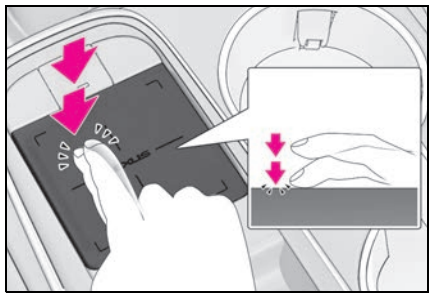
● Trace

Trace the pad surface while maintaining contact with the touchpad. Moving the cursor and the pointer.



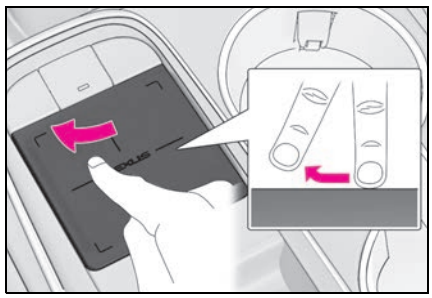
● Double tap

Tap the touchpad twice, quickly. Select the button on the screen.



● Flick

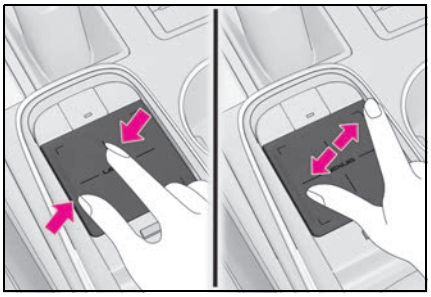
Quick and short movement along the touchpad with you finger. Move the list screen.



● Pinch in/Pinch out

Slide fingers toward each other or apart on the touchpad. Change the scale of the map.

5 Interior features



NOTICE

To prevent damage to the Remote Touch

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause damage to the Remote Touch.

- Do not allow food, liquid, stickers or lit cigarettes to contact the Remote Touch.
- Do not subject the Remote Touch to excessive pressure or strong impact.
- Do not push the touchpad with a strong force or use a sharp pointed object to operate the pad.

Center Display

Center Display overview

Menu screen

Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch to display the menu screen.
The displays shown in the illustrations are used for example only and may differ from the actual vehicle.

▶ Vehicles with a 10.3-inch display



▶ Vehicles with a 7-inch display



Switch	Function
	Select to display the "Destination" screen.*1
	Select to display the radio control screen.*1
	Select to display the media control screen.*1
	Select to display the hands-free control screen.*1
	Select to display the "Apps" screen.*1, 2
	Select to display the information screen.*1 (→P.113)

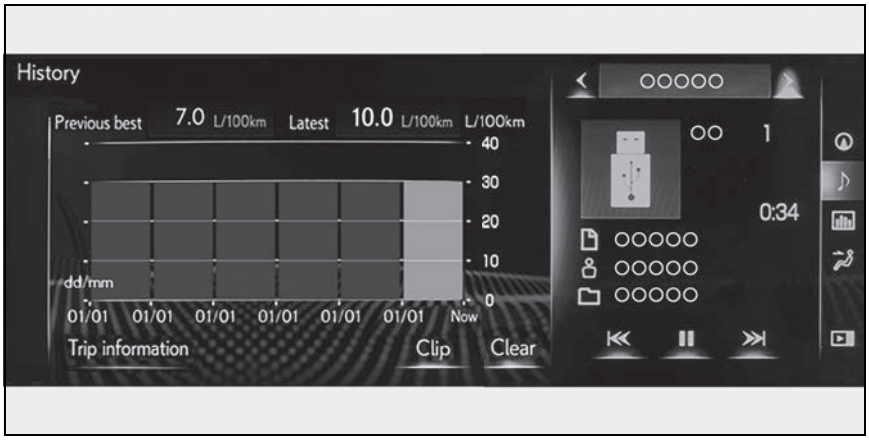
Switch	Function
	Select to display the setup screen.*1
	Select to display the air conditioning control screen. (→P.257)
	Select to adjust the contrast and brightness of the screens, turn the screen off, etc.*1, 2

*1: Refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual"

*2: This function is not available on some models.

■ Split-screen display (Vehicles with a 10.3-inch display)

Different information can be displayed on the left and right sides of the screen. For example, air conditioning system screen can be displayed and operated while the fuel consumption information screen is being displayed. The large screen on the left of the display is called the main display, and the small screen to the right is called the side display.



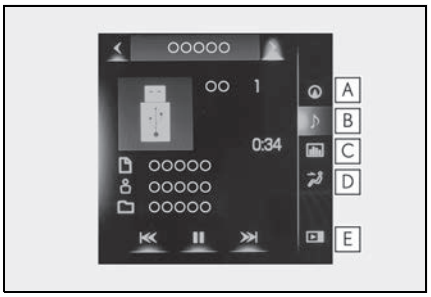
■ Main display (Vehicles with a 10.3-inch display)

For details about the functions and operation of the main display, refer to the respective section and "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

■ Side display (Vehicles with a 10.3-inch display)

The following functions can be displayed and operated on the side display.

Select < or > to display the desired screen.



A Navigation system*

B Audio*

C Vehicle information (→P.115)

D Air conditioning system (→P.258)

E Show/hide the side display*

*: Refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

■ Screen display during low temperatures

When the ambient temperature is extremely low, screen response may be delayed even if the Remote Touch is operated.

Automatic air conditioning system

Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch, then select "Climate" to display the air conditioning control screen. (→P.252)

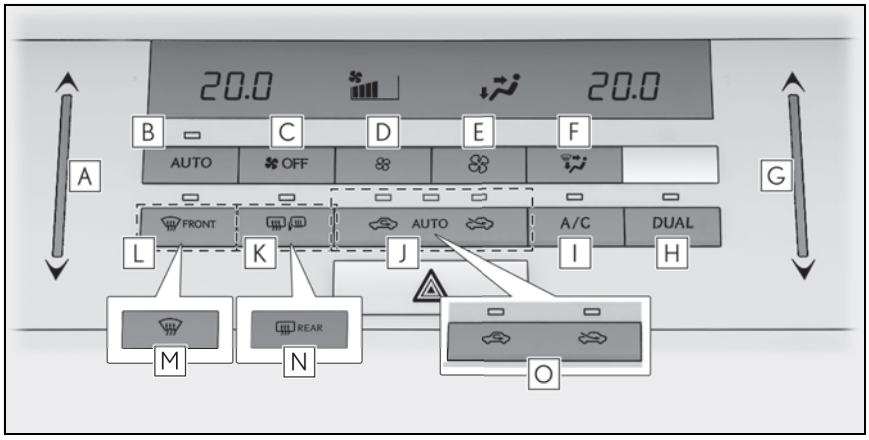
The air conditioning system can be displayed and operated on the side display.

The illustrations below are for left-hand drive vehicles.

The button positions and shapes will differ for right-hand drive vehicles.

Also, the display and button positions will differ depending on the type of the system.

Air conditioning controls



A Left-hand side temperature control switch

B Automatic mode switch

C Off switch

D Fan speed down switch

E Fan speed up switch

F Air flow mode switch

G Right-hand side temperature control switch

H DUAL mode switch

I A/C switch

J Outside/recirculated air mode switch

K Rear window defogger and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch

L Windshield defogger switch

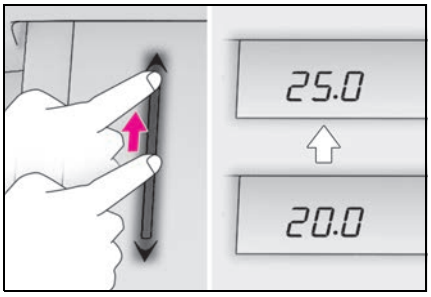
M Windshield defogger switch

N Rear window defogger switch

O Outside/recirculated air mode switch

■ Adjusting the temperature setting

To adjust the temperature setting, touch and slide your finger up or down on the sensor.



The temperature setting can also be adjusted by touching on the sensor.

When the temperature setting is changed, a buzzer sounds.

If A/C ("A/C") is not pressed, the system will blow ambient temperature air or heated air.

■ Fan speed setting

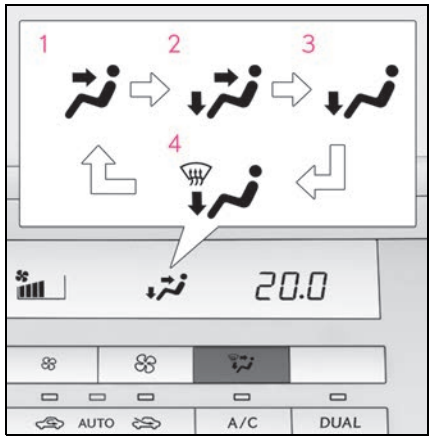
Press to increase the fan speed.

Press to decrease the fan speed.

■ Change the airflow mode

To change the airflow, press .

The air outlets used are switched each time the button is pressed.



1 Air flows to the upper body.

2 Air flows to the upper body and feet.

3 Air flows to the feet.

4 Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates.

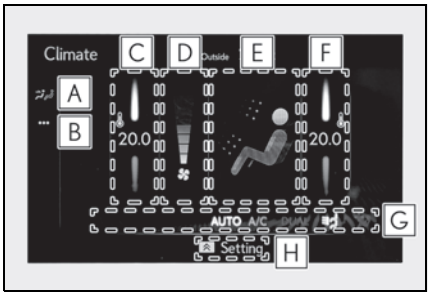
■ Other functions

- Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes (→P.259)
- Defogging the windshield

(→P.259)

- Defogging the rear window and outside rear view mirrors (if equipped) (→P.259)
- Defogging the rear window (if equipped) (→P.260)

Air conditioning control screen



A Display the air conditioning control screen

B Display the option control screen (→P.257)

C Adjust the left-hand side temperature setting

D Adjust the fan speed setting

E Select the air flow mode

F Adjust the right-hand side temperature setting

G Function on/off indicators

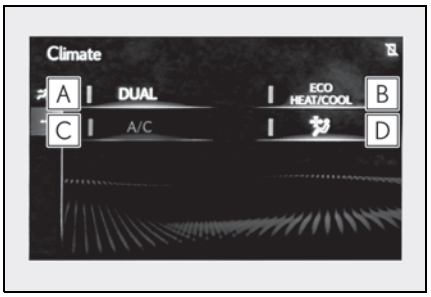
When the function is on, the indicator illuminates on the control screen.

H Display the sub function menu (→P.257)

Using the Remote Touch, select the button on the screen and activate it by pressing on or double tapping the Remote Touch Pad.

■ Option control screen

The functions can be switched on and off.



A Adjusting the temperature for driver and passenger seats separately ("DUAL" mode) (→P.258)

B Select to set eco mode on/off (if equipped) (→P.261)

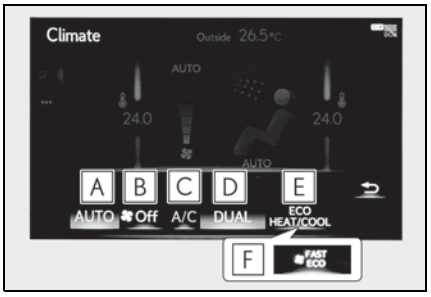
C Set cooling and dehumidification function on/off

If the "A/C" indicator is turned off, the system will blow ambient temperature air or heated air.

D Removing pollen from the air (Pollen removal mode) (→P.259)

■ Sub function menu

When the sub function button on the Remote Touch is pressed, the following functions can be switched on and off.



5

Interior features

A Set automatic mode on/off (→P.258)

B Turn the fan off

C Set cooling and dehumidification function on/off

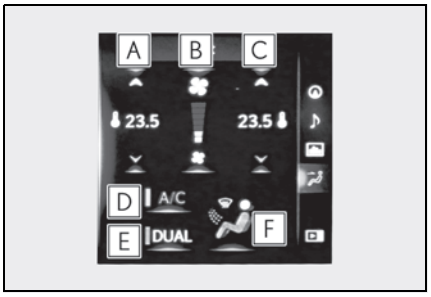
If the "A/C" indicator is turned off, the system will blow ambient temperature air or heated air.

D Adjust the temperature for driver and passenger seats separately ("DUAL" mode) (→P.258)

E Select to set eco mode on/off (if equipped) (→P.261)

F Changing the fan speed setting during the automatic mode operation (if equipped) (→P.260)

■ **Side display (vehicles with a 10.3-inch display)**



A Adjust the left-hand side temperature setting

B Adjust the fan speed setting

C Adjust the right-hand side temperature setting

D Set cooling and dehumidification function on/off

If the "A/C" indicator is turned off, the system will blow ambient temperature air or heated air.

E Adjust the temperature for the driver's and front passenger's seats separately ("DUAL" mode) (→P.258)

F Select the air flow mode

Using automatic mode

1 Press AUTO, or select "AUTO" on the air conditioning control screen.

2 Press AUTO to switch to automatic air intake mode. (if equipped)

The air conditioning system automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

3 Adjust the temperature setting.

4 To stop the operation, press OFF or select "Off" on the sub function menu.

■ **Automatic mode indicator**

If the fan speed setting or air flow modes are operated, the automatic mode indicator goes off. However, automatic mode for functions other than that operated is maintained.

■ **Adjusting the temperature for driver and passenger seats separately ("DUAL" mode)**

To turn on the "DUAL" mode, perform any of the following procedures:

- Press DUAL.
- Select "DUAL" on the option control screen.

● Adjust the passenger's side temperature setting.

The indicator comes on when the "DUAL" mode is on.

While in "DUAL" mode, the temperature of the rear air outlets is set at the right-hand side temperature setting.

Other functions

■ Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

▶ Type A

Press AUTO.

The mode switches among (recirculated air mode), automatic and (outside air mode) modes each time the button is pressed.

When the system is switched to automatic mode, the air conditioning system operates automatically.

The indicator above the selected button comes on.

▶ Type B

Press .

The mode switches between (recirculated air mode) and (outside air mode) modes each time the button is pressed.

The indicator above the selected button comes on.

■ Pollen removal mode

Pollen is removed from the air and the air flows to the upper part of the body.

Select on the option control screen.

When pollen removal mode is on, is displayed on the air conditioning control screen.

In order to prevent the windshield from fogging up when the outside air is cold, the dehumidification function may operate.

Pollens is filtered even if the pollen removal mode is turned off.

■ Defogging the windshield

Defoggers are used to defog the windshield and side windows.

Press FRONT ( ).

Set the outside/recirculated air mode button to outside air mode if the recirculated air mode is used. (It may switch automatically.)

To defog the windshield and the side windows early, turn the air flow and temperature up.

To return to the previous mode, press FRONT ( ) again when the windshield is defogged.

■ Defogging the rear window and outside rear view mirrors (if equipped)

Defoggers are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

Press .

The defoggers will automatically turn off after a period of time.

5 Interior features

■ Defogging the rear window (if equipped)

Press REAR to defog the rear window.

The defogger will automatically turn off after a period of time.

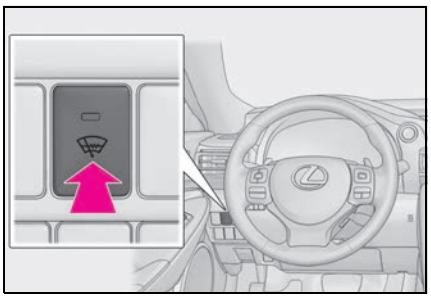
■ Windshield wiper de-icer (if equipped)

This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.

Turns on/off.

The indicator comes on when the windshield wiper de-icer is on.

The windshield de-icer will automatically turn off after a period of time.



■ Blower customization (if equipped)

Fan speed setting during the automatic mode operation can be customized.

To change the fan speed setting mode, select FAST ECO on the air conditioning control screen.

Each time FAST ECO is selected, the fan speed setting mode changes as follows.

"NORMAL" → "ECO" → "FAST" → "NORMAL"

■ Registering air conditioning settings to electronic keys

- Unlocking the vehicle using an electronic key and turning the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode will recall that key's registered air conditioning settings.
- When the engine switch is turned off, the current air conditioning settings will automatically be registered to the electronic key that was used to unlock the vehicle.
- The system may not operate correctly if more than one electronic key is in the vicinity or if the smart entry & start system is used to unlock a passenger door.
- The doors that can recall the air conditioning setting* when unlocked using the smart entry & start system can be changed. For details, contact your Lexus dealer.

*: The doors that can recall the driving position memory are changed at the same time.

■ Using automatic mode

Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and the ambient conditions.

Therefore, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow immediately after AUTO is pressed or "AUTO" is selected.

■ Fogging up of the windows

The windows will easily fog up when the humidity in the vehicle is high. Turning A/C ("A/C") on will dehumidify the air from the outlets and defog the windshield effectively.

- If you turn A/C ("A/C") off, the windows may fog up more easily.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculated air mode is used.

■ Outside/recirculated air mode

- When driving on dusty roads such as tunnels or in heavy traffic, set the out-

side/recirculated air mode button to the recirculated air mode. This is effective in preventing outside air from entering the vehicle interior. During cooling operation, setting the recirculated air mode will also cool the vehicle interior effectively.

- Outside/recirculated air mode may automatically switch depending on the temperature setting or the inside temperature.

■ Automatic mode for air intake control (if equipped)

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

When the dehumidification function is off, and the fan is operating, turning automatic mode on will activate the dehumidification function.

■ Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode

In Eco drive mode, the air conditioning system is controlled as follows to prioritize fuel efficiency:

- Engine speed and compressor operation controlled to restrict heating/cooling capacity
- Fan speed restricted when automatic mode is selected

To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations:

- Adjust the fan speed
- Turn off Eco drive mode

■ When the outside temperature falls to nearly 0°C (32°F)

The dehumidification function may not operate even when A/C is pressed or "A/C" is selected.

■ Ventilation and air conditioning odors

- To let fresh air in, set the air conditioning system to the outside air mode.
- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
  - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
  - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.

■ Air conditioning filter

→P.334

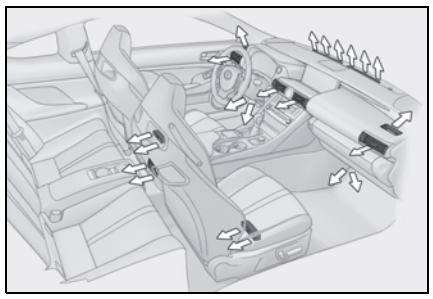
■ Customization

Some functions can be customized.
(→P.404)

Air outlets

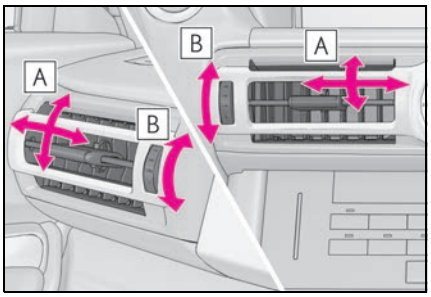
■ Location of air outlets

The air outlets and air volume changes according to the selected airflow mode.



■ Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

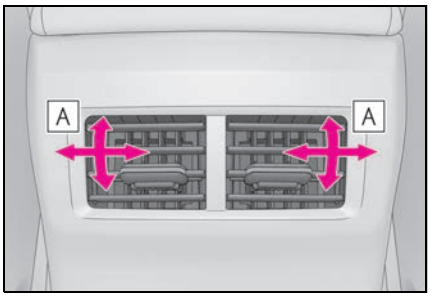
▶ Front



A Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down

B Turn the knob to open or close the vent

▶ Rear



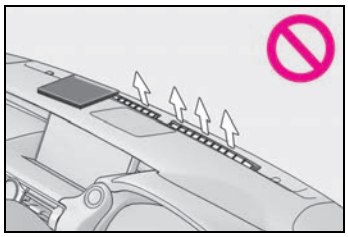
A Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down

To close the vent, move the knob to the most outside position.

WARNING

■ To prevent the windshield from fogging up

- Do not use (FRONT) ( ) during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.
- Do not place anything on the instrument panel which may cover the air outlets. Otherwise, air flow may be obstructed, preventing the windshield defoggers from defogging.



■ To prevent burns

- Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces when the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on.
- Do not touch the glass at lower part of the windshield or to the side of the front pillars when the windshield wiper de-icer is on.

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Heated steering wheel*/seat heaters*/seat ventilators*

*: If equipped

Heated steering wheel and seat heaters heat the side grips of the steering wheel and seats, respectively. Seat ventilators maintain good ventilation using a fan built into the seat.

WARNING

■ To prevent minor burn injuries

Care should be taken if anyone in the following categories comes in contact with the steering wheel or seats when the heater is on:

- Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
- Persons with sensitive skin
- Persons who are fatigued
- Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the seat heaters and seat ventilators

Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

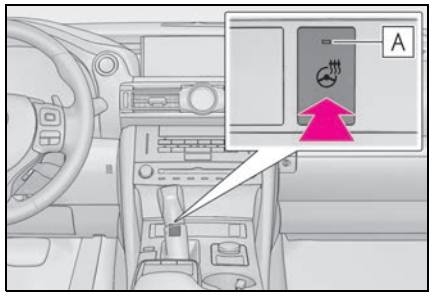
■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not use the functions when the engine is off.

Heated steering wheel

Turn the heated steering wheel on/off

The indicator light A comes on when the heated steering wheel is operating.



■ Operation condition

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Timer function

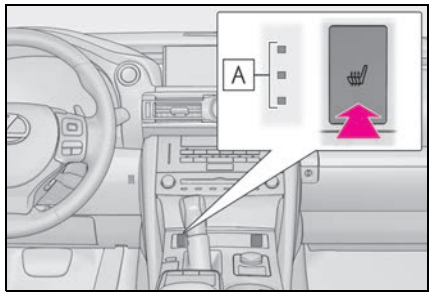
The heated steering wheel will automatically turn off after about 30 minutes.

Seat heaters

▶ Vehicles without seat ventilators

Each time the switch is pressed, the intensity of the seat heater changes and the level indicator lights (amber) A light as follows:

Hi (3 segments lit)→Mid (2 segments lit)→Lo (1 segment lit)→Off



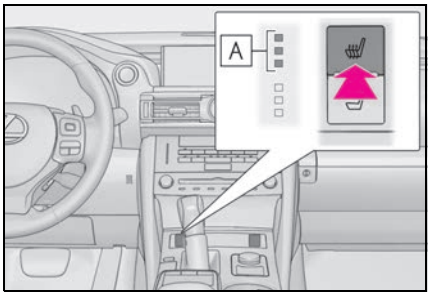
▶ Vehicles with seat ventilators

Each time the switch is pressed, the

5 Interior features

intensity of the seat heater changes and the level indicator lights (amber) A light as follows:

Hi (3 segments lit)→Mid (2 segments lit)→Lo (1 segment lit)→Off



■ **Operation condition**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Seat heater timer control**

To enable seat heater timer control, press and hold the driver and front passenger seat heater switches at the same time when the vehicle is stopped until a buzzer sounds once. If a seat heater is turned on while seat heater timer control is enabled, the intensity of the seat heater will automatically change from Hi→Mid→Lo.

The timing of the change in seat heater intensity differs depending on the temperature inside the cabin, etc. when the seat heater is operating.

To disable seat heater timer control, press and hold the driver and front passenger seat heater switches at the same time until a buzzer sounds twice.

WARNING

■ **To prevent overheating and minor burn injuries**

Observe the following precautions when using the seat heaters.

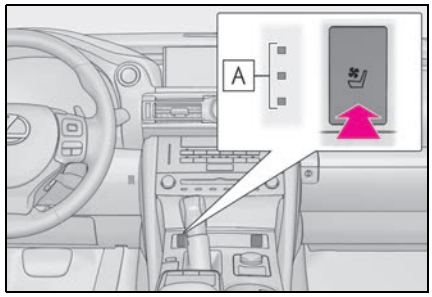
- Do not cover the seat with a blanket or cushion when using the seat heater.
- Do not use seat heater more than necessary.

Seat ventilators

▶ Vehicles without seat heaters

Each time the switch is pressed, the intensity of the seat ventilator changes and the level indicator lights (green) A light as follows:

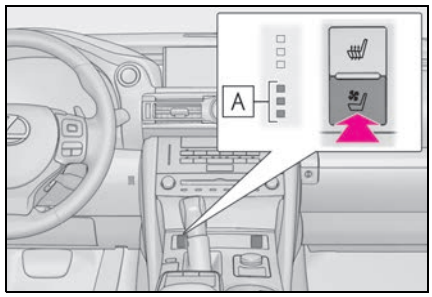
Hi (3 segments lit)→Mid (2 segments lit)→Lo (1 segment lit)→Off



▶ Vehicles with seat heaters

Each time the switch is pressed, the intensity of the seat ventilator changes and the level indicator lights (green) A light as follows:

Hi (3 segments lit)→Mid (2 segments lit)→Lo (1 segment lit)→Off

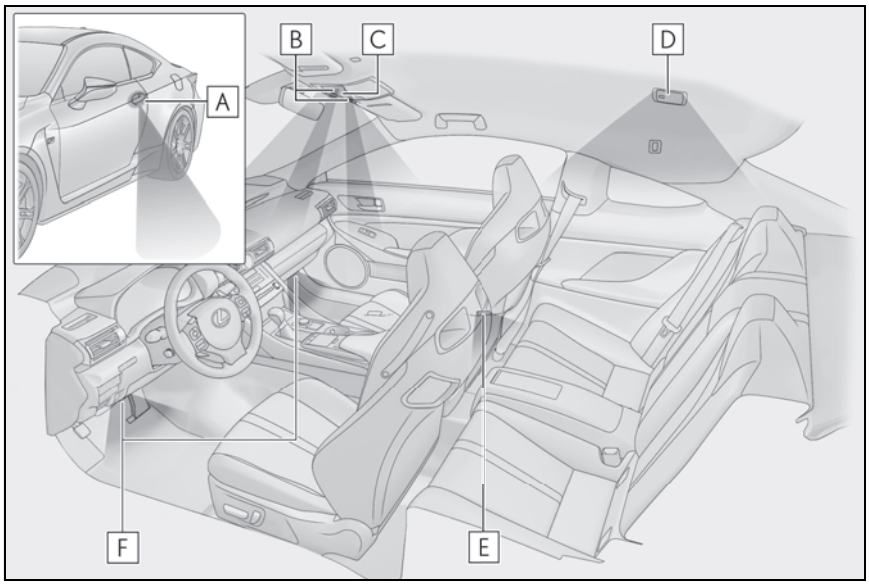


■ Operation condition

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

Interior lights list

Location of the interior lights



A Outer foot lights

B Personal lights (→P.267)

C Front interior light (→P.266)

D Rear interior light (→P.266)

E Door courtesy lights

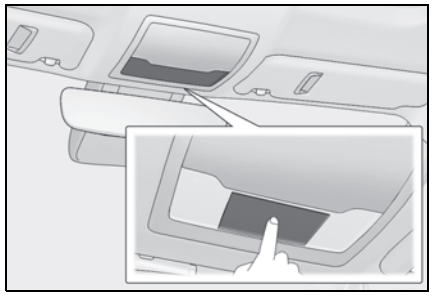
F Footwell lights

Operating the interior lights

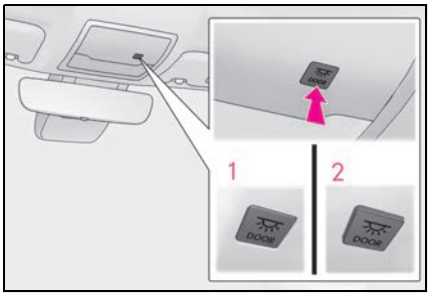
■ Front

Turns the light on/off (touch the light)

The rear interior light turns on/off together with the front interior light.



Turns the door position on/off



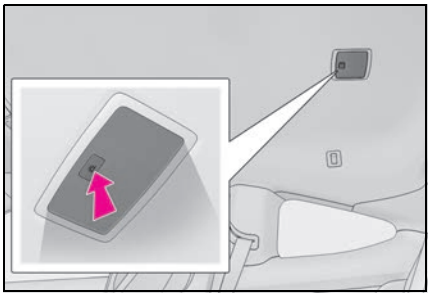
1 On

2 Off

■ Rear

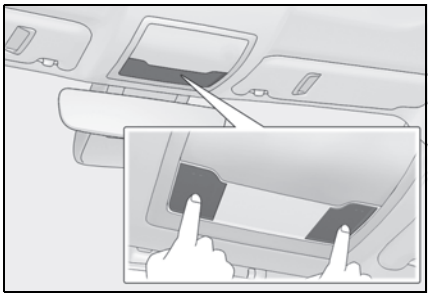
Turns the light on/off

If the front interior light is off, the rear light can be turned on/off separately.



Operating the personal lights

Turns the lights on/off (touch the lights)



■ Illuminated entry system

The lights automatically turn on/off according to engine switch mode, the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, and whether the doors are opened/closed.

■ To prevent the battery from being discharged

If the interior lights remain on when the engine switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

■ When front interior light or personal lights do not respond as normal

- When water, dirt, etc., have adhered to the lens surface
- When operated with a wet hand
- When wearing gloves, etc.

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P.404)

NOTICE

■ Removing light lenses

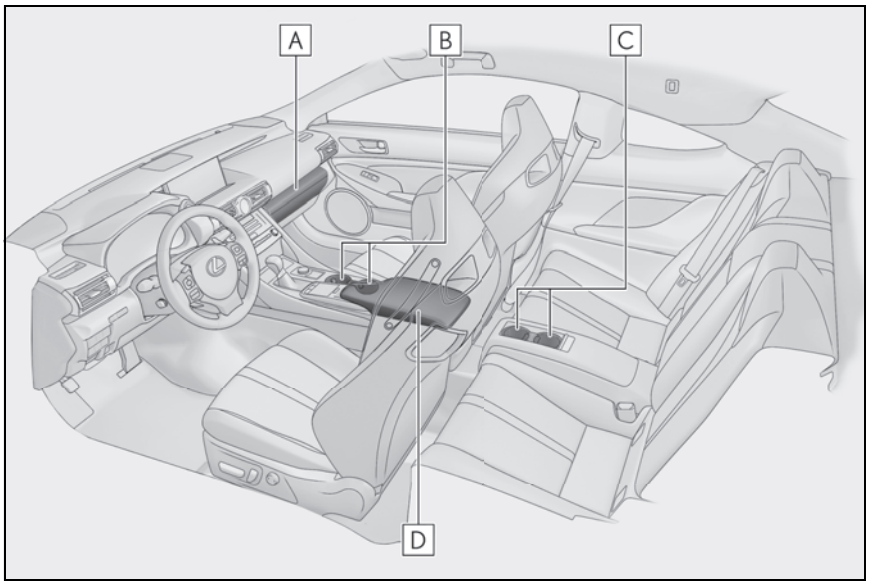
Never remove the lens for the front interior light and personal lights. Otherwise, the lights will be damaged.

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

List of storage features

Location of the storage features



A Glove box (→P.269)

B Front cup holders (→P.269)

C Rear cup holders* (→P.269)

D Console box (→P.270)

*: If equipped

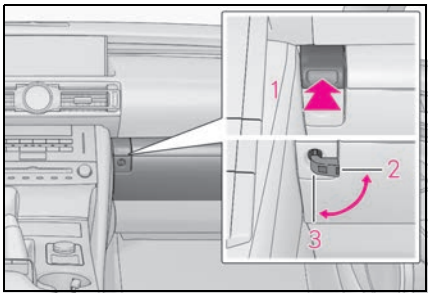
WARNING

■ Items that should not be left in the storage spaces

Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:

- Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
- Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.

Glove box



1 Open (press the button)
2 Unlock with the mechanical key
3 Lock with the mechanical key

■ Glove box light

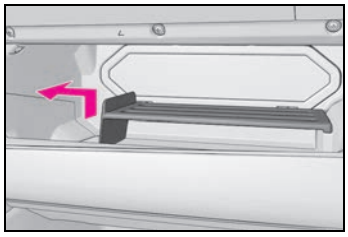
The glove box light turns on when the engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ Trunk opener main switch

The trunk opener main switch is located in the glove box. (→P.128)

■ Removing the partition

The insert inside the glove box can be removed.

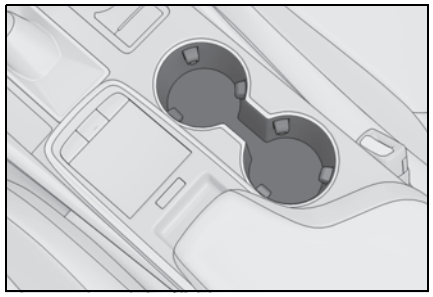


WARNING

■ Caution while driving

Keep the glove box closed. In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the open glove box or the items stored inside.

Front cup holders



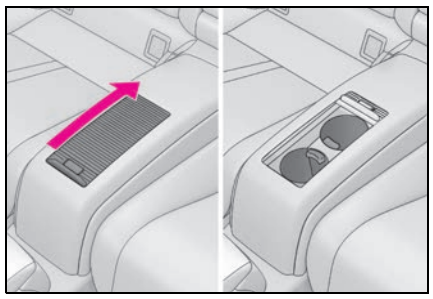
WARNING

■ Items unsuitable for the cup holder

Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holders.

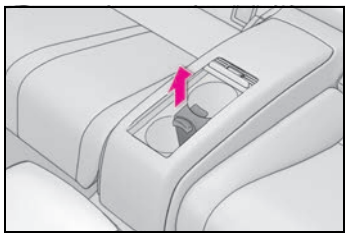
Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking, causing injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

Rear cup holders (if equipped)



■ Removing the insert

Rear cup holder insert can be removed.



WARNING

■ **Items unsuitable for the cup holder**

Do not place anything other than cups or beverage cans in the cup holders. Inappropriate items must not be stored in the cup holders even if the lid is closed. Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

■ **When not in use**

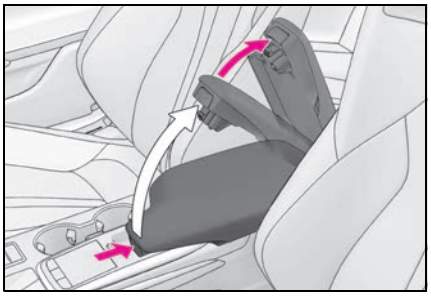
Keep the cup holders closed.

In the event of sudden braking, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the items stored inside.

Console box

Push the knob.

Lift by hand to fully open the console box.



WARNING

■ **Caution while driving**

Keep the console box closed.

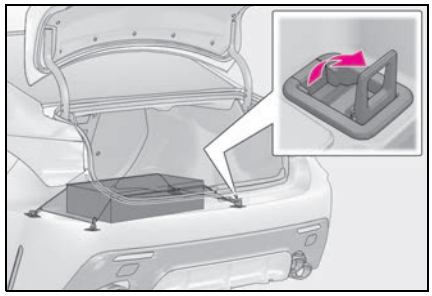
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Trunk features

Cargo hooks

Raise the hooks when needed.

The cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.

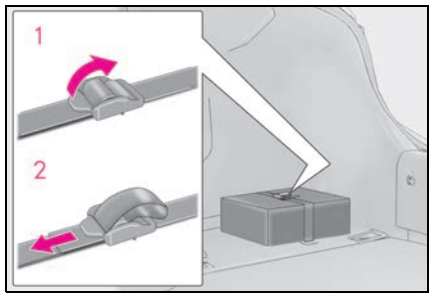


WARNING

■ **When the cargo net is not in use**

To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks on the floor to their stowed positions.

First-aid kit storage belt



1 Loosen the belt

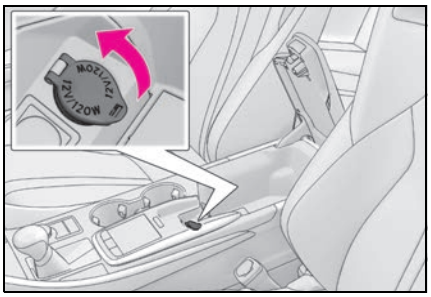
2 Tighten the belt

Other interior features

Power outlet

Please use as a power supply for electronic goods that use less than 12 VDC/10 A (power consumption of 120 W).

Open the lid.



■ The power outlet can be used when

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

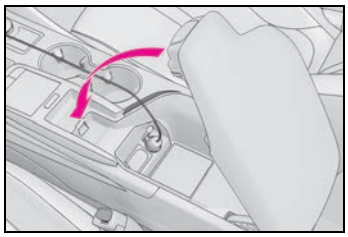
■ When turning the engine switch off

Disconnect electrical devices with charging functions, such as mobile battery packs.

If such devices are left connected, the engine switch may not be turned off normally.

■ Using the power outlet

The shape of the console box rim allows power cables to be passed through when the console box lid is closed.



NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the power outlet

Close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use.

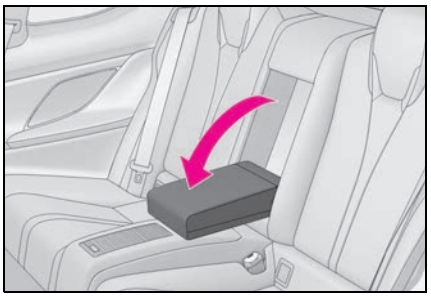
Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

■ To prevent the battery from being discharged

Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Armrest (if equipped)

Fold down the armrest for use.



NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the armrest

Do not apply too much load on the armrest.

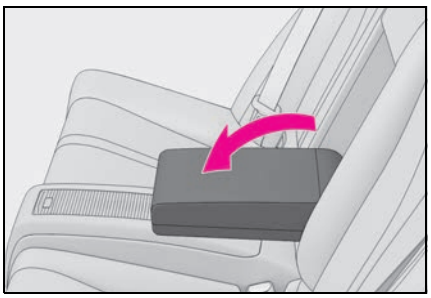
Trunk storage extension (if equipped)

Long objects can be loaded in the vehicle by utilizing the trunk space and rearseat area.

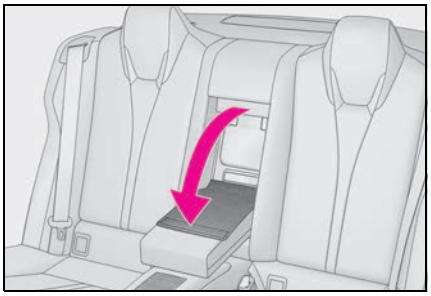
5

Interior features

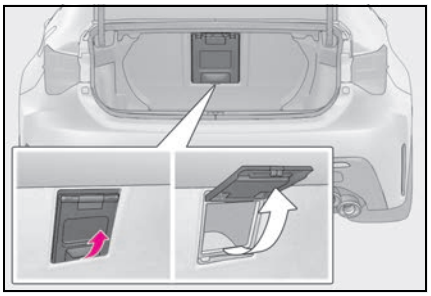
1 Pull down the armrest.



2 Separate the fastener and turn back the trunk door cover.



3 Open the inside trunk door from the trunk and load baggage or other items.



WARNING

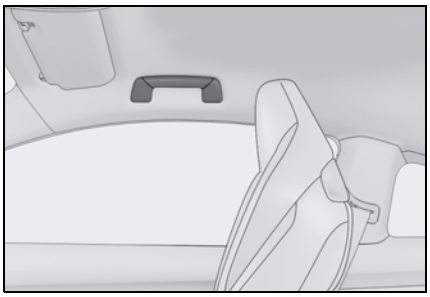
■ When not in use

Ensure that the inside trunk door is closed.

In the event of sudden braking, items stored in the trunk may be thrown forward into the cabin, resulting in injury.

Assist grips

An assist grip installed on the ceiling can be used to support your body while sitting on the seat.



WARNING

■ Assist grip

Do not use the assist grip when getting in or out of the vehicle or rising from your seat.

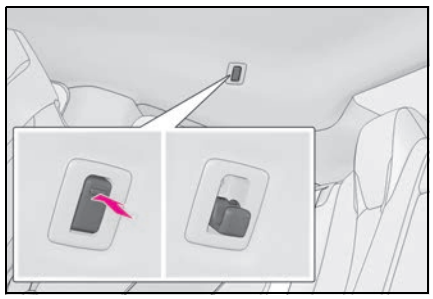
NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the assist grip

Do not put a heavy load on the assist grip.

Coat hooks

To use the coat hook, push it in.



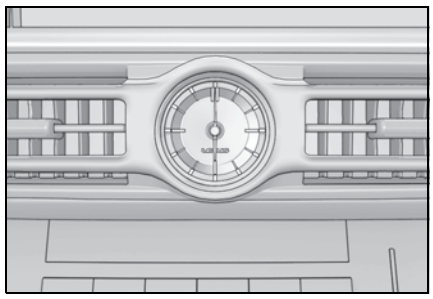
WARNING

■ Items that cannot be hung on the coat hook

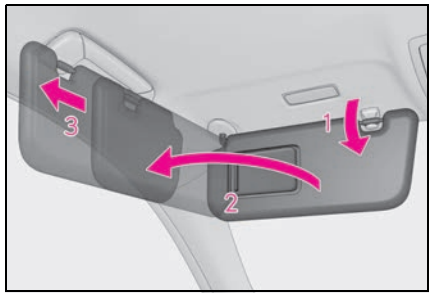
Do not hang coat hangers or other hard or sharp objects on the hook. If the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles, causing death or serious injury.

Clock

The GPS clock's time is automatically adjusted by utilizing GPS time information. For details, refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".



Sun visors



1 To set the visor in the forward position, flip it down.

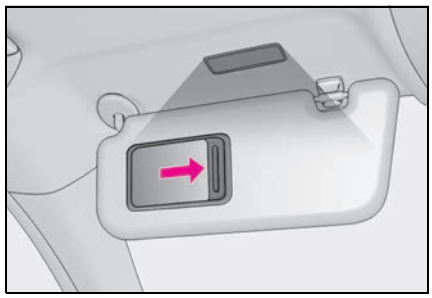
2 To set the visor in the side position, flip down, unhook, and swing it to the side.

3 To use the side extender, place the visor in the side position, then slide it backward.

Vanity mirrors

Slide the cover to open.

The light turns on when the cover is opened.



■ To prevent battery discharge

If the vanity lights remain on when the engine switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

NOTICE

■ To prevent the battery from being discharged

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

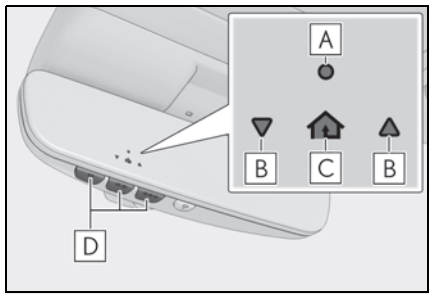
Garage door opener*

*: If equipped

The garage door opener can be programmed to operate garage doors, gates, entry doors, door locks, home lighting systems, security systems, and other devices.

System components

The HomeLink® wireless control system in your vehicle has 3 buttons which can be programmed to operate 3 different devices. Refer to the programming methods on the following pages to determine the method which is appropriate for the device.



A HomeLink® indicator light

B Garage door operation indicators

C HomeLink® icon

Illuminates while HomeLink® is operating.

D Buttons

■ Codes stored in the HomeLink® memory

● The registered codes are not erased even if the battery cable is disconnected.

● If learning failed when registering a different code to a HomeLink® button that already has a code registered to it, the already registered code will not be erased.

WARNING

■ When programming a garage door or other remote control device

The garage door or other device may operate, so ensure people and objects are out of danger to prevent potential harm.

■ Conforming to federal safety standards

Do not use the HomeLink® compatible transceiver with any garage door opener or device that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by federal safety standards.

This includes any garage door that cannot detect an interfering object. A door or device without these features increases the risk of death or serious injury.

■ When operating or programming HomeLink®

Never allow a child to operate or play with the HomeLink® buttons.

Programming the HomeLink®

■ Before programming HomeLink®

● During programming, it is possible that garage doors, gates, or other devices may operate. For this reason, make sure that people and objects are clear of the garage door or other devices to prevent injury or other potential harm.

● It is recommended that a new battery be placed in the remote control transmitter for more accurate programming.

● Garage door opener motors manufactured after 1995 may be equipped with rolling code protection. If this is the case, you may need a stepladder or other sturdy, safe device to reach the "Learn" or "Smart" button on the garage door opener motor.

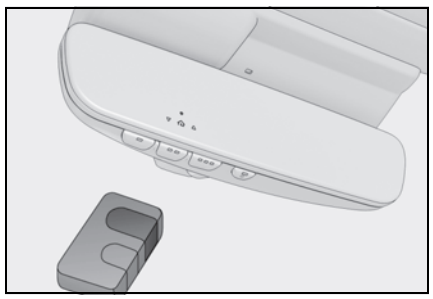
■ Programming HomeLink®

1 Press and release the HomeLink® button you want to program and check that the HomeLink® indicator light flashes (orange).

Perform **3** within 60 seconds of **1**, or the indicator light will stop flashing and programming will not be able to be completed.

2 Point the remote control transmitter for the device at the rear view mirror, 25 to 75 mm (1 to 3 in.) from the HomeLink® buttons.

Keep the HomeLink® indicator light in view while programming.

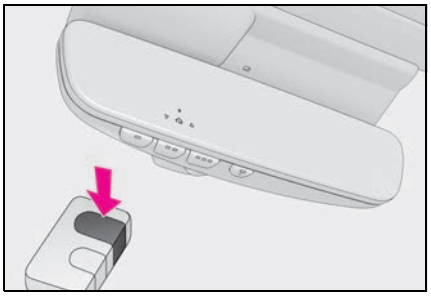


▶ Garage door type A

3 Press and hold the handheld transmitter button until the HomeLink®

5 Interior features

indicator light changes from slowly flashing orange to rapidly flashing green (rolling code) or continuously lit green (fixed code), then release the button.



▶ Programming an entry gate/Programming the HomeLink® (garage door type B)

3 Press and release the remote control transmitter button at 2 second intervals, repeatedly, until the HomeLink® indicator light changes from slowly flashing (orange) to rapidly flashing (green) (rolling code) or continuously lit (green) (fixed code).

4 Test the HomeLink® operation by pressing the newly programmed button and observing the indicator light:

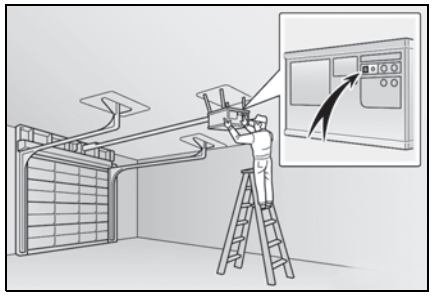
- Device with fixed code: If the indicator light is solid/continuous, programming has been completed and your garage door or other device should operate when the HomeLink® button is pressed and released.
- Device with rolling code: If the indicator light flashes rapidly, your garage door opener motor (or other device) is equipped with a rolling code. Complete the programming process by firmly pressing and holding the programmed HomeLink® button for 2 seconds and then release the button.
- If the garage door or other device does not operate, proceed to "Programming a rolling code system".

5 Repeat the steps above to program another device for any of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

■ **Programming a rolling code system**

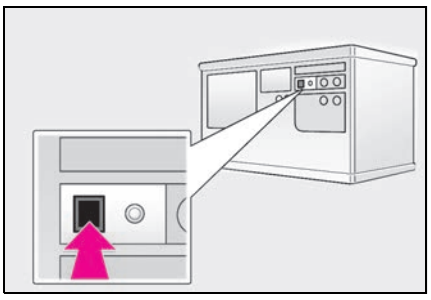
1 Locate the "Learn" or "Smart" button on the garage door opener motor in the garage.

This button can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the unit. The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer. Refer to the owner's manual supplied with the garage door opener motor for details.

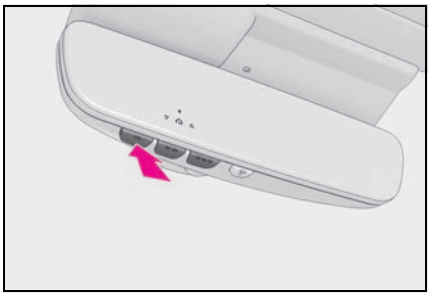


2 Press and release the "Learn" or "Smart" button.

Perform **3** within 30 seconds after performing **2**.



3 Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button (inside the vehicle) for 2 seconds and release it. Repeat this sequence (press/hold/release) up to 3 times to complete programming.
If the garage door opener motor operates when the HomeLink® button is pressed, the garage door opener motor recognizes the HomeLink® signal.



■ Enabling 2-way communication with a garage door (only available for compatible devices)

When enabled, 2-way communication allows you to check the status of the opening and closing of a garage door through indicators in your vehicle.

2-way communication is only available if the garage door opener motor used is a compatible device. (To check device compatibility, refer to www.homelink.com.)

1 Within 5 seconds after programming the garage door opener has been completed, if the garage door opener motor is trained to HomeLink®, both garage door operation indicators will flash rapidly (green) and the light on the garage door opener motor will blink twice, indicating that 2-way communication is enabled.

If the indicators do not flash, perform **2** and **3** within the first 10 presses of the HomeLink® button after programming has been completed.

2 Press a programmed HomeLink® button to operate a garage door.

3 Within 1 minute of pressing the HomeLink® button, after the garage door operation has stopped, press the “Learn” or “Smart” button on the garage door opener motor. Within 5 seconds of the establishment of 2-way communication with the garage door opener, both garage door operation indicators in the vehicle will flash rapidly (green) and the light on the garage door opener motor will blink twice, indicating that 2-way communication is enabled.

■ Reprogramming a single HomeLink® button

When the following procedure is performed, buttons which already have devices registered to them can be overwritten:

1 With one hand, press and hold the desired HomeLink® button.

2 When the HomeLink® indicator starts flashing (orange), continue to hold the HomeLink® button and perform "Programming HomeLink®" **1** (it takes 20 seconds for the HomeLink® indicator to start flashing).

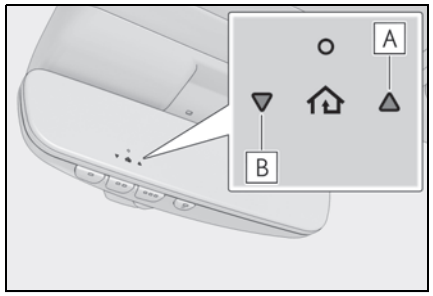
■ Before programming

- Install a new battery in the transmitter.
- The battery side of the transmitter must be pointed away from the HomeLink®.

Operating HomeLink®

Press the appropriate HomeLink® button. The HomeLink® indicator light should turn on.

The status of the opening and closing of a garage door is shown by the indicators.



A Opening

B Closing

This function is only available if the garage door opener motor used is a compatible device. (To check device compatibility, refer to www.homelink.com.)

Color	Status
Orange (flashing)	Currently opening/closing
Green	Opening/closinghas completed
Red (flashing)	Feedback signals cannot be received

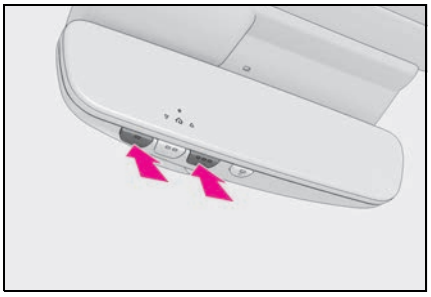
The indicators can operate within approximately 250 m (820 ft.) of the garage door. However, if there are obstructions between the garage door and the vehicle, such as houses and trees, feedback signals from the garage door may not be received.

To recall the previous door operation status, press and release either HomeLink® buttons  and  or  and  simultaneously. The last recorded status will be displayed for 3 seconds.

Erasing the entire HomeLink® memory (all three codes)

Press and hold the 2 outside buttons for 10 seconds until the HomeLink® indicator light changes from continuously lit (orange) to rapidly flashing (green).

If you sell your vehicle, be sure to erase the programs stored in the HomeLink® memory.



6-1. Maintenance and care
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 282
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 286
6-2. Matte paint care guide (if equipped)
Basic knowledge about matte clear coat 289
Washing your vehicle 294
Frequently Asked Questions 297
6-3. Maintenance
Maintenance requirements ... 301
Scheduled maintenance 303
6-4. Do-it-yourself maintenance
Do-it-yourself service precautions 313
Hood 315
Positioning a floor jack 316
Engine compartment 318
Tires 326
Tire inflation pressure 332
Wheels 333
Air conditioning filter 334
Electronic key battery 336
Checking and replacing fuses 338
Light bulbs 341

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform cleaning in a manner appropriate to each component and its material.

Matte paint care guide (body)

Unlike a vehicle with a normal clear coat, special care is necessary to protect the appearance of a vehicle with a matte clear coat. (→P.289, 294, 297)

Cleaning instructions

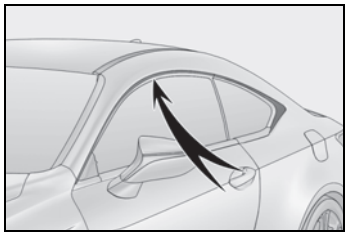
- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

■ **CFRP (Carbon Fiber Reinforced Plastic) part (if equipped)**

- As the CFRP parts may change color if they are exposed to ultraviolet rays for extended periods of time, Lexus recommends that your vehicle be stored in a place where it will not be exposed to direct sunlight.
- Do not use wax that contains abrasives.

■ **Black stainless steel window moldings**



The stainless steel window moldings are made of black oxide coated stainless steel.

When cleaning the vehicle, do not scrub the moldings with an abrasive cleaner as their finish may be damaged or the color may change.

■ **Self-restoring coat***

The vehicle body has a self-restoring coating that is resistant to small surface scratches caused in a car wash etc.

- The coating lasts for 5 to 8 years from when the vehicle is delivered from the plant.
- The restoration time differs depending on the depth of the scratch and outside temperature.

The restoration time may become shorter when the coating is warmed by applying warm water.

- Deep scratches caused by keys, coins, etc. cannot be restored.
- Do not use wax that contains abrasives.

*: CFRP parts (if equipped) do not have a self-restoring coat.

■ **Automatic car washes(vehicles without CFRP parts)**

- Fold the mirrors before washing the vehicle. Start washing from the front of the vehicle. Make sure to extend the mirrors before driving.
- Wash the vehicle with the active rear wing retracted. If the vehicle is washed with the active rear wing raised, depend-

ing on the type of automatic car wash, the brushes of the automatic car wash may become stuck on the active rear wing. In this case, the active rear wing may not be washed very well or may even be scratched or damaged.

- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle body and damage the paint.

■ **Automatic car washes(vehicles with CFRP parts)**

Do not use an automatic car wash as they may scratch the CFRP parts and damage their finish or damage the fixed rear wing.

■ **High pressure car washes**

As water may enter the cabin, do not bring the nozzle tip near the gaps around the doors or perimeter of the windows, or spray these areas continuously.

■ **When using a car wash**

If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:

- Place the key in a position 2 m (6 ft.) or more separate from the vehicle while the vehicle is being washed. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
- Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P.131)

■ **Aluminum wheels (vehicles without matte black painted wheels)**

- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent.
- Wash detergent off with water immediately after use.
- To protect the paint from damage, make sure to observe the following precautions.
  - Do not use acidic, alkaline or abrasive detergent
  - Do not use hard brushes
  - Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, such as after driving or parking in hot weather

■ **Aluminum wheels (vehicles with matte black painted wheels)**

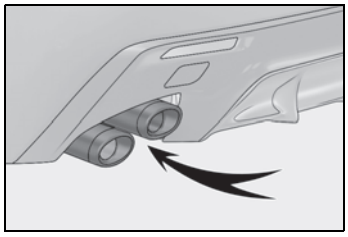
As matte black painted wheels require different cleaning methods than conventional aluminum wheels, be sure to observer the following. For details, consult your Lexus dealer.

- Remove dirt using water. If the wheels are excessively dirty, use a sponge or soft cloth dampened with a diluted neutral detergent to remove the dirt.
- When using detergent, make sure to rinse it off with water immediately. Then use a soft cloth to wipe off the water.
- To prevent the matte black paint from being damaged, make sure to observe the following precautions:
  - Do not scrub or polish the wheels using a brush or dry cloth.
  - Do not use any wheel coatings or abrasive detergents.
  - When using an automatic car wash, disable/do not select the wheel brush function(if such an option is available).
  - Do not use a high pressure pressure washer or steam cleaner.
  - Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, such as after driving or parking in hot weather.

■ **Diffuser (Vehicles with titanium mufflers)**

The cleaning method for the diffuser on vehicles with titanium mufflers differs from that for normal diffusers.

- When using detergent, make sure to rinse it off with water immediately. Then use a soft cloth to wipe off the water.
- To prevent the diffuser from being damaged, make sure to observe the following precautions:
  - Do not scrub or polish the diffuser using a brush or dry cloth.
  - Do not apply any ceramic coatings or use abrasive detergents.



■ **Brake caliper coating**

- When using detergent, use neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners, as they will damage the paint.
- Do not use detergent on the brake calipers when they are hot.
- Wash detergent off immediately after use.

■ **Bumpers**

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

■ **Side windows water-repellent coating**

- The following precautions can extend the effectiveness of the water-repellent coating.
  - Remove any dirt, etc. from the side windows regularly.
  - Do not allow dirt and dust to accumulate on the windows for a long period.

Clean the windows with a soft, damp cloth as soon as possible.

- Do not use wax or glass cleaners that contain abrasives when cleaning the windows.
- Do not use any metallic objects to remove condensation build up.

- When the water-repellent performance has become insufficient, the coating can be repaired. Contact your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

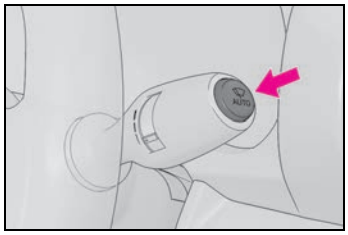
■ **When washing the vehicle**

Do not apply water to the inside of the engine compartment. Doing so may cause the electrical components, etc. to catch fire.

■ **When cleaning the windshield (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

Set the wipers to the intermittent windshield wipers. (→P.175)

If AUTO mode is selected, the wipers may operate unexpectedly in the following situations, and may result in hands being caught or other serious injuries and cause damage to the wiper blades.



- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

■ **Precautions regarding the exhaust pipes**

As exhaust gases cause the exhaust pipes to become quite hot, do not touch the exhaust pipes while the engine is running or immediately after the engine is turned off.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the exhaust pipes until they have cooled sufficiently, as touching hot exhaust pipes can cause burns.

WARNING

■ Precaution regarding the rear bumper with Blind Spot Monitor (if equipped)

If the paint of the rear bumper is chipped or scratched, the system may malfunction. If this occurs, consult your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ Application of coatings to the vehicle body (vehicles with CFRP parts)

Do not apply any kind of coating to the vehicle body as doing so may damage the paint or reduce its durability.

■ To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels etc.)

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
  - After driving near the sea coast
  - After driving on salted roads
  - If coal tar or tree sap is present on the paint surface
  - If dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings are present on the paint surface
  - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
  - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled with dust or mud
  - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.
- To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

■ Cleaning the exterior lights

- Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.
- Do not apply wax to the surfaces of the lights. Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

■ To prevent damage to the windshield wiper arms

When lifting the wiper arms away from the windshield, pull the driver side wiper arm upward first, and repeat for the passenger side. When returning the wipers to their original position, do so from the passenger side first.

■ When using an automatic car wash (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

Set the wipers to the intermittent windshield wipers. (→P.175)
If AUTO mode is selected, the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

■ When using a high pressure car wash

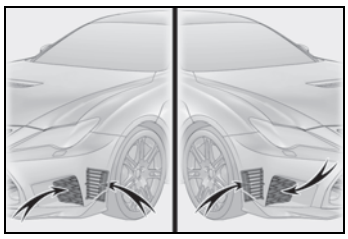
- When washing the vehicle, do not spray the camera or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device to not operate normally.
- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or resin manufactured cover), connectors or the following parts. The parts may be damaged if they come into contact with high-pressure water.
  - Traction related parts
  - Suspension parts
  - Steering parts
  - Brake parts

NOTICE

- Keep the cleaning nozzle at least 30 cm (11.9 in.) away from the vehicle body. Otherwise resin section, such as moldings and bumpers, may be deformed and damaged. Also, do not continuously hold the nozzle in the same place.
- Do not spray the lower part of the windshield continuously.

If water enters the air conditioning system intake located near the lower part of the windshield, the air conditioning system may not operate correctly.

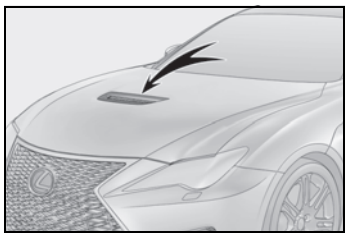
- Do not point the nozzle of a high pressure washer at the areas shown in the illustration, as high pressure water may damage the oil coolers.



Hood vent

When washing the vehicle, do not allow a large amount of water to enter the hood vent at once, such as when using a bucket, etc. or point the nozzle of a high pressure washer at the hood vent.

Water may get inside the engine compartment and affect the engine and other components.



Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

Perform cleaning in a manner appropriate to each component and its material.

Protecting the vehicle interior

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.
- If dirt cannot be removed, wipe it off with a soft cloth dampened with neutral detergent diluted to approximately 1%.

Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off remaining traces of detergent and water.

Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not use water. Wipe dirty surfaces and let them dry. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

Handling the seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

When cleaning the carpeted portions of the glove box, console box, etc.

If a strong adhesive tape is used, there is a possibility that the surface of the carpet could be damaged.

■ CFRP (Carbon Fiber Reinforced Plastic) parts (if equipped)

When cleaning, remove dirt using a soft moist cloth or synthetic chamois, and then wipe the surface with a soft dry cloth to remove any remaining moisture.

WARNING

■ Water in the vehicle

● Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle.

Doing so may cause electrical components, etc. to malfunction or catch fire.

● Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P.36)

An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ Cleaning detergents

● Do not use the following liquids, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces:

- Center Display: Organic substances such as benzine or gasoline, alkaline solutions, and alcohol
- Seats: Alkaline solutions, organic substances such as thinner or benzine, and alcohol
- Other parts: Organic substances such as benzine or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, and bleach

● Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

■ Preventing damage to leather surfaces

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces:

● Remove any dust or dirt from leather surfaces immediately.

● Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.

● Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or containing wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ Water on the floor

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.

Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components such as the audio system above or under the floor of the vehicle. Water may also cause the body to rust.

■ When cleaning the inside of the windshield (vehicles with Lexus Safety System +)

Do not allow glass cleaner to contact the lens. Also, do not touch the lens. (→P.185)

■ Cleaning the inside of the rear window

● Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.

NOTICE

- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe off any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.

- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture.
  Allow the leather to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

Cleaning the synthetic leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe it off with a soft cloth dampened with neutral detergent diluted to approximately 1%.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off remaining traces of detergent and water.

Cleaning the artificial leather (Alcantara®*) areas

- Brush the surfaces using a soft brush.

Do not brush hard as doing so may cause damage.

- Wipe the surfaces clean with a soft cloth that has been dampened in cold or lukewarm water and squeezed out.
- Allow the artificial leather (Alcantara®*) to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

*: Alcantara® is a registered trademark of Alcantara S.p.A.

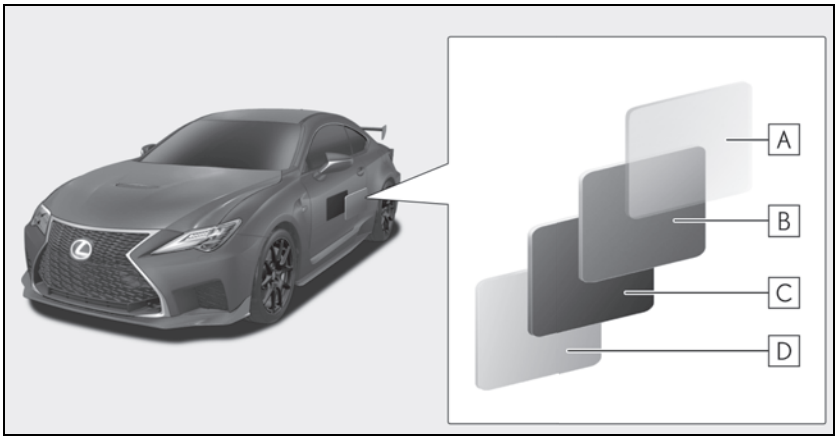
Basic knowledge about matte clear coat

The body of a vehicle is painted with layers of several different coatings to enhance its durability and appearance. The top layer is called a clear coat.

Unlike a normal clear coat, which enhances the glossy appearance of the base paint, matte clear coat gives the base paint a non-glossy finish with a unique texture.

In order to ensure the longevity of the matte clear coat and its texture, special care must be taken when cleaning and storing the vehicle.

Basic paint structure



Illustrations in this manual are simplified for explanation and may not represent the actual vehicle.

A Top coat (clear): A transparent coating which protects the lower layers of paint. Some clear coats enhance the appearance through improved color depth or gloss.

B Top coat (base): Paint which gives the vehicle body its color.

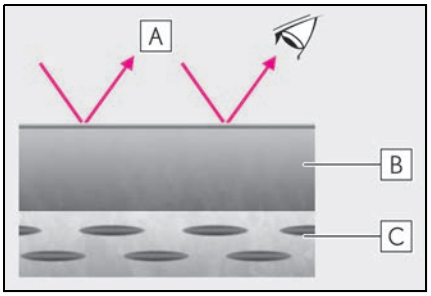
C Intermediate coat: Enhances the top coat finish and durability.

D Primer: Enhances the rust resistance of steel parts of the vehicle body. Primer is also applied to the inner side of vehicle body and structural components.

Difference between general clear coat and matte clear coat

▶ Normal clear coat

● Cross section



A Light

B Clear

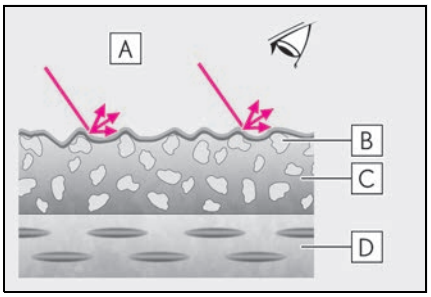
C Base

● Enlarged surface



▶ Matte clear coat

● Cross section



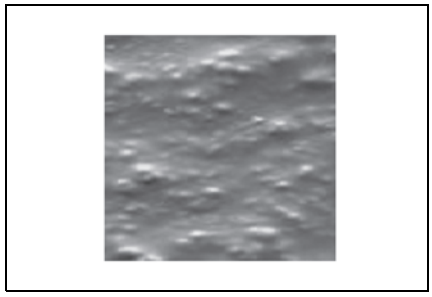
A Light

B Matting agent

C Clear

D Base

● Enlarged surface



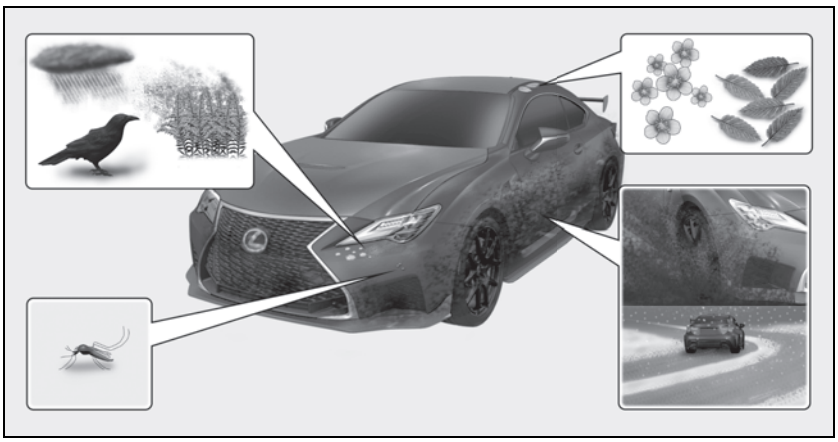
Illustrations in this manual are simplified for explanation and may not represent the actual vehicle.

Glossiness of a surface is seen by the human eyes by a difference in the amount of light that reflects off the surface.

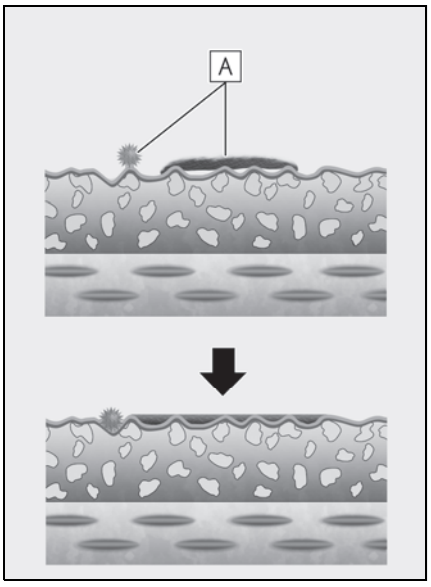
A surface painted with normal clear coat is flat and smooth. As the amount of light that reflects off the surface is large, the vehicle body will appear glossy.

A surface painted with a matte clear coat is slightly uneven due to the added matting agent. As the light shining on an uneven surface is diffused significantly, the amount of light reflected is small, making the vehicle body look not glossy, with a unique texture.

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior



If the painted surfaces of the vehicle are dirty, wash the vehicle immediately. (Washing your vehicle →P.294)



A Dirt

Due to the slight unevenness, matte clear coat surfaces are more likely to trap dirt and other foreign matter compared to normal clear coat surfaces.

If dirt or foreign matter is left on the vehicle, it may settle into the textured surface of the matte clear coat, making it more difficult to remove. Additionally, as the surface of the matte clear coat will become more flat when dirty, the vehicle body will start to look glossy, ruining the textured finish.

Therefore, make sure to clean the vehicle regularly and not allow dirt to remain on the vehicle for extended periods of time.

If dirt or foreign matter is allowed to settle and cannot be cleaned off with normal washing, it will be necessary to remove the dirt with the upper layer of the textured finish and then to repaint the entire part.

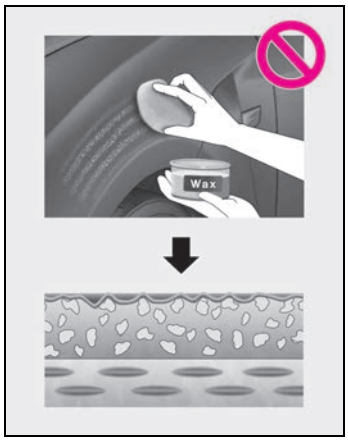
Ask your Lexus dealer for details.

■ Materials that may become difficult to remove

The following are likely to settle into the vehicle body and should be cleaned off immediately.

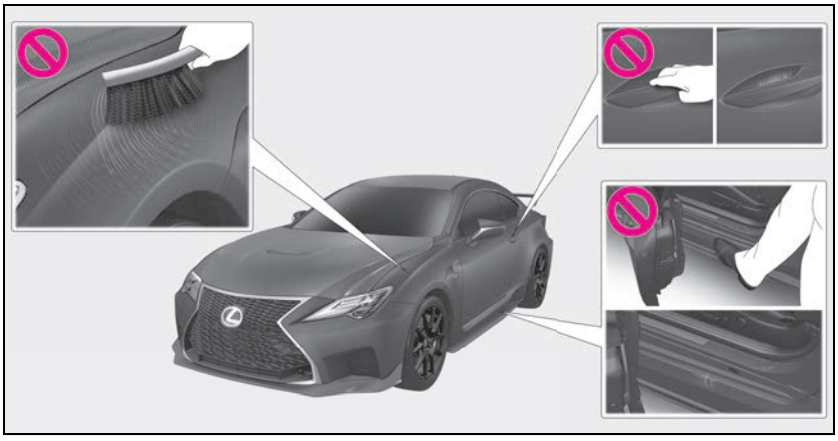
- Rain water, sea water, and other liquids that may cause water stains
- Sand, pollen, volcanic ash, and other particulate matter
- Dead insects, bird droppings, etc.
- Sap, leaves, flowers, etc.
- Mud, snow, anti-freezing agents, and other road debris
- Gasoline, engine oil, asphalt, and other oily materials

■ Do not wax or apply a coating to the vehicle



Do not wax the vehicle or apply a coating to the vehicle body, as they will form a film over the painted surfaces, filling the matte clear coat surface, making it more flat. As a result, it will become more glossy, possibly permanently losing its matte properties.

Repair of paint damage



Take care in order to not damage the painted surfaces.

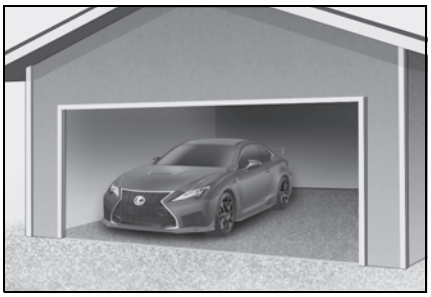
When minor damage occurs to a vehicle with a normal clear coat, it can be repaired by polishing it or using touch up paint. In contrast, a matte clear coat cannot be repaired using these methods.

If these methods are used the unevenness of the matte clear coat may be removed or filled in. In either case, the surface will become more flat, making it appear more glossy, possibly permanently losing its matte properties.

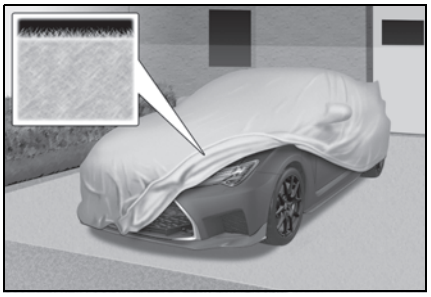
In order to maintain the matte finish when repairing damage, it will be necessary to repaint the entire part.

Daily vehicle storage

- Vehicle paint can be deteriorated by ultraviolet rays, rain, and other natural factors. In order to ensure the life of the paint, it is recommended that the vehicle be stored in a paved garage which blocks the paint from direct sunlight, rain, wind, and ground moisture.



- If a vehicle cover is to be used, use one with an inner side which is fleece, non-woven, etc. as it is less likely to damage the paint. Even when using a vehicle cover, storing the vehicle in a paved garage is recommended.



■ **Using a vehicle cover**

- Use an appropriately sized vehicle cover for your vehicle. For details, contact the manufacturer of the vehicle cover.
- Use a vehicle cover suitable for the environment the vehicle is to be stored. For details, contact the manufacturer of the vehicle cover.
- Proper use a vehicle cover depends on the weather and vehicle condition. If a vehicle cover is used improperly, it may damage the vehicle's paint or body. Follow the instructions included with the vehicle cover and use it properly.

Washing your vehicle

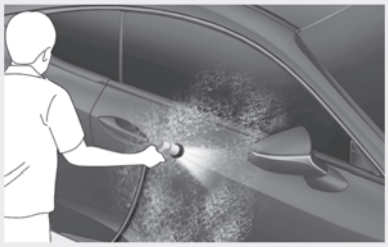
In order to avoid damage to the vehicle's paint, washing the vehicle by hand with only water is recommended.

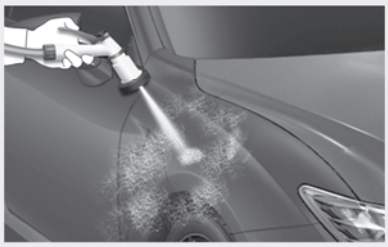
How to wash your vehicle

1 Apply a large amount of water to the vehicle body from the top to the bottom to remove sand and dust.

If the tires or chassis parts are excessively dirty, make sure to wash them first, otherwise dirt be sprayed onto the washed vehicle body.

If dirt is not easily washed off, bring the hose or sprayer nozzle closer to the vehicle body to slightly increase the water pressure.

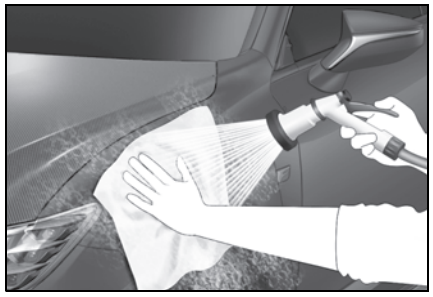




2 Using a soft chamois cloth, wipe the vehicle body gently while applying plenty of water.

Wipe the vehicle body from top to bottom.

If dirt persists (→P.294)



3 Using another soft chamois cloth, dry the vehicle while taking care to not rub the vehicle body.

Make sure to remove any standing water before it evaporates.

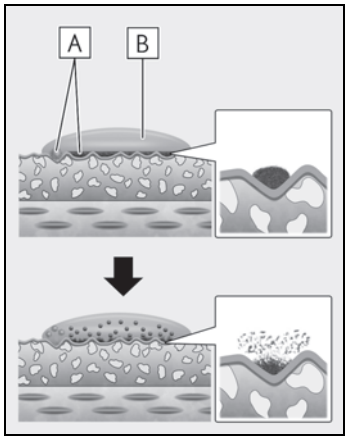
Do not use the same chamois cloth that was used to wash the vehicle (step **2**).



■ If dirt cannot be washed off with water alone

● Water stains

If liquid, such as rain water or tap water, evaporates on a painted surface, dirt or minerals in the liquid may be left behind. If not cleaned off, the contaminants may settle into the textured surface of the matte clear coat, making it difficult to clean off with water alone.



A Contaminant

B Citric acid

● In this case, to remove the contaminants, use dilute citric acid.

Dissolve citric acid powder in distilled water at the following ratio:

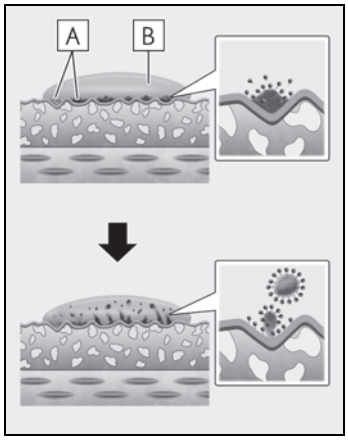
Citric acid powder: 5 to 10 g (0.01 to 0.02 lb.) (1 to 2 teaspoons)

Distilled water: 0.2 L (0.2 qt., 0.2 Imp. qt.)

Thoroughly soak a soft chamois cloth in the citric acid and place the chamois cloth over the dirty area. Wait for the contaminants to be dissolved by the acid. Then, gently wipe the area several times with the chamois cloth, taking care to not rub the vehicle body. After that, apply plenty of water to the area to wash off the contaminants and acid.

● Dead insects, bird droppings, and oil stains

If these materials are not cleaned off, contaminants, such as proteins and oil, may settle into the textured surface of the matte clear coat, making it difficult to clean off with water alone.



A Contaminant

B Neutral detergent

● Create a thick lather with the solution.

Thoroughly soak a soft chamois cloth in the neutral detergent solution, covering it in the lather, and place the chamois cloth over the dirty area. Wait for the contaminants to be dissolved by the solution. Then, gently wipe the area several times with the chamois cloth, taking care to not rub the vehicle body. After that, apply plenty of water to the area wash off the dirt and detergent solution.

NOTICE

■ **Avoiding damage to the painted surfaces**

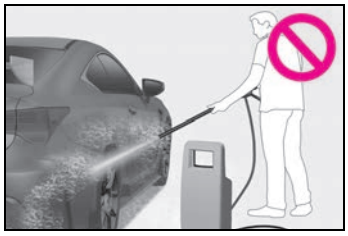
Observe the following precautions. Otherwise, the painted surfaces of your vehicle may be damaged and permanently lose their matte properties.

NOTICE

- Do not use an automatic car wash, including those which do not have brushes.



- When washing the vehicle, do not use a highpressure pressure washer.



- When washing the vehicle, do not use a brush or sponge.



- Do not use rubbing or polishing compounds (ex. scratch remover).
- Do not rub the vehicle body.
- When washing the vehicle, do not use alkaline (including weakly basic) detergents.
- Do not attach a stickers to or vinyl wrap the vehicle body.
- Before attaching a magnet (sign, etc.) to the vehicle body, make sure to wash and thoroughly dry the area of the vehicle body where the magnet is to be attached.

Frequently Asked Questions

The following are frequently asked questions about the matte clear coat and their answers:

Washing the vehicle

■ **General washing tips (→P.294)**

Question	Answer
Can the vehicle be washed?	Yes. The vehicle should be washed immediately if it is dirty.
Can the vehicle be washed frequently?	
What is the proper method for washing the vehicle?	The vehicle should be washed by hand, using only water and a chamois cloth.
Is there anything I should be careful about when washing the vehicle?	Make sure to start by rinsing the entire vehicle with plenty of water from top to bottom.
Can I wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash?	No
Can I use a high-pressure pressure washer to wash the vehicle?	

■ **If the vehicle body is dirty (→P.291)**

Question: What should I do if any of the following have attached to the vehicle?

Item	Answer
Leaves, flowers, branches, etc.	Remove immediately. They may scratch the matte clear coat and if they are allowed to remain on the vehicle, dirt may settle into the matte clear coat, making it more flat. As a result, it will become more glossy, possibly permanently losing its matte properties.
Dead insects, bird droppings, etc.	Remove immediately. They may scratch the matte clear coat and if they are allowed to remain on the vehicle, dirt may settle into the matte clear coat, making it more flat. As a result, it will become more glossy, possibly permanently losing its matte properties.
Sand, pollen, and other particulate matter	Wash off with water immediately. If the contaminants cannot be removed with water alone, use a neutral detergent solution. If the contaminants are allowed to remain on the vehicle, they may settle into the matte clear coat, making it more flat. As a result, it will become more glossy, possibly permanently losing its matte properties.
Oil stains	
Asphalt (tar)	
Water stains	Use dilute citric acid (citric acid powder dissolved in distilled water) to remove the water stains.
Water repellent glass coating	Remove immediately. Even if removed, depending on the contaminant, the matte clear coat may be damaged, possibly permanently losing its matte properties.
Glass treatment remover	
Tire cleaner	
Gasoline	
Oil	
Washer fluid	

■ Vehicle washing products (→P.294)

Question	Answer
Can I use car wash shampoo/soap?	Only use a neutral detergent which is approved for car wash use and water. Make sure to rinse the vehicle with plenty of water after using detergent. Do not use alkaline (including weakly basic) detergents, as they may damage the matte clear coat.
Can I use a general household neutral detergent?	Only use a neutral detergent which is approved for car wash use and water. Make sure to rinse the vehicle with plenty of water after using detergent.
What should I use to wipe off dirt?	Use a soft chamois cloth.
What should I use to dry the vehicle?	
Can I use a water stain remover?	Lexus does not recommend the use of water stain removers, as they may damage the matte clear coat. Do not use alkaline detergents or products containing abrasives.
Can the vehicle be waxed?	No. Do not wax the vehicle or apply a coating to the vehicle body, as they may cause the matte clear coat to lose its matte texture.
Can a coating be applied to the vehicle body?	
Can I use an iron remover?	No, as it may cause the matte clear coat to lose its matte texture
Can I use tar and pitch remover?	No, as they may damage the matte clear coat.
Can I use a matte paint cleaner/wax?	Lexus does not recommend the use of matte paint cleaners or waxes, as they may cause the matte clear coat to lose its matte texture.
Are there genuine Lexus vehicle washing products available for matte paint?	No. Use a soft chamois cloth for cleaning the vehicle body. Use a neutral detergent which is approved for car wash use or dilute citric acid when necessary.
Are there any vehicle washing product brands that Lexus recommends?	No. Use a soft chamois cloth for cleaning the vehicle body. Use a neutral detergent which is approved for car was use or dilute citric acid when necessary.

■ Body coatings

Question	Answer
Can a body coating available at a Lexus dealer be applied?	No, as it may cause the matte clear coat to lose its matte texture.
Can an aftermarket body coating be applied?	Lexus does not recommend applying a coating to the vehicle body, as it may cause the matte clear coat to lose its matte texture.
Can an aftermarket body coating designed for matte paint be applied?	Lexus does not recommend applying a coating to the vehicle body, as it may cause the matte clear coat to lose its matte texture.

■ Repairing the vehicle body (→P.292)

Question	Answer
Can damage to the paint be repaired?	In order to maintain the matte finish when repairing paint damage, it is necessary to repaint the entire part. Consult your Lexus dealer for details.
Can I use rubbing or polishing compound (ex. scratch remover)?	No. Using a rubbing or polishing compound or touch up paint may damage the matte clear coat. In order to maintain the matte finish when repairing paint damage, it is necessary to repaint the entire part. Consult your Lexus dealer for details.
Can I use touch up paint?	

■ Attaching accessories and other objects to the vehicle

Question	Answer
Can a sticker or vinyl wrap be attached to the vehicle body?	No. They may damage matte clear coat when they are installed and may cause the matte clear coat to lose its matte texture when they are removed.
Can a magnet be attached to the vehicle body?	Yes. Make sure to wash and thoroughly dry the area around where the magnet is to be attached before attaching it.

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance are essential. Lexus recommends the maintenance below.

WARNING

■ If your vehicle is not properly maintained

Improper maintenance could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible death or serious injury.

■ Handling of the battery

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P.321)

Scheduled maintenance

- Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

The interval for scheduled maintenance is determined by the odometer reading or the time interval, whichever comes first, shown in the schedule.

Maintenance beyond the last period should be performed at the same intervals.

- Where to go for maintenance service?

It makes good sense to take your vehicle to your local Lexus dealer for maintenance service as well as other inspections and repairs.

Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists receiving the latest service information through technical bulletins, service tips and in-dealership training programs. They learn to work on Lexus before they work on your vehicle, rather than while they are working on it. Doesn't that seem like the best way?

Your Lexus dealer has invested a lot of money in special Lexus tools and service equipment. It helps them to do the job better and at less cost.

Your Lexus dealer's service department will perform all of the scheduled maintenance on your vehicle reliably and economically.

Rubber hoses (for cooling and heater system, brake system and fuel system) should be inspected by a qualified technician according to the Lexus maintenance schedule.

Rubber hoses are particularly important maintenance items. Have any deteriorated or damaged hoses replaced immediately. Note that rubber hoses will deteriorate with age, resulting in swelling, chafing or cracking.

■ Resetting the message indicating maintenance is required (for Korea only)

After the required maintenance is preformed according to the maintenance schedule, please reset the message.

To reset the message, follow the procedures described below:

1. Select on the multi-information display. (→P.112)
2. Press the or meter control switch on the steering wheel to select "Vehicle Settings" then "Scheduled Maintenance". (To confirm setting, press .)
3. Select "Yes" and then press .

4 A message will be displayed on the multi-information display when the reset procedure has been completed.

Do-it-yourself maintenance

What about do-it-yourself maintenance?

Many of the maintenance items are easy to do yourself if you have a little mechanical ability and a few basic automotive tools. Simple instructions for how to perform them are presented in this section.

Note, however, that some maintenance tasks require special tools and skills. These are best performed by qualified technicians. Even if you are an experienced do-it-yourself mechanic, we recommend that repairs and maintenance be conducted by your Lexus dealer who will keep a record of maintenance on your vehicle. This record could be helpful should you ever require Warranty Service.

■ Does your vehicle need repairs?

Be on the alert for changes in performance and sounds, and visual tip-offs that indicate service is needed. Some important clues are:

- Engine missing, stumbling or pinging
- Appreciable loss of power
- Strange engine noises
- A fluid leak under the vehicle (However, water dripping from the air conditioning system after use is normal.)
- Change in exhaust sound (This may indicate a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. Drive with the windows open and have the exhaust system checked immediately.)
- Flat-looking tires, excessive tire squeal when cornering, uneven tire wear
- Vehicle pulls to one side when driven straight on a level road
- Strange noises related to suspension movement
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling brake pedal, pedal almost touches the floor, vehicle pulls to one side when braking
- Engine coolant temperature continually higher than normal (→P.96)

If you notice any of these clues, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. Your vehicle may need adjustment or repair.

Scheduled maintenance

Perform maintenance by the schedule as follows:

Maintenance schedule requirements

Your vehicle needs to be serviced according to the normal maintenance schedule. (See "Maintenance schedule".)

If you mainly operate your vehicle under one or more of the special operating conditions below, some of the maintenance schedule items need to be serviced more frequently in order to keep your vehicle in good condition. (See "Additional maintenance schedule".)

A. Road Condition 1. Operating on rough or muddy roads, or roads with melted snow. 2. Operating on dusty roads. (Roads in areas where their pavement rate is low, or a cloud of dust often arises and the air is dry.)	B. Driving Condition 1. Heavily loaded vehicle. (For example, using a car top carrier and so forth.) 2. Repeated short trips less than 8 km (5 miles) and outside temperatures remain below freezing. (Engine temperature will not reach to normal temperature.) 3. Extensive idling and/or low speed driving for a long distance such as police, professional/private use like taxi or door-to-door delivery use. 4. Continuous high speed driving (80% or more of maximum vehicle speed) for over 2 hours.

Maintenance schedule (except for South Africa)

Maintenance operations:

I = Inspect, correct or replace as necessary

R = Replace, change or lubricate

SERVICE INTERVAL:		ODOMETER READING								MONTHS
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)		x1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	
		x1000 miles	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	
BASIC ENGINE COMPONENTS											
1	Valve clearance									I	96
2	Drive belts			I		I		I		I	24
3	Engine oil		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	12
4	Engine oil filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	12
5	Cooling and heater system <<See note 1.>>					I				I	24
6	Engine coolant <<See note 2.>>					I				I	-
7	Engine oil cooler hoses and connections <<See note 1.>>					I				I	24
8	Exhaust pipes and mountings			I		I		I		I	12
IGNITION SYSTEM											
9	Spark plugs		Replace at every 100000 km (60000 miles)								
10	Battery		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	12
FUEL AND EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS											
11	Fuel filter <<See note 3.>>									R	96
12	Fuel injection system (except for Taiwan) <<See note 4 and 5.>>		Add injector cleaner to the fuel tank every 10000 km (6000 miles).								
13	Air cleaner filter			I		R		I		R	I:24 R:48
14	Fuel tank cap, fuel lines, connections and fuel vapor control valve <<See note 1.>>					I				I	24
15	Charcoal canister (except for Korea)					I				I	24
CHASSIS AND BODY											
16	Brake pedal and parking brake		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6

SERVICE INTERVAL:		ODOMETER READING									MONTHS
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)		x1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	
		x1000 miles	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	
17	Brake linings and drums (Include parking brake linings and drums)			I		I		I		I	12
18	Brake pads and discs		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
19	Brake fluid		I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R	I:6 R:24
20	Brake pipes and hoses			I		I		I		I	12
21	Steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box			I		I		I		I	12
22	Drive shaft boots			I		I		I		I	24
23	Suspension ball joints and dust covers			I		I		I		I	12
24	Automatic transmission fluid					I				I	24
25	Rear differential oil			I		R		I		R	I: 12 R: 48
26	Front and rear suspension			I		I		I		I	12
27	Tires and inflation pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
28	Lights, horns, wipers and washers		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
29	Air conditioner filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	12
30	Refrigerant amount for air conditioner			I		I		I		I	12

NOTE:

1. After 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months inspection, inspect at every 20000 km (12000 miles) or 12 months.

2. First replace at 160000 km (100000 miles), then replace at every 80000 km (50000 miles).

3. Including the filter in fuel tank.

4. Toyota genuine fuel injector cleaner or equivalent.

5. For Costa Rica, Dominican Republic, Guatemala, Panama, Peru, Bahrain, Saudi Arabia, Philippines, and Macau only.

Additional maintenance schedule (except for South Africa)

Refer to the following table for normal maintenance schedule items requiring more frequent service specific to the type of severe conditions. (For outline, see "Maintenance schedule requirements".)

A-1: Operating on rough or muddy roads, or roads with melted snow.	
• Inspection* of brake linings and drums (Include parking brake linings and drums)	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
• Inspection* of brake pipes and hoses	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of suspension ball joints and dust covers	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of drive shaft boots	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 12 months
• Inspection* of steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
• Inspection* of front and rear suspension	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note.>>	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months

A-2: Operating on dusty roads. (Roads in areas where their pavement rate is low, or a cloud of dust often arises and the air is dry.)	
• Replacement of engine oil	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* or replacement of air cleaner filter	I: Every 2500 km (1500 miles) or 3 months R: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 48 months
• Inspection* of brake linings and drums (Include parking brake linings and drums)	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months

B-1: Heavily loaded vehicle. (For example, using a car top carrier and so forth.)	
• Replacement of engine oil	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of brake linings and drums (Include parking brake linings and drums)	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
• Inspection* or replacement of automatic transmission fluid	I: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 24 months R: Every 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months
• Inspection* of front and rear suspension	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note.>>	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months

B-2: Repeated short trips less than 8 km (5 miles) and outside temperatures remain below freezing. (Engine temperature will not reach to normal temperature.)	
• Replacement of engine oil	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months

B-3: Extensive idling and/or low speed driving for a long distance such as police, professional/ private use like taxi or door-to-door delivery use.	
• Replacement of engine oil	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of brake linings and drums (Include parking brake linings and drums)	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
• Inspection* or replacement of automatic transmission fluid	I: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 24 months R: Every 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months

B-4: Continuous high speed driving (80% or more of maximum vehicle speed) for over 2 hours.	
• Inspection* or replacement of automatic transmission fluid	I: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 24 months R: Every 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months

NOTE:

For seat mounting bolts, front and rear suspension member retaining bolts.

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

Maintenance schedule (for South Africa)

Maintenance operations:

I = Inspect, correct or replace as necessary

R = Replace, change or lubricate

SERVICE INTERVAL:		ODOMETER READING						
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)		x1000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	MONTHS
		x1000 miles	9	18	27	36	45	54	
BASIC ENGINE COMPONENTS									
1	Valve clearance							I	72
2	Drive belts		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
3	Engine oil		R	R	R	R	R	R	12
4	Engine oil filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	12
5	Cooling and heater system			I		I		I	24
6	Engine coolant <<See notes 1.>>			I		I		I	-
7	Engine oil cooler hoses and connections			I		I		I	24
8	Exhaust pipes and mountings		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
IGNITION SYSTEM									
9	Spark plugs <<See note 2.>>							R	-
10	Battery		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
FUEL AND EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS									

SERVICE INTERVAL:		ODOMETER READING							MONTHS
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)		x1000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	
		x1000 miles	9	18	27	36	45	54	
11	Fuel filter <<See note 3.>>						R		96
12	Air cleaner filter		I	I	I	R	I	I	I: 24 R: 48
13	Fuel tank cap, fuel lines, connections and fuel vapor control valve			I		I		I	24
14	Charcoal canister				I			I	24
CHASSIS AND BODY									
15	Brake pedal and parking brake			I		I		I	24
16	Brake linings and drums (Include parking brake linings and drums)			I		I		I	24
17	Brake pads and discs		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
18	Brake fluid		I	R	I	R	I	R	I: 12 R: 24
19	Brake pipes and hoses		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
20	Steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
21	Drive shaft boots		I	I	I	I	I	I	24
22	Suspension ball joints and dust covers		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
23	Automatic transmission fluid				I			I	36
24	Rear differential oil		I	R	I	R	I	R	I: 12 R: 48
25	Front and rear suspension		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
26	Tires and inflation pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
27	Lights, horns, wipers and washers		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
28	Air conditioner filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	12
29	Refrigerant amount for air conditioner		I	I	I	I	I	I	12

NOTE:

1. First replace at 160000 km (100000 miles), then replace at every 80000 km

(50000 miles).

2. It is possible to replace at every 100000 km (60000 miles).

3. Including the filter in fuel tank.

Additional maintenance schedule (for South Africa)

Refer to the following table for normal maintenance schedule items requiring more frequent service specific to the type of severe conditions. (For outline, see "Maintenance schedule requirements".)

A-1: Operating on rough or muddy roads, or roads with melted snow.	
• Inspection* of brake linings and drums (Include parking brake linings and drums)	Every 15000 km (9000 miles) or 12 months
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of brake pipes and hoses	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of suspension ball joints and dust covers	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of drive shaft boots	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 12 months
• Inspection* of steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of front and rear suspension	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note.>>	Every 15000 km (9000 miles) or 12 months

A-2: Operating on dusty roads. (Roads in areas where their pavement rate is low, or a cloud of dust often arises and the air is dry.)	
• Replacement of engine oil	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* or replacement of air cleaner filter	I: Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 12 months R: Every 60000 km (36000 miles) or 48 months
• Inspection* of brake linings and drums (Include parking brake linings and drums)	Every 15000 km (9000 miles) or 12 months

A-2: Operating on dusty roads. (Roads in areas where their pavement rate is low, or a cloud of dust often arises and the air is dry.)	
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of air conditioner filter	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 12months

B-1: Heavily loaded vehicle. (For example, using a car top carrier and so forth.)	
• Replacement of engine oil	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of brake linings and drums (Include parking brake linings and drums)	Every 15000 km (9000 miles) or 12 months
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* or replacement of automatic transmission fluid	I: Every 45000 km (27000 miles) or 36 months R: Every 90000 km (54000 miles) or 72 months
• Inspection* of front and rear suspension	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note.>>	Every 15000 km (9000 miles) or 12 months

B-2: Repeated short trips less than 8 km (5 miles) and outside temperatures remain below freezing. (Engine temperature will not reach to normal temperature.)	
• Replacement of engine oil	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months

B-3: Extensive idling and/or low speed driving for a long distance such as police, professional/ private use like taxi or door-to-door delivery use.	
• Replacement of engine oil	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of brake linings and drums (Include parking brake linings and drums)	Every 15000 km (9000 miles) or 12 months

B-3: Extensive idling and/or low speed driving for a long distance such as police, professional/ private use like taxi or door-to-door delivery use.	
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* or replacement of automatic transmission fluid	I: Every 45000 km (27000 miles) or 36 months R: Every 90000 km (54000 miles) or 72 months

B-4: Continuous high speed driving (80% or more of maximum vehicle speed) for over 2 hours.	
• Inspection* or replacement of automatic transmission fluid	I: Every 45000 km (27000 miles) or 36 months R: Every 90000 km (54000 miles) or 72 months

NOTE:

For seat mounting bolts, front and rear suspension member retaining bolts.

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance by yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure as given in these sections.

Maintenance

Items	Parts and tools
Battery condition (→P.321)	• Warm water • Baking soda • Grease • Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts) • Distilled water
Engine coolant level(→P.320)	• "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding coolant)
Engine oil level (→P.318)	• "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding engine oil)
Fuses (→P.338)	• Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Light bulbs (→P.341)	• Bulb with same number and wattage rating as original • Phillips-head screwdriver • Flathead screwdriver • Wrench
Radiator and condenser (→P.321)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P.332)	• Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P.324)	• Water or washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use) • Funnel (used only for adding water or washer fluid)

WARNING

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions.

WARNING

■ When working on the engine compartment

- Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the moving fans and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper and rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the battery. Fuel and battery fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.
- Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces. If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately.

If you still experience discomfort, consult a doctor.

■ When working near the electric cooling fans or radiator grille

Be sure the engine switch is off.

With the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode, the electric cooling fans may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P.321)

■ Safety glasses

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in your eyes.

NOTICE

■ If you remove the air cleaner filter

Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air.

■ If the fluid level is low or high

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.

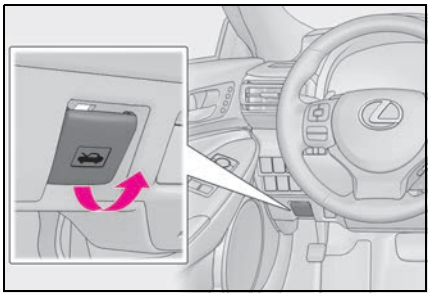
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

Hood

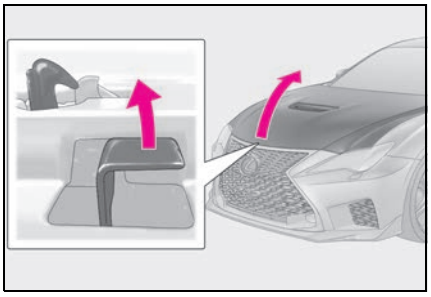
Opening the hood

1 Pull the hood lock release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.



2 Pull up the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.



WARNING

■ Pre-driving check

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.

If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

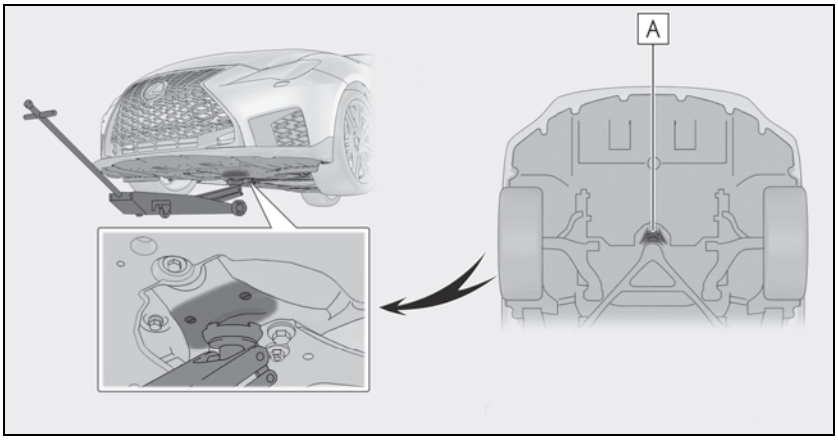
Positioning a floor jack

When using a floor jack, follow the instructions in the manual provided with the jack and perform the operation safely.

When raising your vehicle with a floor jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

Location of the jack point

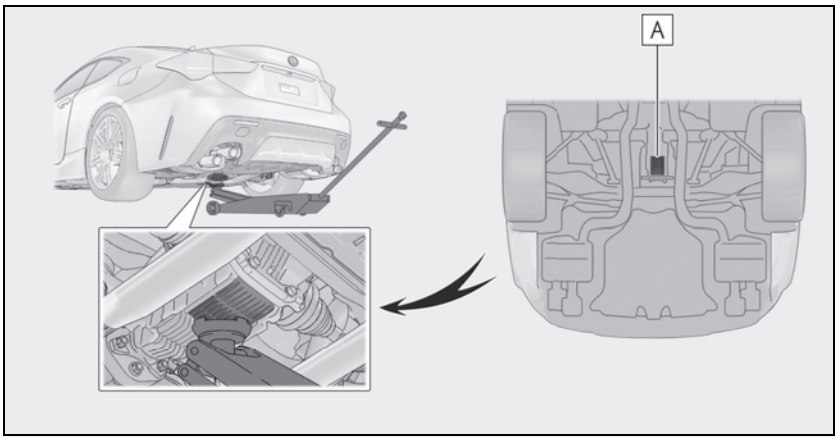
■ Front



A Jack point

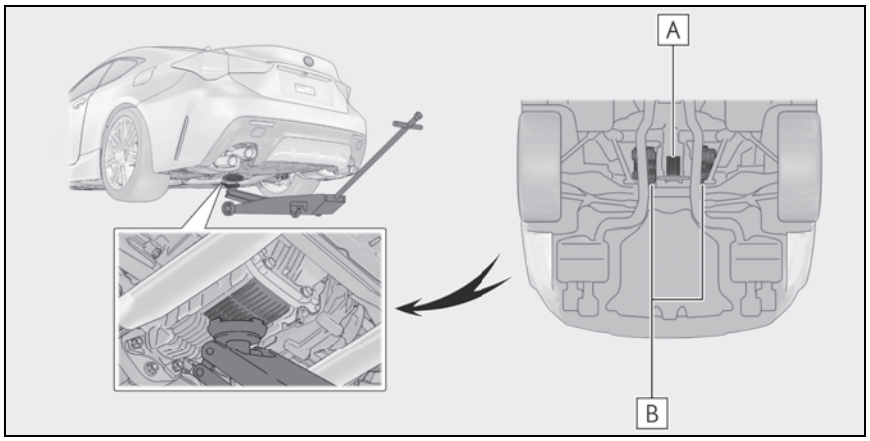
■ Rear

▶ Vehicles with LSD (Limited Slip Differential)



A Jack point

▶ Vehicles with TVD (Torque Vectoring Differential)



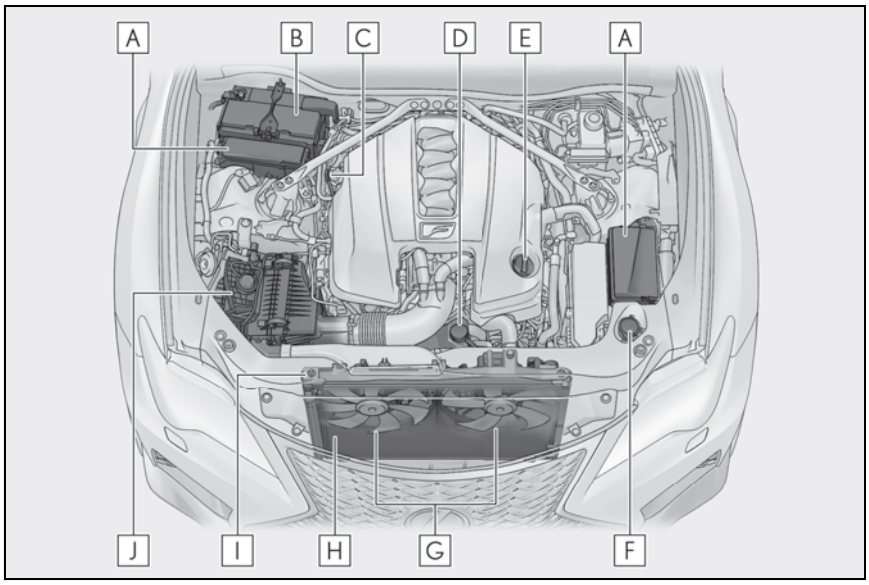
A Jack point

B Torque transfer modules*

*: Do not place the floor jack under either torque transfer module.

Engine compartment

Components



A Fuse boxes (→P.338)

B Battery (→P.321)

C Engine oil level dipstick (→P.318)

D Engine coolant reservoir (→P.320)

E Engine oil filler cap (→P.318)

F Washer fluid tank (→P.324)

G Electric cooling fans

H Condenser (→P.321)

I Radiator (→P.321)

J Air cleaner (→P.324)

For right-hand drive vehicles:

The battery and the fuse box in front of the battery are located on the opposite side of the engine compartment.

Checking and adding the engine oil

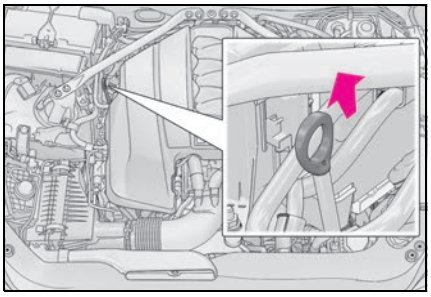
With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level

on the dipstick.

■ **Checking the engine oil**

1 Park the vehicle on level ground. After warming up the engine and turning it off, wait more than 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

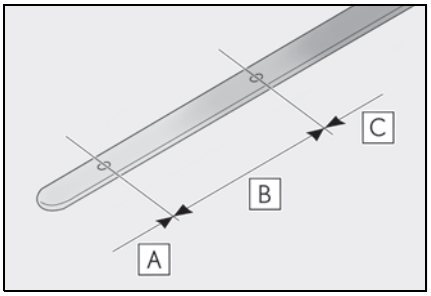
2 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out.



3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.



A Low

B Normal

C Excessive

The shape of the dipstick may differ depending on the type of vehicle or engine.

6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.

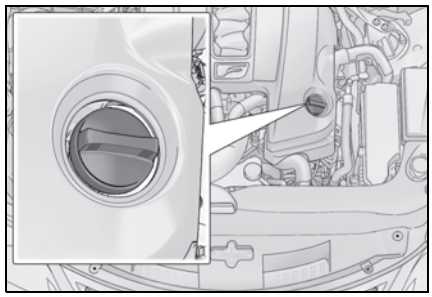
■ **Checking the oil type and preparing the item needed**

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

- Engine oil selection
  →P.396
- Oil quantity (Low → Full)
  1.5 L (1.6 qt., 1.3 Imp. qt.)
- Item
  Clean funnel

■ **Adding engine oil**

If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as that already in the engine.



1 Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.

2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

3 Install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

■ **Engine oil consumption**

A certain amount of engine oil will be consumed while driving. In the following situations, oil consumption may increase, and

engine oil may need to be refilled in between oil maintenance intervals.

- When the engine is new, for example directly after purchasing the vehicle or after replacing the engine
- If low quality oil or oil of an inappropriate viscosity is used
- When driving at high engine speeds or with a heavy load, or when driving while accelerating or decelerating frequently
- When leaving the engine idling for a long time, or when driving frequently through heavy traffic

WARNING

■ Used engine oil

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation and skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

NOTICE

■ To prevent serious engine damage

Check the oil level on a regular basis.

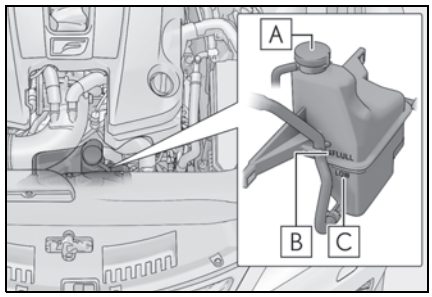
■ When replacing the engine oil

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

Checking the coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "FULL" and "LOW" lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.

■ Engine coolant reservoir



A Reservoir cap

B "FULL" line

C "LOW" line

If the level is on or below the "LOW" line, add coolant up to the "FULL" line. (→P.388)

■ Coolant selection

Only use "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

"Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -35°C [-31°F])

For more details about coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **If the coolant level drops within a short time of replenishing**

Visually check the radiator, hoses, engine coolant reservoir caps, drain cock and water pump.

If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

WARNING

■ **When the engine is hot**

Do not remove the engine coolant reservoir cap. (→P.389)

The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

NOTICE

■ **When adding coolant**

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ **If you spill coolant**

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it from damaging parts or paint.

Checking the radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser and clear away any foreign objects.

If either of the above parts is extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ **When the engine is hot**

Do not touch the radiator or condenser as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

Battery

Check the battery as follows.

■ Caution symbols

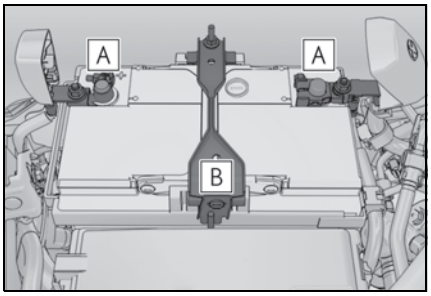
The meaning of each caution symbol on the top of the battery are as follows:

	No smoking, no naked flames, no sparks
	Battery acid
	Shield eyes
	Note operating instructions
	Keep away from children
	Explosive gas

■ Battery exterior

Make sure that the battery terminals

are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.

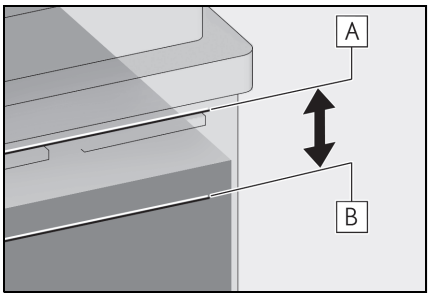


A Terminals

B Hold-down clamp

■ **Checking battery fluid**

Check that the level is between the "UPPER LEVEL" and "LOWER LEVEL" lines.



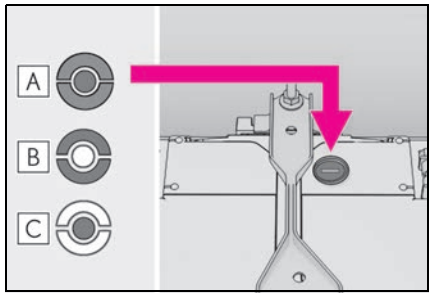
A "UPPER LEVEL" line

B "LOWER LEVEL" line

If the fluid level is at or below the "LOWER LEVEL" line, add distilled water.

■ **Checking battery condition (vehicles with the battery indicator)**

Check the battery condition by indicator color.



A Blue: Good condition

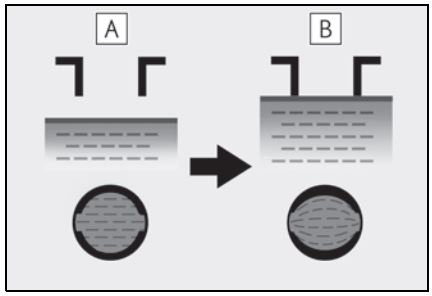
B Red: Not working properly. Have the battery checked by your Lexus dealer.

C White: Charging is necessary. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Adding distilled water**

1 Remove the vent plug.

2 Add distilled water.



A Low

B O.K.

If the "UPPER LEVEL" line cannot be seen, check the fluid level by looking directly at the cell.

3 Put the vent plug back on and close it securely.

■ **Before recharging**

When recharging, the battery produces

hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

■ **After recharging/reconnecting the battery**

The engine may not start. Follow the procedure below to initialize the system.

1. Shift the shift lever to P.
2. Open and close either door.
3. Restart the engine.

- Unlocking the doors using the smart entry & start system may not be possible immediately after reconnecting the battery. If this happens, use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock/unlock the doors.
- Start the engine with the engine switch in ACCESSORY mode. The engine may not start with the engine switch turned off. However, the engine will operate normally from the second attempt.
- The engine switch mode is recorded by the vehicle. If the battery is disconnected and reconnected, the vehicle will return the engine switch mode to the status it was in before the battery was disconnected. Make sure to turn off the engine before disconnecting the battery. Take extra care when connecting the battery if the engine switch mode prior to the battery being disconnected is unknown.

If the system will not start even after multiple attempts, contact your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ **Chemicals in the battery**

Batteries contain poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

■ **Where to safely charge the battery**

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is insufficient ventilation.

■ **Emergency measures regarding electrolyte**

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes

Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.

- If electrolyte gets on your skin

Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.

WARNING

● If electrolyte gets on your clothes

It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.

● If you accidentally swallow electrolyte

Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

NOTICE

■ **When recharging the battery**

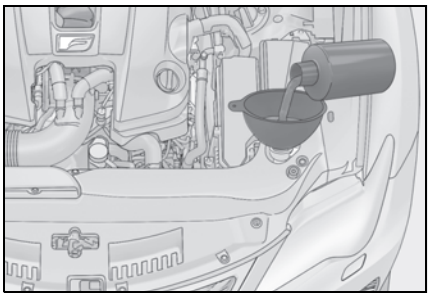
Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

■ **When adding distilled water**

Avoid overfilling. Water spilled during battery recharging may cause corrosion.

Adding the washer fluid

If any washer does not work or the warning message appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.



WARNING

■ **When adding washer fluid**

Do not add washer fluid when the engine is hot or running as washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine, etc.

NOTICE

■ **Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid**

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid.

Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces, as well as damaging the pump leading to problems of the washer fluid not spraying.

■ **Diluting washer fluid**

Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.

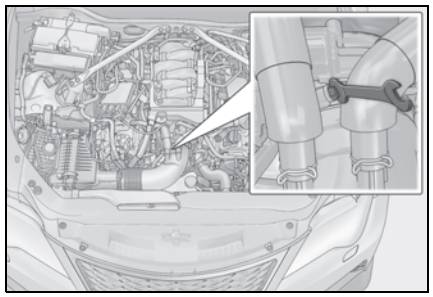
Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

Checking the air cleaner filter

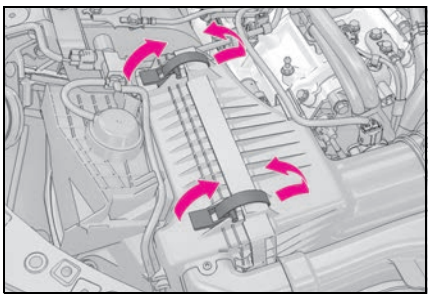
Check the air cleaner filter as follows:

1 Remove the engine cover. (→P.385)

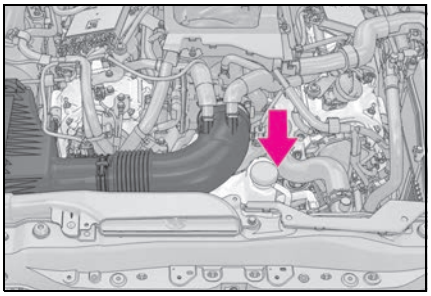
2 Loosen the clamp bolt.



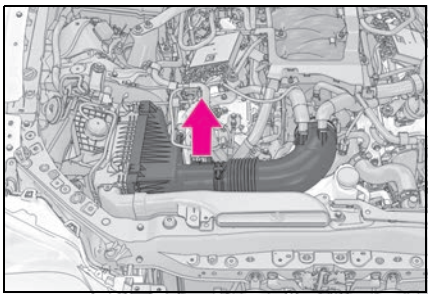
3 Release the clips.



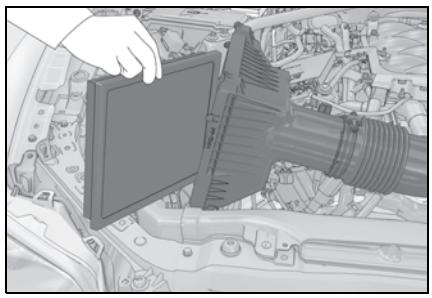
4 Remove the air cleaner hose.



5 Lift the air cleaner cover upwardly together with the air cleaner hose.



6 Take out the air cleaner filter.



Inspect the outer surface of the filter, and replace the filter if it is extremely dirty. If the filter is only moderately dusty, use compressed air to blow dust out of the filter.

WARNING

■ To prevent inhaling dust

Wear a respirator when using compressed air to clean the air cleaner filter.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damaging the engine

- Do not drive with the air cleaner filter removed. Doing so causes excessive engine wear.
- When removing the air cleaner filter, do not hit or drop it, as it may contain dust, sand. etc.

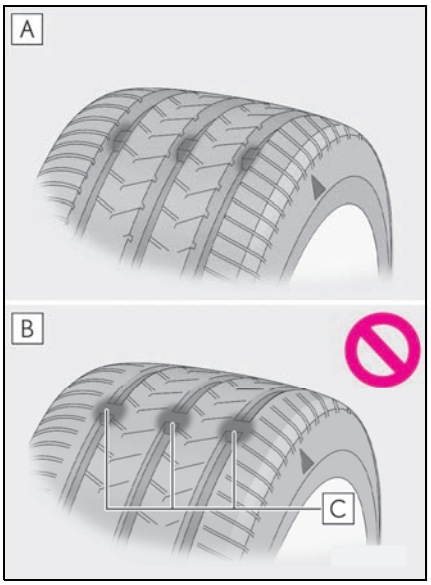
Tires

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

Checking tires

Check if the treadwear indicators are showing on the tires. Also check the tires for uneven wear, such as excessive wear on one side of the tread.

Check the spare tire condition and pressure if not rotated.



A New tread

B Worn tread

C Treadwear indicator

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by a "TWI" or " △ " mark, etc., molded into the sidewall of each tire.

Replace the tires if the treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.

■ When to replace your vehicle's tires

Tires should be replaced if:

- The treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.
- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, and bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage

If you are not sure, consult your Lexus dealer.

■ Tire life

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if it has seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

■ Low profile tires

Generally, low profile tires will wear more rapidly and tire grip performance will be reduced on snowy and/or icy roads when compared to standard tires. Be sure to use snow tires or tire chains on snowy and/or icy roads and drive carefully at a speed appropriate for road and weather conditions.

■ If the tread on snow tires wears down below 4 mm (0.16 in.)

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost.

⚠ WARNING

■ When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.
Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drivetrain as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

WARNING

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns.
  Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Do not mix summer, all season and snow tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.
  Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.
- Vehicles with a spare tire: Do not tow if your vehicle has a spare tire installed.
- Vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit: Do not tow anything if a tire that has been repaired using the emergency tire puncture repair kit is installed. The load on the tire may cause unexpected damage to the tire.

NOTICE

■ Low profile tires

Low profile tires may cause greater damage than usual to the tire wheel when sustaining impact from the road surface. Therefore, pay attention to the following:

- Be sure to use proper tire inflation pressure. If tires are under-inflated, they may be damaged more severely.
- Avoid potholes, uneven pavement, curbs and other road hazards. Failure to do so may lead to severe tire and wheel damage.

■ If tire inflation pressure of each tire becomes low while driving

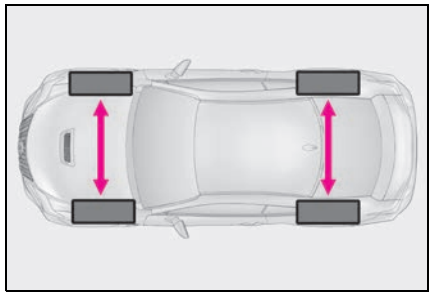
Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

■ Driving on rough roads

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes. These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition, driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

Tire rotation

Rotate the tires in the order shown.



To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Lexus recommends that tire rotation is carried out approximately every 10000 km (6000 miles).

Do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning system after tire rotation.

■ When rotating the tires (vehicles with the tire inflation pressure display function)

Make sure that the engine switch is off. If the tires are rotated while the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the tire position information will not be updated.
If this accidentally occurs, either turn the engine switch to off and then to IGNITION ON mode, or initialize the system after checking that the tire pressure is properly

adjusted.

Tire pressure warning system (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise.

▶ Vehicles without the tire inflation pressure display function

If the tire pressure drops below a predetermined level, the driver is warned by a warning light. (→P.357)

▶ Vehicles with the tire inflation pressure display function

● If the tire pressure drops below a predetermined level, the driver is warned by a screen display and a warning light. (→P.357)

● The tire pressure detected by the tire pressure warning system can be displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.104)

The illustration used is intended as an example, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed on the multi-information display.



■ Routine tire inflation pressure checks

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

■ Situations in which the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

● In the following cases, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.
- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used.
- A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not an OE (Original Equipment) tire.
- A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not of the specified size.
- Tire chains, etc. are equipped.
- An auxiliary-supported run-flat tire is equipped.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, particularly around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If the tire inflation pressure is extremely higher than the specified level.
- If tires not equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.

● Performance may be affected in the following situations.
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device

Vehicles with the tire inflation pressure display function: If tire position information is not correctly displayed due to the radio wave conditions, the display may be corrected by driving and changing the radio wave conditions.

- When the vehicle is parked, the time taken for the warning to start or go off could be extended.
- When tire inflation pressure declines rapidly for example when a tire has burst, the warning may not function.

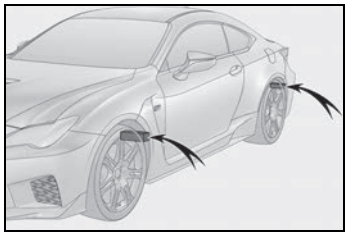
■ **Warning performance of the tire pressure warning system (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

The warning of the tire pressure warning system will change in accordance with the conditions under which it was initialized. For this reason, the system may give a warning even if the tire pressure does not reach a low enough level, or if the pressure is higher than the pressure that was adjusted to when the system was initialized.

WARNING

■ **Caution regarding interference with electronic devices (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system featuring a tire inflation pressure display function)**

- People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should not come within 450 mm (17.7 in.) of the tire pressure warning system initiators. The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.



- Users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters (if equipped)

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and the tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes registered by your Lexus dealer. (→P.331)

■ **Replacing tires and wheels (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

▶ Except for Chile

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 10 minutes, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute and stays on to indicate a system malfunction.

▶ For Chile

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light blinks

for 1 minute and stays on to indicate a system malfunction.

NOTICE

■ **Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- Make sure to install the tire valve caps. If the tire valve caps are not installed, water could enter the tire pressure warning valves and the tire pressure warning valves could be bound.
- When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

■ **To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. After use of liquid sealant, make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when repairing or replacing the tire. (→P.329)

Initializing the tire pressure warning system (if equipped)

■ **The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:**

- When rotating the tires.
- When the tire inflation pressure is changed such as when changing traveling speed.
- When changing the tire size.

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the benchmark pressure.

■ **How to initialize the tire pressure warning system**

1 Park the vehicle in a safe place and turn the engine switch off.

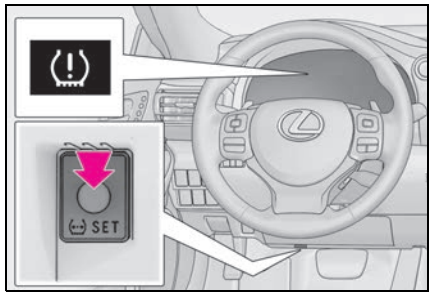
Initialization cannot be performed while the vehicle is moving.

2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level.

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

3 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

4 Press and hold the tire pressure warning reset switch until the tire pressure warning light blinks slowly 3 times.



5 Wait for a few minutes with the engine switch in IGNITION ON

mode and then turn the engine switch off.

■ **Initialization procedure**

- Make sure to carry out initialization after adjusting the tire inflation pressure. Also, make sure the tires are cold before carrying out initialization or tire inflation pressure adjustment.
- If you have accidentally turned the engine switch off during initialization, it is not necessary to press the reset switch again as initialization will restart automatically when the engine switch has been turned to IGNITION ON mode for the next time.
- If you accidentally press the reset switch when initialization is not necessary, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level when the tires are cold, and conduct initialization again.

■ **When initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

Initialization can be completed in a few minutes. However, in the following cases, the settings have not been recorded and the system will not operate properly. If repeated attempts to record tire inflation pressure settings are unsuccessful, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- When operating the tire pressure warning reset switch, the tire pressure warning light does not blink 3 times.
- After carrying out the initialization procedure, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute then stays on after driving for 20 minutes.

WARNING

■ **When initializing the tire pressure warning system (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

Do not operate the tire pressure warning reset switch without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code. Have the ID code registered by your Lexus dealer.

Tire inflation pressure

Make sure to maintain proper tire inflation pressure. Tire inflation pressure should be checked at least once per month. However, Lexus recommends that tire inflation pressure be checked once every two weeks.

■ Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel economy
- Reduced driving comfort and poor handling
- Reduced tire life due to wear
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drivetrain

If a tire needs frequent inflating, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.

If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has not been driven for more than 1.5 km or 1 mile, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.

- Always use a tire pressure gauge.

It is difficult to judge if a tire is properly inflated based only on its appearance.

- It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving as heat is generated in the tire. Do not reduce tire inflation pressure after driving.
- Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

WARNING

■ Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

Keep your tires properly inflated.

If the tires are not properly inflated, the following conditions may occur which could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Air leaking from between tire and wheel
- Wheel deformation and/or tire damage
- Greater possibility of tire damage while driving (due to road hazards, expansion joints, sharp edges on the road, etc.)

NOTICE

■ When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

Be sure to put the tire valve caps back on.

If a valve cap is not installed, dirt or moisture may get into the valve and cause an air leak, resulting in decreased tire inflation pressure.

Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause a loss of handling control.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width and inset*.

Replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

*: Conventionally referred to as offset.

Lexus does not recommend using the following:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

When replacing wheels (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

The wheels of your vehicle are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advance warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P.329)

WARNING

When replacing wheels

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in a loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

NOTICE

Replacing tires and wheels (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Lexus dealer.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle. Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1600 km (1000 miles).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Lexus genuine balance

weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

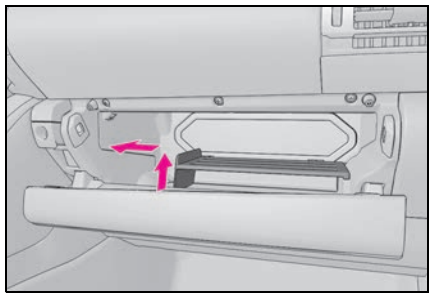
Air conditioning filter

The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

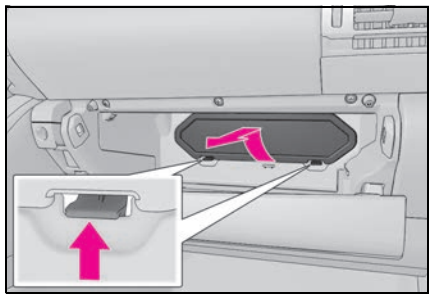
Removing the air conditioning filter

1 Turn the engine switch off.

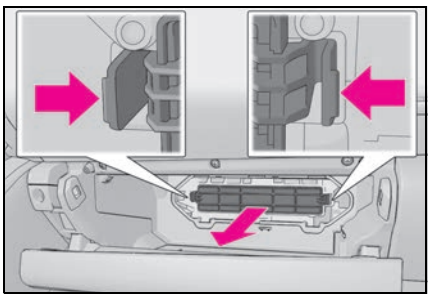
2 Open the glove box. Lift up the side with the stay, disconnect the stay tabs and remove the partition by pulling horizontally.



3 Press the tabs and remove the filter cover.

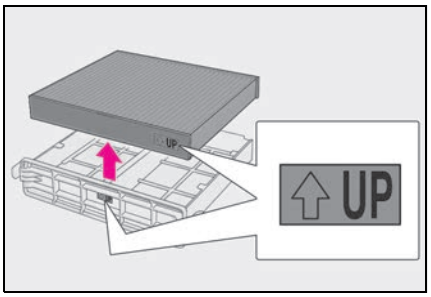


4 Press the tabs and remove the filter case.



5 Remove the air conditioning filter from the filter case and replace it with a new one.

The " ⇧ UP" marks shown on the filter and the filter case should be pointing up.



■ **Checking interval**

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required.

■ **If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically**

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

■ **Air conditioning filter with deodorizing function**

When fragrances are placed in your vehicle, the deodorizing effect may become significantly weakened in a short period.

When an air conditioning odor comes out continuously, replace the air conditioning filter.

NOTICE

■ **When using the air conditioning system**

Make sure that a filter is always installed. Using the air conditioning system without a filter may cause damage to the system.

Electronic key battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is depleted.
As the key may be damaged if the following procedure is not performed properly, it is recommended that key battery replacement be performed by your Lexus dealer.

If the electronic key battery is depleted

The following symptoms may occur:

- The smart entry & start system and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range will be reduced.

When the card key battery needs to be replaced (if equipped)

The battery for the card key is available only at Lexus dealers. Your Lexus dealer can replace the battery for you.

Items to prepare

- Flathead screwdriver
- Small flathead screwdriver
- Lithium battery CR2032

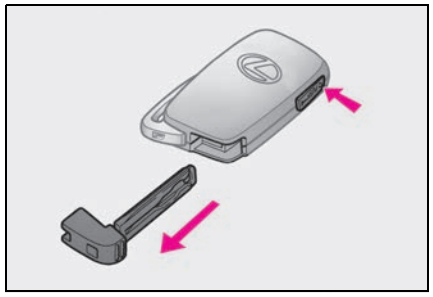
Use a CR2032 lithium battery

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, local electrical appliance shops or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to local laws.

Replacing the battery

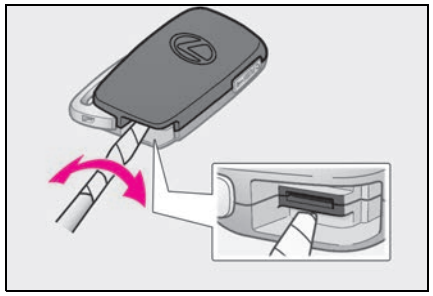
Type A

1 Take out the mechanical key.



2 Remove the cover.

To prevent damage to the key, wrap the tip of the screwdriver with tape.

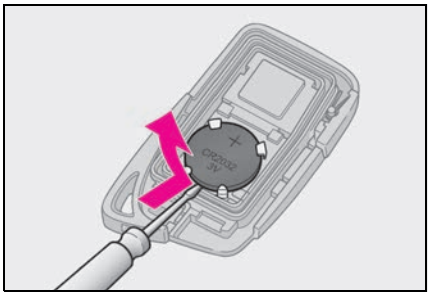


3 Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal

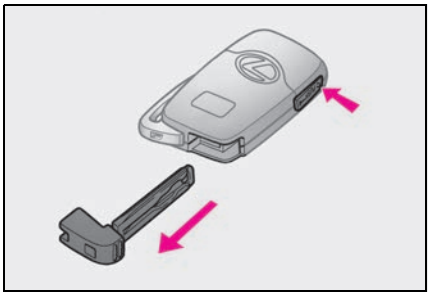
facing up.





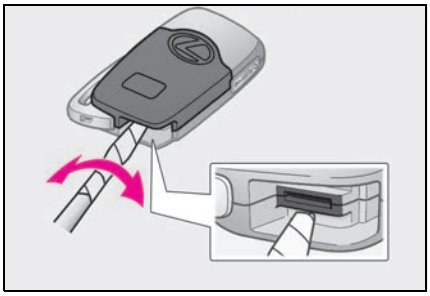
■ Type B

1 Take out the mechanical key.



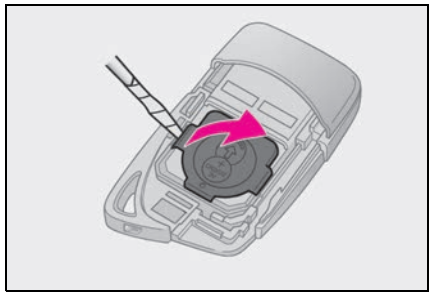
2 Remove the cover.

To prevent damage to the key, wrap the tip of the screwdriver with tape.



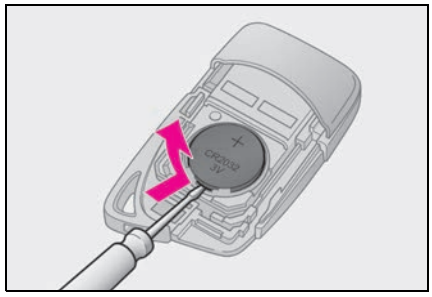
3 Remove the battery cover.

To prevent damage to the key, wrap the tip of the screwdriver with tape.



4 Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal facing up.



WARNING

■ Removed battery and other parts

These parts are small and if swallowed by a child, they can cause choking. Keep away from children. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ When replacing the battery

Use a flathead screwdriver of appropriate size. Applying excessive force may deform or damage the cover.

■ For normal operation after replacing the battery

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:

NOTICE

- Always work with dry hands. Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other component inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

Checking and replacing fuses

If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

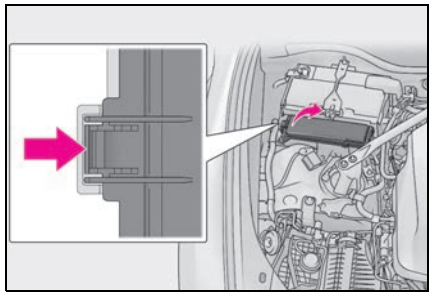
Checking and replacing fuses

1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Open the fuse box cover.

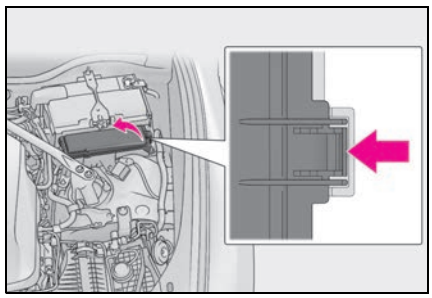
▶ Engine compartment: type A fuse box (Left-hand drive vehicles)

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.



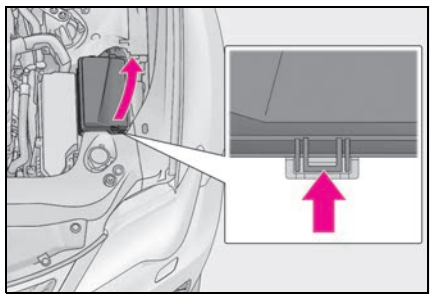
▶ Engine compartment: type A fuse box (Right-hand drive vehicles)

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.



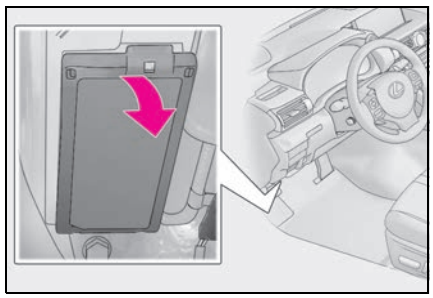
▶ Engine compartment: type B fuse box

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.



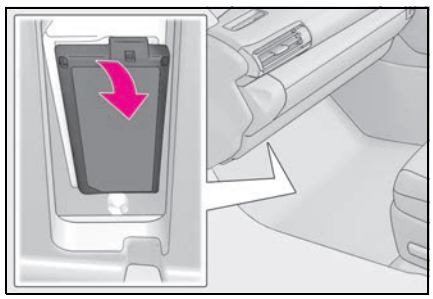
▶ Left side instrument panel (Left-hand drive vehicles)

Remove the lid.



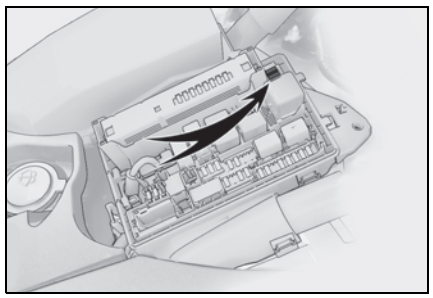
▶ Left side instrument panel (Right-hand drive vehicles)

Remove the lid.



3 Remove the fuse with the pullout tool.

Only type A fuses can be removed using the pullout tool.

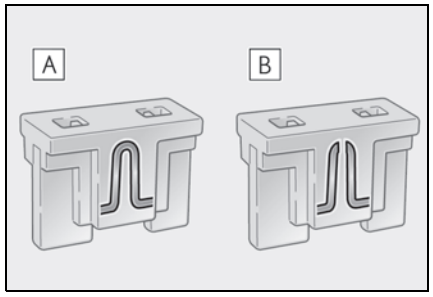


4 Check if the fuse is blown.

Type A and B:
Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

Type C and D:
Contact your Lexus dealer.

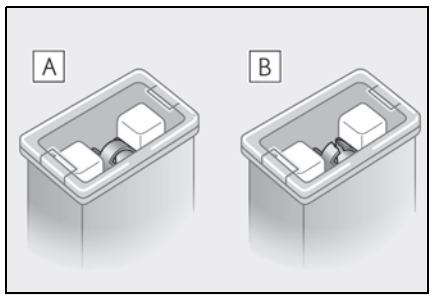
▶ Type A



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

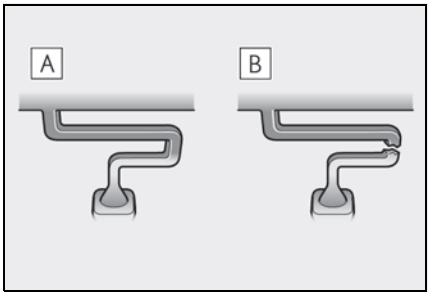
▶ Type B



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

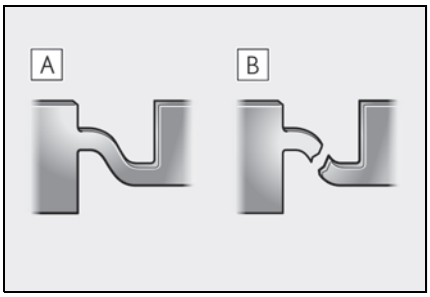
▶ Type C



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

▶ Type D



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

After a fuse is replaced

- When installing the lid, make sure that the tab is installed securely.
- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement.
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

If there is an overload in a circuit

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

When replacing light bulbs

Lexus recommends that you use genuine Lexus products designed for this vehicle. Because certain bulbs are connected to circuits designed to prevent overload, non-genuine parts or parts not designed for this vehicle may be unusable.

WARNING

To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than that indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
  Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
- Do not modify the fuses or fuse boxes.

NOTICE

Before replacing fuses

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Light bulbs

If any lights burn out, have it replaced by your Lexus dealer.

LED light bulbs

The lights consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced.

Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer for more information in the following situations:

- Large drops of water have built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

7-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 344

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency..... 344

If the vehicle is trapped in rising water..... 345

7-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle needs to be towed 347

If you think something is wrong 350

Fuel pump shut off system 351

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 352

If a warning message is displayed 359

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with a spare tire)..... 362

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit) 369

If the engine will not start 380

If you lose your keys..... 381

If the fuel filler door cannot be opened 382

If the electronic key does not operate properly 382

If the vehicle battery is discharged 385

If your vehicle overheats 388

If the vehicle becomes stuck 390

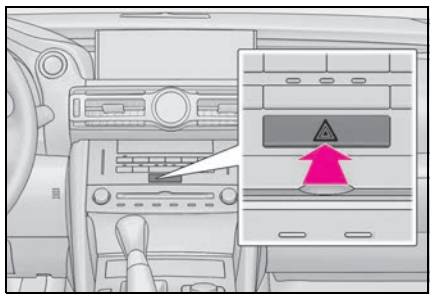
Emergency flashers

The emergency flashers are used to warn other drivers when the vehicle has to be stopped on the road due to a breakdown, etc.

Operating instructions

Press the switch to flash all of the turn signal lights.

To turn them off, press the switch once again.



■ Emergency flashers

If the emergency flashers are used for a long time while the engine is not operating, the battery may discharge.

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

Stopping the vehicle

1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

2 Shift the shift lever to N.

▶ If the shift lever is shifted to N

3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

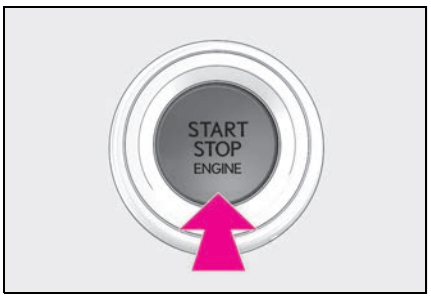
4 Stop the engine.

▶ If the shift lever cannot be shifted to N

3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.

4 To stop the engine, press and hold the engine switch for 2 consecutive

seconds or more, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession.



5 Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

WARNING

■ If the engine has to be turned off while driving

Power assist for the brakes and steering wheel will be lost, making the brake pedal harder to depress and the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine.

If the vehicle is trapped in rising water

In the event the vehicle is submerged in water, remain calm and perform the following.

- Remove the seat belt first.
- If the door can be opened, open the door and exit the vehicle.
- If the door can not be opened, open the window using the power window switch and exit the vehicle through the window.
- If the window can not be opened using the power window switch, remain calm, wait until the water level inside the vehicle rises to the point that the water pressure inside of the vehicle equals the water pressure outside of the vehicle, and then open the door and exit the vehicle.

WARNING

■ Using an emergency hammer* for emergency escape

The front side windows and rear window of this vehicle can be shattered by an emergency hammer* used for emergency escape. However, an emergency hammer* can not shatter the windshield as it is laminated glass.

*: Contact your Lexus dealer or aftermarket accessory manufacturerfor further information about an emergency hammer.

WARNING

■ Escaping the vehicle from the window

There are cases where escaping the vehicle from the window is not possible due to seating position, passenger body type, etc.
When using an emergency hammer, consider your seat location and the size of the window opening to ensure that the opening is accessible and large enough to escape.

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Lexus dealer or commercial towing service, using a wheel-lift type truck or flatbed truck.

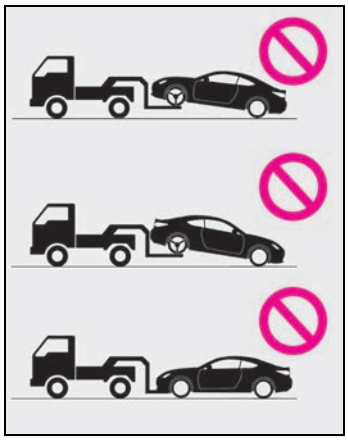
Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When towing the vehicle

Be sure to transport the vehicle with all four wheels raised off the ground. If the vehicle is towed with the tires contacting the ground, the drivetrain and related parts may be damaged or an accident may occur due to a change in direction of the vehicle.



■ While towing

- When towing using cables or chains, avoid sudden starts, etc. which place excessive stress on the towing eyelets, cables or chains. The towing eyelets, cables or chains may become damaged, broken debris may hit people, and cause serious damage.
- Do not turn the engine switch off. There is a possibility that the steering wheel is locked and cannot be operated.

■ Installing towing eyelets to the vehicle

Make sure that towing eyelets are installed securely.
If not securely installed, towing eyelets may come loose during towing.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing using a wheel-lift type truck

- Do not tow the vehicle from the rear when the engine switch is off. The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheels straight.
- When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

■ To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck, either from the front or rear.

■ To prevent damage to the vehicle during emergency towing

Do not secure cables or chains to the suspension components.

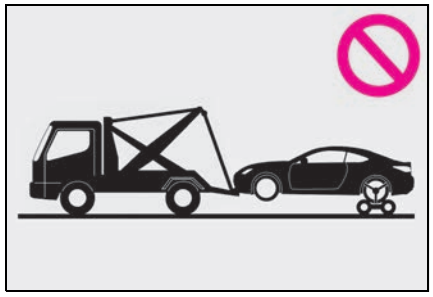
Situations when it is necessary to contact dealers before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Lexus dealer or commercial towing service before towing.

- The engine is running but the vehicle does not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

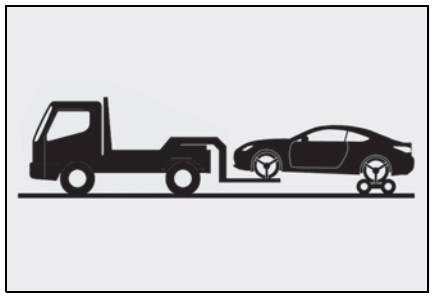
Towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.



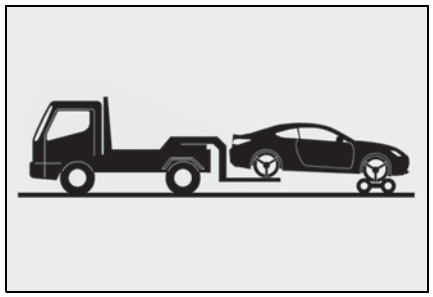
Towing with a wheel-lift type truck

▶ From the front



Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

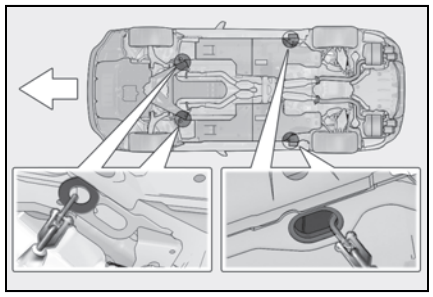
▶ From the rear



Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

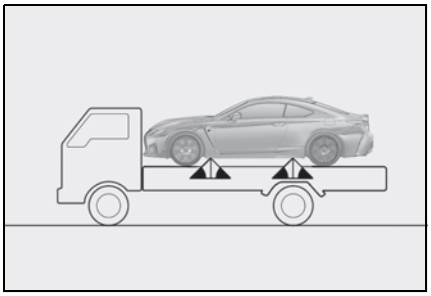
Using a flatbed truck

If your vehicle is transported by a flatbed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.



Emergency towing

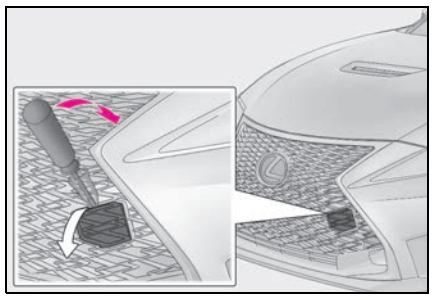
If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using cables or chains secured to the emergency towing eyelets. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for at most 80 km (50 miles) at under 30 km/h (18 mph). A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

Emergency towing procedure

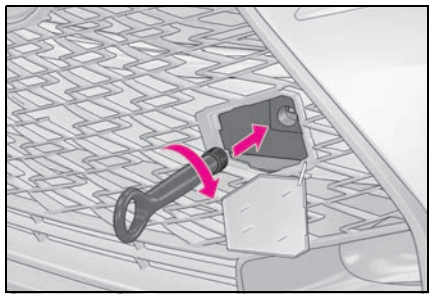
1 Take out the towing eyelet. (→P.363, 370)

2 Remove the eyelet cover using a flathead screwdriver.

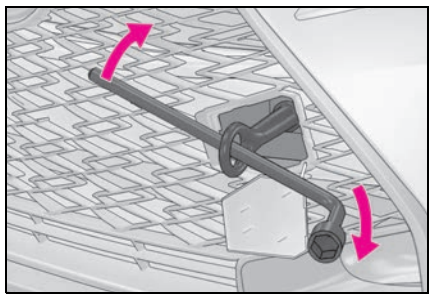
To protect the bodywork, place a rag between the screwdriver and the vehicle body as shown in the illustration.



3 Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.



4 Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a wheel nut wrench or hard metal bar.



5 Securely attach cables or chains to the towing eyelet.
Take care not to damage the vehicle body.

6 Enter the vehicle being towed and start the engine.
If the engine does not start, turn the

engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

7 Shift the shift lever to N and release the parking brake.
When the shift lever cannot be shifted: →P.164

■ While towing

If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

■ Wheel nut wrench

Wheel nut wrench is installed in trunk. (→P.363, 370)

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle. (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge continually points higher than normal.

Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running roughly
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side

when braking

- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

Fuel pump shut off system

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or when an airbag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops the supply of fuel to the engine.

Restarting the engine

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

1 Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode or turn it off.

2 Restart the engine.

NOTICE

■ Before starting the engine

Inspect the ground under the vehicle. If you find that fuel has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights comes on or flashes. If a light comes on or flashes, but then goes off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system. However, if this continues to occur, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Actions to the warning lights or warning buzzers

■ Brake system warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that: ● The brake fluid level is low; or ● The brake system is malfunctioning → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.**

■ High coolant temperature warning light* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that the engine coolant temperature is too high → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place.** **Handling method (→P.388)**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ Charging system warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.**

■ Low engine oil pressure warning light* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ Malfunction indicator lamp

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The emission control system (on some models); ● The electronic engine control system; ● The electronic throttle control system; or ● The electronic automatic transmission control system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ SRS warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The SRS airbag system; or ● The seat belt pretensioner system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ ABS warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The ABS; or ● The brake assist system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Brake Override System warning light/Drive-Start Control warning light* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	When a buzzer sounds: ● Brake Override System is malfunctioning; ● Drive-Start Control is operating; or ● Drive-Start Control is malfunctioning → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display.** When a buzzer does not sound: Brake Override System is operating → **Release the accelerator pedal and depress the brake pedal.**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ Parking brake warning light (warning buzzer*)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that the parking brake is engaged → **Release the parking brake.**

*: A buzzer will sound if the vehicle is driven with the parking brake engaged.

■ Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ LDA (Lane Departure Alert) indicator (if equipped)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (orange)	If the LDA indicator is illuminated: Indicates a malfunction in the LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) system. → **Check the warning message displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.202)** If the LDA indicator flashes: Indicates that the vehicle has deviated from the lane (while the LDA [Lane Departure Alert with steering control] system is operating) → **Check the area around the vehicle and return the vehicle to between the lane lines.**

■ PCS warning light (if equipped)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (flashes or illuminates)	Indicates a malfunction in the PCS (Pre-Collision System) or that the system is temporarily unavailable due to the vehicle being extremely hot/cold, or dirt around a front sensor, etc. → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.195, 361)** If the PCS (Pre-Collision System) or VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) system is disabled, the PCS warning light will illuminate. → **P.196**

■ Slip indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) system; ● The TRC (Traction Control) system; or ● The hill-start assist control system The light will flash when the VSC or the TRC system is operating. → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Automatic headlight leveling system warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in the automatic headlight leveling system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Open door warning light (warning buzzer)*

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that a door or the trunk is not fully closed → **Check that both side doors and the trunk are closed.**

*: Open door warning buzzer: →P.125

■ Low fuel level warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that remaining fuel is approximately 10 L (2.6 gal., 2.2 Imp. gal.) or less → **Refuel the vehicle.**

■ Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*1

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Warns the driver and/or front passenger to fasten their seat belts → **Fasten the seat belt.** **If the front passenger's seat is occupied, the front passenger's seat belt also needs to be fastened to make the warning light (warning buzzer) turn off.**

*1: Driver's and front passenger's seat belt warning buzzer:

▶ GCC countries*2, Jordan and Lebanon

The driver's seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the driver that his or her seat belt is not fastened. Once the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the buzzer sounds for 6 seconds. If the vehicle reaches a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph), the buzzer sounds once. If the seat belt is still unfastened after 24 seconds, the buzzer will sound intermittently for 6 seconds. Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 90 more seconds.

The front passenger's seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds once if the vehicle reaches a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph). If the seat belt is still unfastened after 24 seconds, the buzzer will sound intermittently for 6 seconds. Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 90 more seconds.

▶ Except for GCC countries*2, Jordan and Lebanon

The driver's and front passenger's seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the driver and front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds for 30 seconds after the vehicle reaches a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 90 more seconds.

*2: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar and Kuwait

■ **Rear passengers' seat belt reminder lights (warning buzzer)* (if equipped)**

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Warns the rear passengers to fasten their seat belts → **Fasten the seat belt.**

*: Rear passengers' seat belt warning buzzer:
The rear passengers' seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the rear passengers that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds for 30 seconds after the vehicle reaches a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 90 more seconds.

■ **Master warning light (warning buzzer)**

Warning light	Details/Actions
	A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on and flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction. → P.359

■ Tire pressure warning light (if equipped)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure such as ● Natural causes (→P.358) ● Flat tire (→P.369, P.362) → **Except for Chile: Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. The light will turn off after a few minutes. If the warning light does not turn off after a few minutes, perform initialization (→P.330). If the light does not turn off after performing initialization, have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.** → **For Chile: Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. The light will turn off after a few minutes. In case the light does not turn off even if the tire inflation pressure is adjusted, have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.** When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system → **Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.**

■ **Warning buzzer**

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard due to being in a noisy location or audio sound.

■ **Front passenger detection sensor, seat belt reminder and warning buzzer**

● If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash and the warning buzzer to sound even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.

● If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ **If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving (for Korea)**

First check the following:

● Is the fuel tank empty?
If it is, fill the fuel tank immediately.

● Is the fuel tank cap loose?
If it is, tighten it securely.

The light will go off after several driving trips.

If the light does not go off even after several trips, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving (except for Korea)**

For some models, the malfunction indicator lamp will come on if the fuel tank becomes completely empty. If the fuel tank is empty, refuel the vehicle immediately. The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after several trips.

If the malfunction indicator lamp does not go off, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)**

When the battery charge becomes insufficient or the voltage temporarily drops, the electric power steering system warning light may come on and the warning buzzer may sound.

■ **When the tire pressure warning light comes on (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

▶ Except for Chile

Carry out the following procedure after the tire temperature has lowered sufficiently.

- Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level.
- If the warning light does not go out even after several minutes, check that the tire inflation pressure is at the specified level and carry out initialization.

The warning light may come on again if the above operations are conducted without first allowing the tire temperature to lower sufficiently.

▶ For Chile

Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level. Pushing the tire pressure warning reset switch will not turn off the tire pressure warning light.

■ **The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks and tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

■ **When a tire is replaced with a spare tire (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

The spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. If a tire goes flat, the tire pressure warning light will not turn off even though the flat tire has been replaced with the spare tire.

■ **Conditions that the tire pressure warning system may not function properly (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

→P.328

■ **If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ WARNING

■ **If both the ABS and the brake system warning lights remain on**

Stop your vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact your Lexus dealer. The vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking, and the ABS system may fail, which could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **When the electric power steering system warning light comes on**

The steering wheel may become extremely heavy.
When steering wheel operations are heavier than usual, grip the steering wheel firmly and operate it using more force than usual.

■ **If the tire pressure warning light comes on (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause a loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

▶ Vehicles with a spare tire

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If a tire is flat, change it with the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest Lexus dealer.

WARNING

- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

▶ Vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If a tire is flat, repair the flat tire by using emergency tire puncture repair kit.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

■ If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

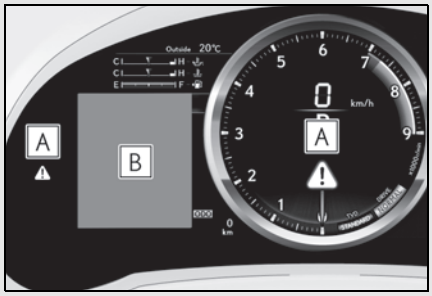
NOTICE

■ To ensure the tire pressure warning system operates properly (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

Do not install tires with different specifications or makers, as the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

If a warning message is displayed

The multi-information display shows warnings of system malfunctions, incorrectly performed operations, and messages that indicate a need for maintenance. When a message is shown, perform the correction procedure appropriate to the message.



A Master warning light

The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

B Multi-information display

Follow the instructions of the message on the multi-information display.

If any of the warning messages are shown again after the following actions have been performed, contact your Lexus dealer.

Messages and warnings

The warning lights and warning buzzers operate as follows depending on the content of the message. If a message indicates the need for inspection by a dealer, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

	Warning buzzer*	Warning
Comes on	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when a system related to driving is malfunctioning or that danger may result if the correction procedure is not performed
Flashes	Sounds	Indicates a situation, such as when damage to the vehicle or danger may result
Comes on	Does not sound	Indicates a condition, such as malfunction of electrical components, their condition, or indicates the need for maintenance
Flashes	Does not sound	Indicates a situation, such as when an operation has been performed incorrectly, or indicates how to perform an operation correctly

- In some situations, the master warning light and warning buzzer may not operate as specified. In this case, follow the instructions displayed in the warning message.
- If a warning light comes on or flashes at the same time that a warning message is displayed, take corrective action according to the warning light. (→P.352)

*: A buzzer sounds the first time a message is shown on the multi-information display.

Warning messages

The warning messages explained below may differ from the actual messages according to operation conditions and vehicle specifications.

Warning buzzer

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard due to being in a noisy location or audio sound.

If "Engine Oil Level Low Add or Replace" is displayed

The engine oil level is low. Check the level of the engine oil, and add if necessary.

This message may appear if the vehicle is stopped on a slope. Move the vehicle to a level surface and check to see if the message disappears.

If "Engine Stopped Steering Power Low" is displayed

This message is displayed if the engine is stopped while driving.

When steering wheel operations are heavier than usual, grip the steering wheel firmly and operate it using more force than usual.

■ If "Power Turned Off to Save Battery" is displayed

Power was turned off due to the automatic power off function. Next time when starting the engine, increase the engine speed slightly and maintain that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery.

■ If "Headlight System Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed

The following systems may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

- The LED headlight system
- The automatic headlight leveling system
- Automatic High Beam (if equipped)

■ If "Radar Cruise Control Unavailable" is displayed (if equipped)

The dynamic radar cruise control system cannot be used temporarily. Use the system when it becomes available again.

■ If "Front Camera Unavailable" or "Front Camera Vision Blocked Clean and Demist Windshield" is displayed

The following systems may be suspended until the problem shown in the message is resolved. (→P.195, 354)

- PCS (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)
- Automatic High Beam (if equipped)
- RSA (Road Sign Assist) (if equipped)

■ If "Maintenance Required Soon" is displayed (for Korea only)

Indicates that all maintenance according to the driven distance on the maintenance schedule should be performed soon.

Comes on approximately 9800 km (6125 miles) after the message has been reset. If necessary, perform maintenance. Please reset the message after the maintenance is performed. (→P.301)

■ If "Maintenance Required Visit Your Dealer" is displayed (for Korea only)

Indicates that all maintenance is required to correspond to the driven distance on the maintenance schedule.

Comes on approximately 10000 km (6250 miles) after the message has been reset. (The indicator will not work properly unless the message has been reset.) Perform the necessary maintenance. Please reset the message after the maintenance is performed. (→P.301)

■ If "Speed Limit Exceeded" is displayed (on some models)

The vehicle speed has reached or exceeded 120 km/h (75 mph). At this time, a buzzer also sounds. The buzzer will stop sounding after 6 seconds or if you decelerate to below 120 km/h (75 mph). Reduce your vehicle speed.

■ If "Active Rear Wing Off Go to Settings to turn On" is displayed

The active rear wing switch was pressed when the active rear wing* was disabled. Enable the active rear wing before pressing the active rear wing switch. (→P.235)

*: If equipped

■ If "TVD System Overheated Reduce Engine Speed and Load" is displayed

The TVD system* has overheated, this message may be displayed when driving under high load conditions, such as the following:

- When driving at high speeds or through sharp turns continuously
- When either rear tire has lost traction and spun continuously

Drive the vehicle for a while, while avoiding high load conditions.

*: If equipped

■ If a message that indicates the need for visiting your Lexus dealer is displayed

The system or part shown on the multi-information display is malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ If "See Owner's Manual" is displayed

● If the following messages are shown, following the instructions, accordingly.
- "Engine Coolant Temp High" (→P.388)
- "Transmission Fluid Temp High" (→P.163)

● If any of the following messages are shown on the multi-information display, it may indicate a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
- "Smart Entry & Start System Malfunction"

● If any of the following messages are shown on the multi-information display, it may indicate a malfunction. Immediately stop the vehicle and contact your Lexus dealer.
- "Braking Power Low"
- "Charging System Malfunction"
- "Oil Pressure Low"

NOTICE

■ "High Power Consumption Partial Limit On AC/Heater Operation" is frequently shown

There is a possible malfunction relating to the charging system or the battery may be deteriorating. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with a spare tire)

Your vehicle is equipped with a spare tire. The flat tire can be replaced with the spare tire.

For details about tires: →P.326

WARNING

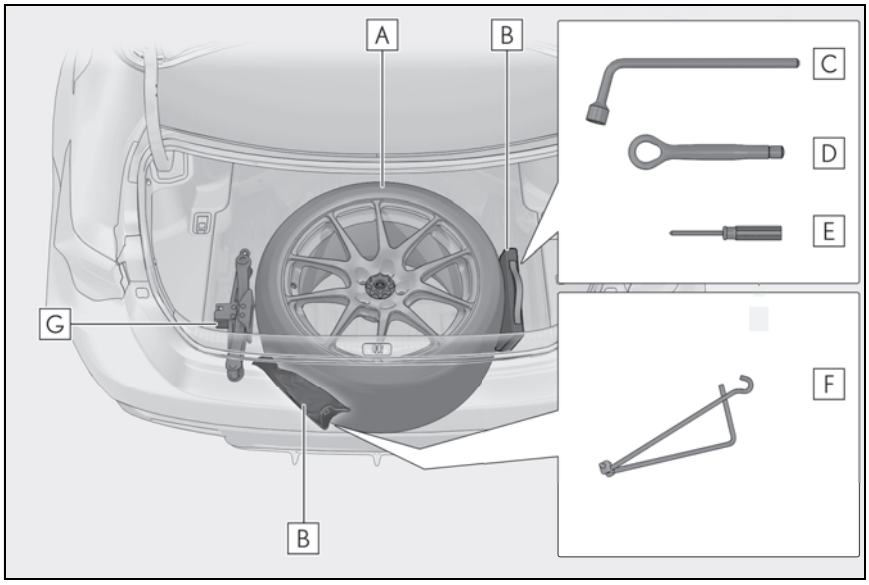
■ If you have a flat tire

Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair, which could result in an accident.

Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers. (→P.344)

Location of the spare tire, jack and tools



A Spare tire

B Tool bags

C Wheel nut wrench

D Towing eyelet

E Screwdriver

F Jack handle

G Jack

WARNING

■ Using the tire jack

Observe the following precautions. Improper use of the tire jack may cause the vehicle to suddenly fall off the jack, leading to death or serious injury.

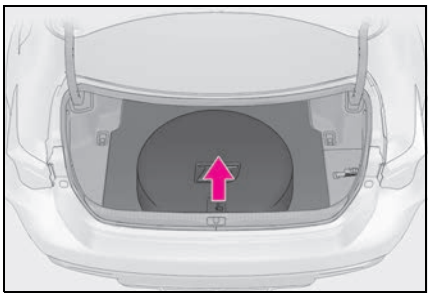
- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Put the jack properly in its jack point.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while it is supported by the jack.
- Do not start the engine or drive the vehicle while the vehicle is supported by the jack.

WARNING

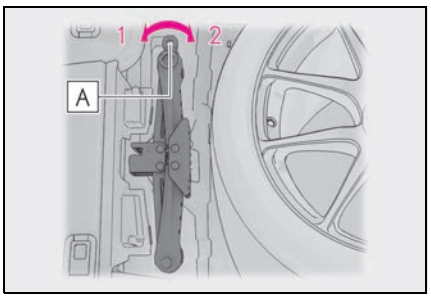
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is inside.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- When lowering the vehicle, make sure that there is no-one near the vehicle. If there are people nearby, warn them vocally before lowering.

Taking out the jack

1 Remove the luggage mat.



2 Take out the jack.



1 For tightening
2 For loosening

If the jack is too tightly installed to be removed by hand, insert a tool, such as the screwdriver included with the vehicle, into the hole of the jack (portion A) and loosen the jack.

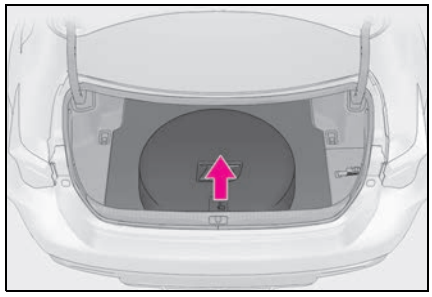
NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to luggage mat

When closing the trunk lid, do not leave the luggage mat lever hooked onthe edge of the trunk.

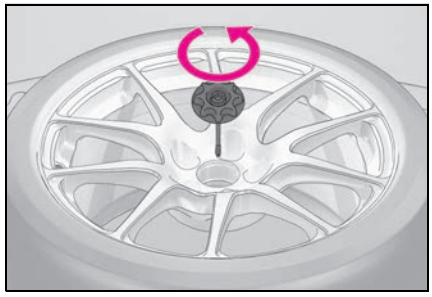
Taking out the spare tire

1 Remove the luggage mat.



2 Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.

If the center fastener cannot be turned by hand, use the wheel nut wrench that is stored in the trunk. (To secure the tire, tighten the center fastener by hand. Do not use the wrench or other tools.)



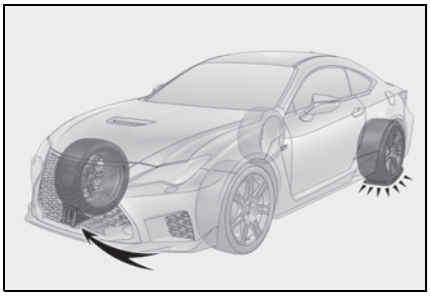
WARNING

■ When storing the spare tire

Be careful not to catch fingers or other body parts between the spare tire and the body of the vehicle.

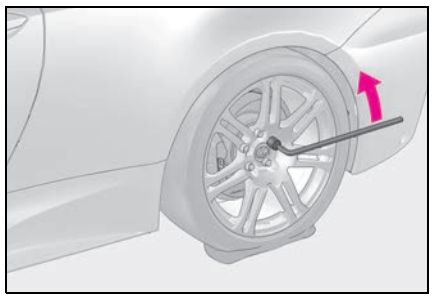
Replacing a flat tire

1 Chock the tires.



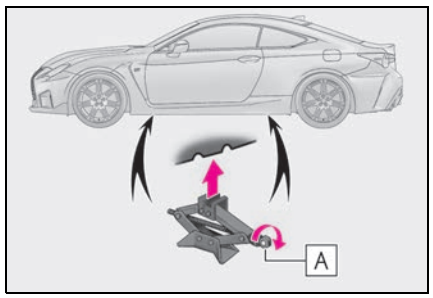
Flat tire	Wheel chock positions
Front left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
Front right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
Rear right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

2 Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).

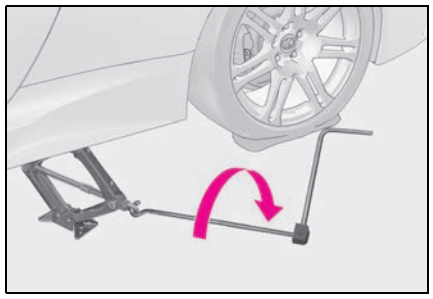


3 Turn the tire jack portion A by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

The jack point guides are located under the rocker panel. They indicate the jack point positions.



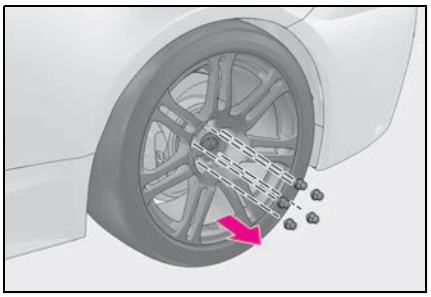
4 Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.



5 Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place

the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.



WARNING

■ Replacing a flat tire

- Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven. After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc. may result in burns.
- Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
- Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel while the vehicle is moving.
- When installing a tire, only use wheel nuts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
- If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, nut threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ Precaution for CCB (Carbon Ceramic Brake) discs (if equipped)

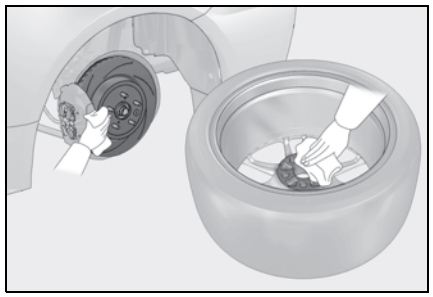
Do not subject the carbon ceramic brake disc to strong impact.

It the carbon ceramic brake disc has been subjected to a strong impact, even if there is no obvious damage, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Installing the spare tire

1 Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

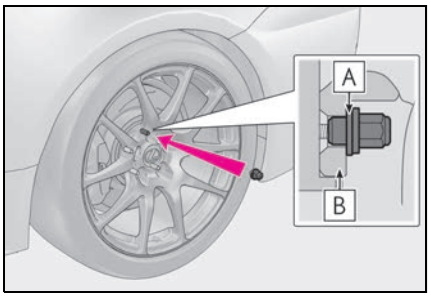
If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tire to come off.



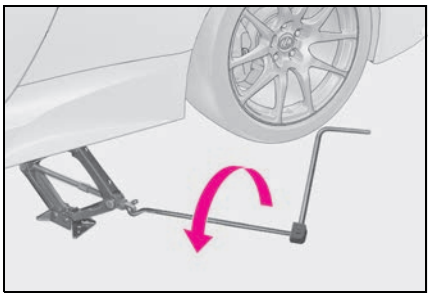
2 Install the tire and loosely tighten each wheel nut by hand by approximately the same amount.

When replacing an aluminum wheel with an aluminum wheel, turn the wheel nuts until the washers A come into contact

with the disc wheel B.

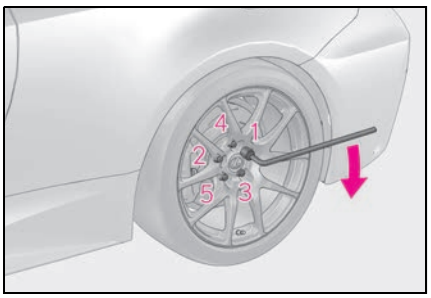


3 Lower the vehicle.



4 Firmly tighten each wheel nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)



5 Stow the flat tire, tire jack and all tools.

■ The spare tire

- Use the spare tire temporarily, and only in an emergency.
- Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure of the spare tire. (→P.400, 401)

■ When using the spare tire

As the spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, low inflation pressure of the spare tire will not be indicated by the tire pressure warning system*. Also, if you replace the spare tire after the tire pressure warning light comes on, the light remains on.

*: If equipped

■ When the spare tire is equipped

The vehicle becomes lower when driving with the spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires.

■ If you have a flat rear tire on a road covered with snow or ice (vehicles with front and rear tires of the same size)

Install the spare tire on one of the front wheels of the vehicle. Perform the following steps and fit tire chains to the rear tires:

1 Replace a front tire with the spare tire.
2 Replace the flat rear tire with the tire removed from the front of the vehicle.
3 Fit tire chains to the rear tires.

WARNING

■ When using the spare tire

- Remember that the spare tire provided is specifically designed for use with your vehicle. Do not use your spare tire on another vehicle.
- Do not use more than one spare tire simultaneously.
- Replace the spare tire with a standard tire as soon as possible.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.

WARNING

■ When the spare tire is attached

The vehicle speed may not be correctly detected, and the following systems may not operate correctly:

- ABS & Brake assist
- VSC
- TRC
- Cruise control (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)
- PCS (if equipped)
- EPS
- AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) (if equipped)
- VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management)
- Tire pressure warning system (if equipped)
- Lexus parking assist monitor
- Lexus parking assist-sensor
- Navigation system (if equipped)

■ Speed limit when using the spare tire

Do not drive at speeds in excess of 80 km/h (50 mph) when a spare tire is installed on the vehicle.

The spare tire is not designed for driving at high speeds. Failure to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

■ After using the tools and jack

Before driving, make sure all the tools and jack are securely in place in their storage location to reduce the possibility of personal injury during a collision or sudden braking.

NOTICE

■ Driving with tire chains and the spare tire

Do not fit tire chains to the spare tire. Tire chains may damage the vehicle body and adversely affect driving performance.

■ When replacing the tires

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

■ Precaution for CCB (Carbon Ceramic Brake) discs (if equipped)

→P.366

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit)

Your vehicle is not equipped with a spare tire, but instead is equipped with an emergency tire puncture repair kit.
A puncture caused by a nail or screw passing through the tire tread can be repaired temporarily with the emergency tire puncture repair kit.

WARNING

■ If you have a flat tire

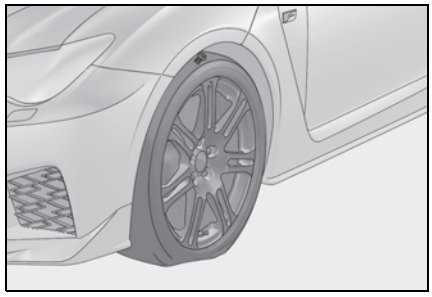
Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair. Driving with a flat tire may cause a circumferential groove on the side wall. In such a case, the tire may explode when using the emergency tire puncture repair kit, resulting in death or serious injury.

Before repairing the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers. (→P.344)
- Check the degree of the tire damage.

A tire should only be repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit if the damage is caused by a nail or screw passing through the tire tread.

- Do not remove the nail or screw from the tire. Removing the object may widen the opening and disenable emergency repair with the kit.
- To avoid sealant leakage, move the vehicle until the area of the puncture, if known, is positioned at the top of the tire.

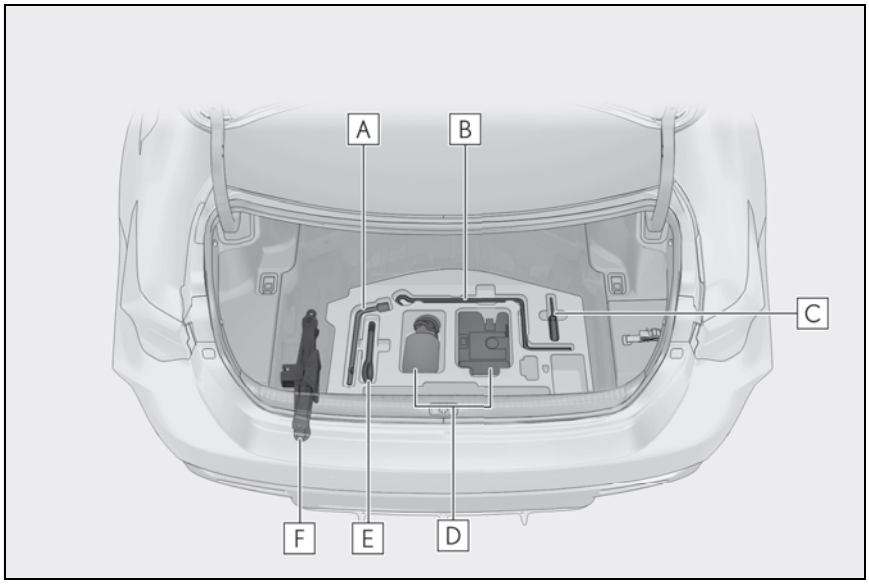


■ A flat tire that cannot be repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit

In the following cases, the tire cannot be repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit. Contact your Lexus dealer.

- When the tire is damaged due to driving without sufficient air pressure
- When the tire lost air pressure due to a crack or damage in the tire sidewall
- When the tire is visibly separated from the wheel
- When the cut or damage to the tread is 4 mm (0.16 in.) long or more
- When the wheel is damaged
- When 2 or more sharp objects, such as nails or screws, have passed through the tread on a single tire
- When there is more than one hole or cut in the damaged tire
- When the sealant has expired

Location of the emergency tire puncture repair kit and tools



A Wheel nut wrench

B Jack handle

C Screwdriver

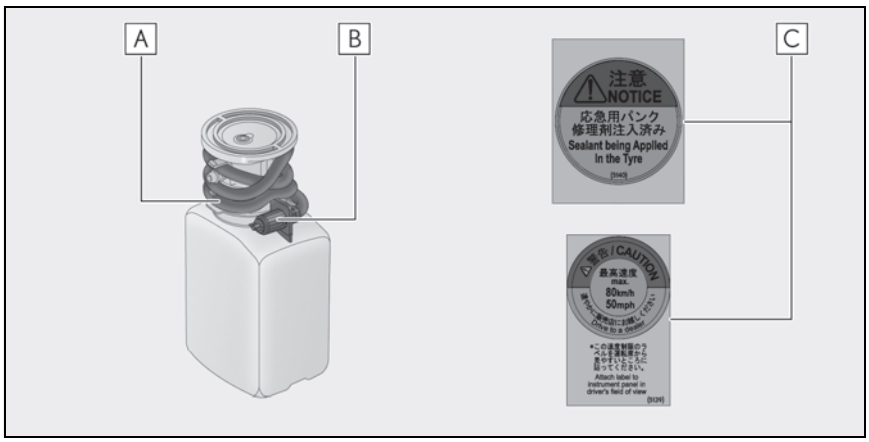
D Emergency tire puncture repair kits

E Towing eyelet

F Jack
(Use of the jack:→P.365)

Emergency tire puncture repair kit components

▶ Bottle

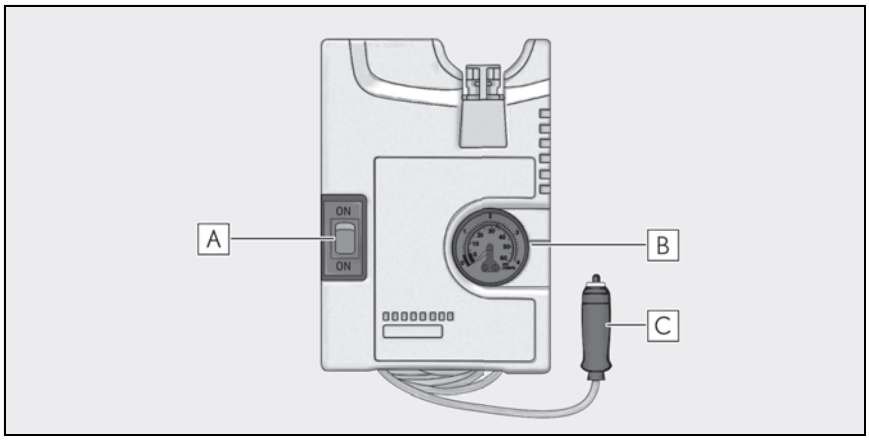


A Hose

B Air release cap

C Stickers

▶ Compressor



A Compressor switch

B Air pressure gauge

C Power plug

■ **Emergency tire puncture repair kit**

● The sealant has a limited lifespan. The expiry date is marked on the bottle. The

sealant should be replaced before the expiry date. Contact your Lexus dealer for replacement.

- The sealant stored in the emergency tire puncture repair kit can be used only once to temporarily repair a single tire. If the sealant has been used and needs to be purchased, contact your Lexus dealer. The compressor is reusable.
- The sealant can be used when the outside temperature is from -40°C (-40°F) to 60°C (140°F).
- The kit is exclusively designed for size and type of tires originally installed on your vehicle. Do not use it for tires that a different size than the original ones, or for any other purposes.
- If the sealant gets on your clothes, it may stain.
- If the sealant adheres to a wheel or the surface of the vehicle body, the stain may not be removable if it is not cleaned at once. Immediately wipe away the sealant with a wet cloth.
- During operation of the kit, a loud operation noise is produced. This does not indicate a malfunction.
- Do not use the emergency tire puncture repair kit to check or to adjust the tire pressure.

■ Note for checking the emergency tire puncture repair kit

Check the sealant expiry date occasionally. The expiry date is shown on the bottle. Do not use sealant whose expiry date has already passed. Otherwise, repairs conducted using the emergency tire puncture repair kit may not be performed properly.

⚠ WARNING

■ Caution while driving

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause an accident.

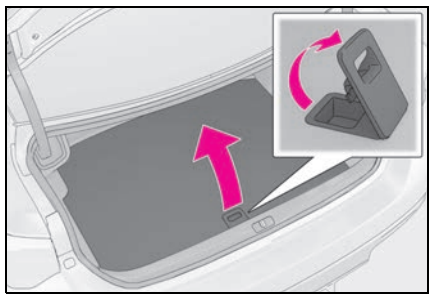
- The emergency tire puncture repair kit is made exclusively for your vehicle. Do not use it on other vehicles.
- Do not use the emergency tire puncture repair kit for tires that are a different size than the specified ones or for any other purpose. Doing so may cause the tires to not be repaired properly.

■ Precautions for use of the sealant

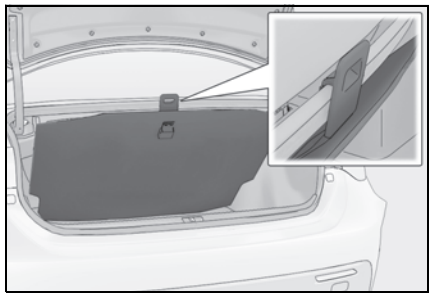
- Ingesting the sealant is hazardous to your health. If you ingest sealant, consume as much water as possible, then immediately consult a doctor.
- If sealant gets in eyes or adheres to skin, immediately wash it off with water. If discomfort persists, consult a doctor.

Taking out the emergency tire puncture repair kits

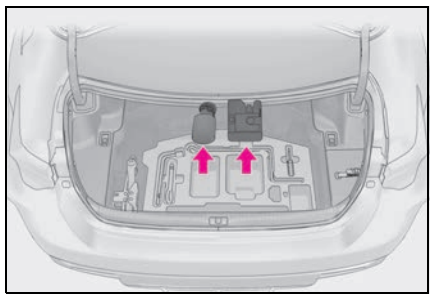
1 Hold the hook and lift up the luggage mat.



2 Secure the luggage mat using the hook.



3 Take out the emergency tire puncture repair kits.



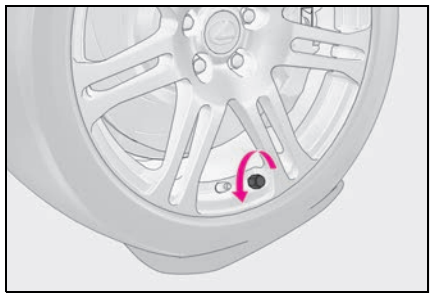
NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to luggage mat

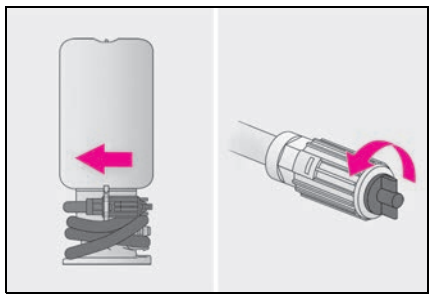
When closing the trunk lid, do not leave the luggage mat lever hooked onthe edge of the trunk.

Emergency repair method

1 Remove the valve cap from the valve of the punctured tire.



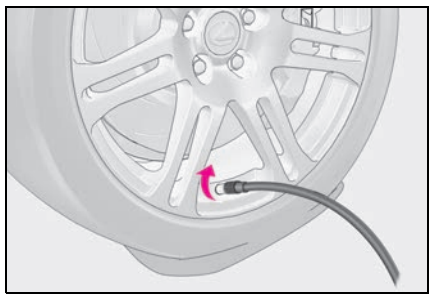
2 Extend the hose. Remove the air release cap from the hose.



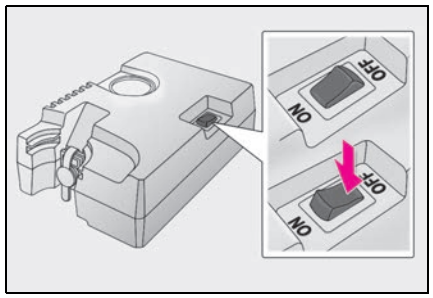
You will use the air release cap again. Therefore keep it in a safe place.

3 Connect the hose to the valve.

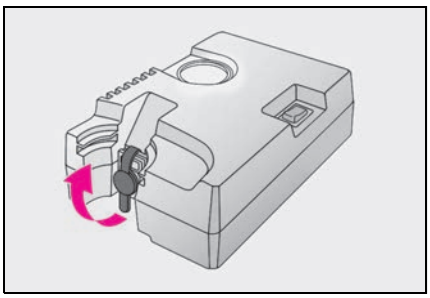
Screw the end of the hose clockwise as far as possible.



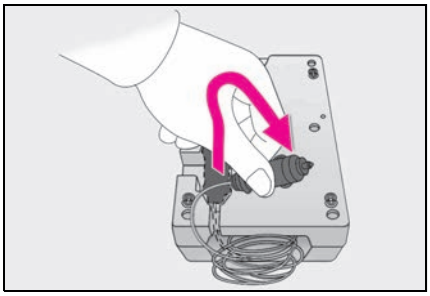
4 Make sure that the compressor switch is off.



5 Lift the rubber stopper on the compressor.

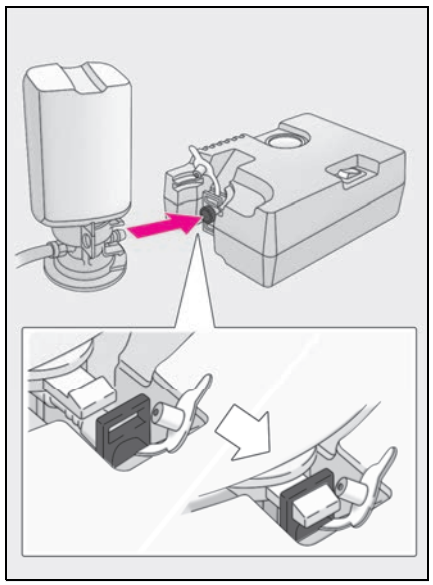


6 Remove the power plug from the compressor.



7 Connect the power plug to the power outlet socket. (→P.271)

8 Connect the bottle to the compressor.

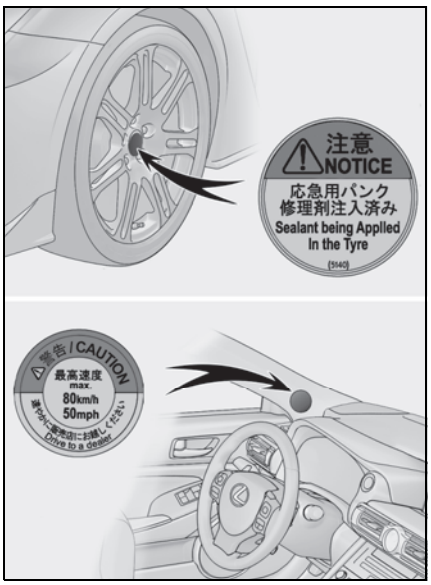


Make sure that the bottle is securely connected.

9 Attach the 2 stickers as shown.

Remove any dirt and moisture from the wheel before attaching the label. If it is impossible to attach the label, make sure to tell your Lexus dealer when you have them repair and replace the tire that sealant is

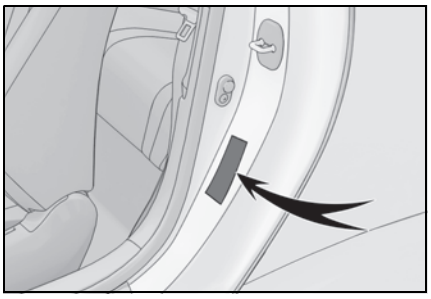
injected.



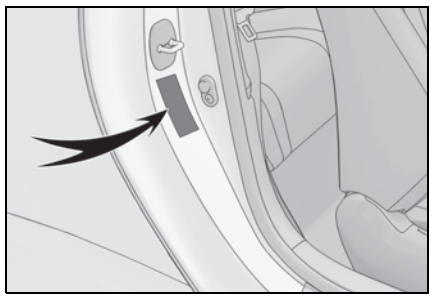
10 Check the specified tire inflation pressure.

Tire inflation pressure is specified on the label as shown. (→P.400, 401)

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles

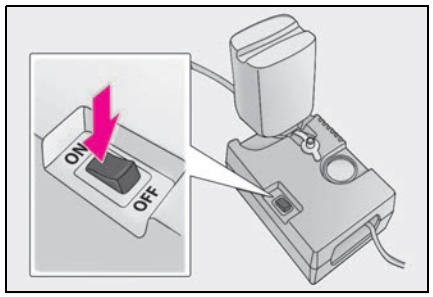


▶ Right-hand drive vehicles

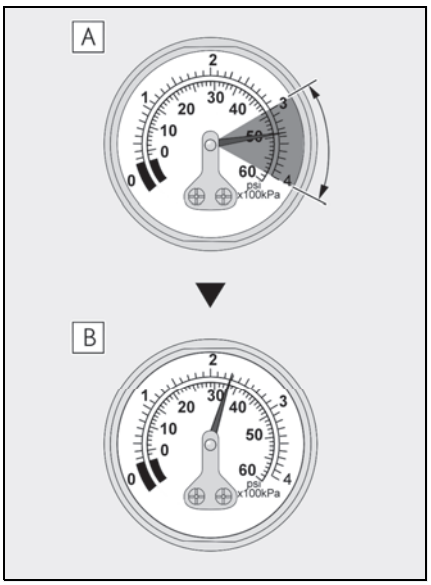


11 Start the engine. (→P.160)

12 To inject the sealant and inflate the tire, turn the compressor switch on.



13 Inflate the tire until the recommended pressure is reached.



A The sealant will be injected and the pressure will spike to 300 kPa (3.0 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 44 psi) or 400 kPa (4.0 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 58 psi), then gradually decrease.

B The air pressure gauge will display the actual tire inflation pressure about 1 minute (15 minutes at low temperature) after the switch is turned on.

Turn the compressor switch off and then check the tire inflation pressure. Being careful not to over inflate, check and repeat the inflation procedure until the recommended tire inflation pressure is reached.

If the tire inflation pressure is still lower than the recommended level after inflation for 10 minutes (35 minutes at low temperature) with the switch on, the tire is too damaged to be repaired. Turn the compressor switch off and contact your Lexus dealer.

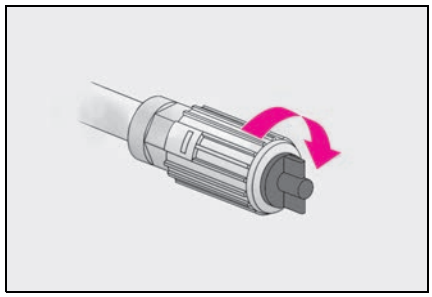
If the tire inflation pressure exceeds the recommended level, let out some air to adjust the tire inflation pressure. (→P.377, 400)

14 With the compressor switch off, disconnect the hose from the valve on the tire and then pull out the power plug from the power outlet socket.

Some sealant may leak when the hose is removed.

15 Install the valve cap onto the valve of the emergency repaired tire.

16 Attach the air release cap to the end of the hose.

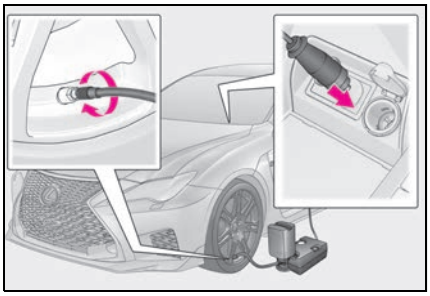


If the air release cap is not attached, the sealant may leak and the vehicle may get dirty.

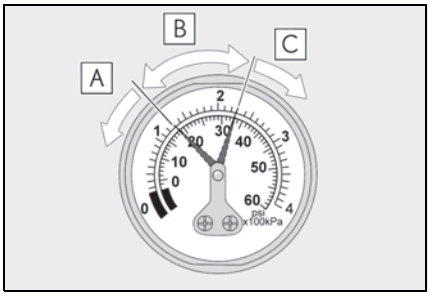
17 Temporarily store the bottle in the trunk while it is connected to the compressor.

18 To spread the liquid sealant evenly within the tire, immediately drive safely for about 5 km (3 miles) below 80 km/h (50 mph).

19 After driving, stop your vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface and reconnect the compressor.



20 Turn the compressor switch on and wait for several seconds, then turn it off. Check the tire inflation pressure.



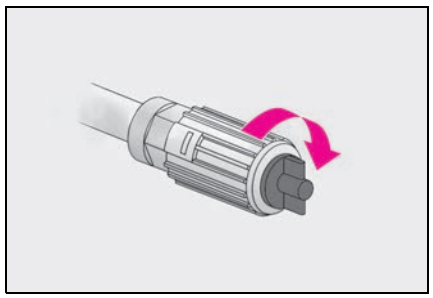
A If the tire inflation pressure is below 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 19 psi): The puncture cannot be repaired. Contact your Lexus dealer.

B If the tire inflation pressure is between 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 19 psi) and a point below the recommended level: The tire can be repaired. Proceed to step **21**.

C If the tire inflation pressure is at the recommended level: Proceed to step **22**.

21 Turn the compressor switch on to inflate the tire until the recommended tire inflation pressure is reached. Drive for about 5 km (3 miles) and then perform step **19**.

22 Attach the air release cap to the end of the hose.



If the air release cap is not attached, the sealant may leak and the vehicle may get dirty.

23 Store the bottle in the trunk while it is connected to the compressor.

24 Taking precautions to avoid sudden braking, sudden acceleration and sharp turns, drive carefully at under 80 km/h (50 mph) to your Lexus dealer that is less than 100 km (62 miles) away for tire repair or replacement.

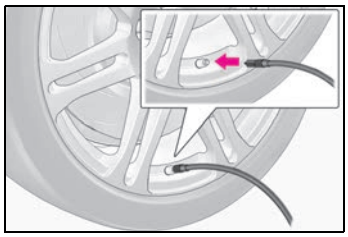
■ After a tire is repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit

- The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter should be replaced.
- Even if the tire inflation pressure is at the recommended level, the tire pressure warning light may come on/flash.

■ If the tire is inflated to more than the recommended level

1 Disconnect the hose from the valve.
2 Install the air release cap to the end of the hose and push the protrusion on the

air release cap into the valve to let some air out.



3 Disconnect the hose from the valve, remove the air release cap from the hose and then reconnect the hose.

4 Turn the compressor switch on and wait for several seconds, then turn it off. Check that the air pressure indicator shows the recommended level. (→P.400)
If the air pressure is lower than the recommended level, turn the compressor switch on again and repeat the inflation procedure until the recommended pressure is reached.

WARNING

■ When fixing the flat tire

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe and flat area.
- Do not touch the wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven.
  After the vehicle has been driven, the wheels and the area around the brakes may be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts may result in burns.
- Connect the valve and hose securely with the tire installed on the vehicle.
  - If the hose is not properly connected to the valve, air leakage may occur or sealant may be sprayed out.
  - If the hose comes off the valve while inflating the tire, there is a risk that the hose will move abruptly due to air pressure.
  - After inflation of the tire has completed, the sealant may splatter when the hose is disconnected or some air is let out of the tire.
- Follow the operation procedure to repair the tire. If the procedure is not followed, the sealant may spray out.
- Keep back from the tire while it is being repaired, as there is a chance of it bursting while the repair operation is being performed. If you notice any cracks or deformation of the tire, turn off the compressor switch and stop the repair operation immediately.
- The kit may overheat if operated for a long period of time. Do not operate the compressor continuously for more than 35 minutes.
- Parts of the kit become hot during operation. Be careful handling the kit during and after operation. Do not touch the metal part around the connecting area between the bottle and compressor. It will be extremely hot.
- Do not attach the vehicle speed warning sticker to an area other than the one indicated. If the sticker is attached to an area where an SRS airbag is located, such as the pad of the steering wheel, it may prevent the SRS airbag from operating properly.

■ Driving to spread the liquid sealant evenly

- Drive the vehicle carefully at a low speed. Be especially careful when turning and cornering.

WARNING

- If the vehicle does not drive straight or you feel a pull through the steering wheel, stop the vehicle and check the following:
  - Tire condition. The tire may have separated from the wheel.
  - Tire inflation pressure. If tire inflation pressure is 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 19 psi) or below, this may indicate severe tire damage.

NOTICE

■ **When performing an emergency repair**

- Perform the emergency repair without removing the nail or screw that has punctured the tread of the tire. If the object that has punctured the tire is removed, repair by the emergency tire puncture repair kit may not be possible.
- The kit is not waterproof. Make sure that the kit is not exposed to water, such as when it is being used in the rain.
- Do not put the kit directly onto dusty ground such as sand at the side of the road. If the kit vacuums up dust etc., a malfunction may occur.
- Make sure to stand the kit with the bottle vertical. The kit cannot work properly if it is laid on its side.

■ **Handling the emergency tire puncture repair kit**

- The compressor power source should be 12 V DC suitable for vehicle use. Do not connect the compressor to any other source.
- If gasoline splatters on the kit, the kit may deteriorate. Take care not to allow gasoline to contact it.
- Store the emergency tire puncture repair kit in the trunk. The kit may be thrown around during sudden braking and so forth, damaging the kit.
- Store the kit in its assigned place out of reach of children.
- Do not disassemble or modify the kit. Do not subject parts such as the air pressure indicator to impacts. This may cause a malfunction.

■ **To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. After use of liquid sealant, make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when repairing or replacing the tire. (→P.329)

If the engine will not start

If the engine will not start even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P.160), consider each of the following points:

The engine will not start even though the starter motor operates normally.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
  Refuel the vehicle.
- The engine may be flooded.
  Try to restart the engine again following correct starting procedures. (→P.160)
- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system. (→P.83)

The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery may be discharged. (→P.385)
- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded. (→P.321)

The starter motor does not turn over

The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as electronic key battery depletion or a blown fuse. However, an interim measure is available to start the engine. (→P.380)

The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected. (→P.321)
- The battery may be discharged. (→P.385)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.

Contact your Lexus dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Emergency start function

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the engine switch is functioning normally:

1 Set the parking brake.

2 Shift the shift lever to P.

3 Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode.

4 Press and hold the engine switch for about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

If you lose your keys

New genuine mechanical keys can be made by your Lexus dealer using another mechanical key and the key number stamped on your key number plate.

Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle.

NOTICE

When an electronic key is lost

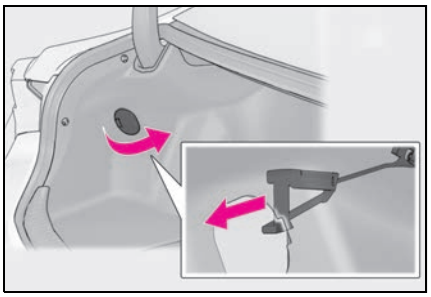
If the electronic key remains lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Visit your Lexus dealer immediately with all remaining electronic keys and the card key that were provided with your vehicle.

If the fuel filler door cannot be opened

If the fuel filler door cannot be opened by pressing the center of the rear edge of the fuel filler door with the doors unlocked, the following procedure can be used to open the fuel filler door.

Opening the fuel filler door

Remove the cover inside the trunk and pull the lever.



If the electronic key does not operate properly

If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P.131) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart entry & start system and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors and trunk can be opened and the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

■ When the electronic key does not work properly

- Make sure that the smart entry & start system has not been deactivated in the customization setting. If it is off, turn the function on.
- Check if battery-saving mode is set. If it is set, cancel the function. (→P.131)

NOTICE

■ In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction or other key-related problems

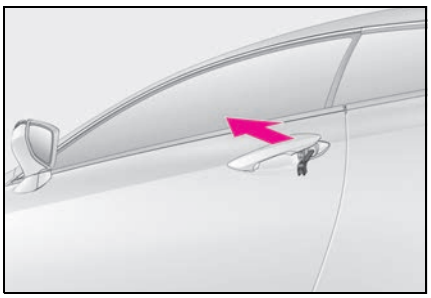
Take your vehicle with all the electronic keys provided with your vehicle, including the card key, to your Lexus dealer.

Locking and unlocking the doors and opening the trunk

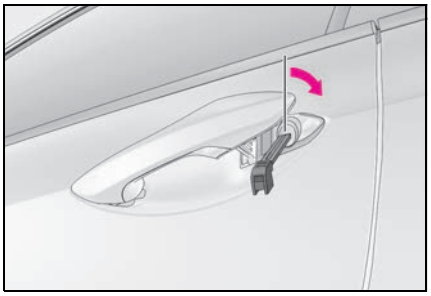
■ Unlocking the door

Use the mechanical key (→P.118) in order to perform the following operations:

1 Insert the mechanical key while pulling on the driver's door handle.



2 Unlocking the door.

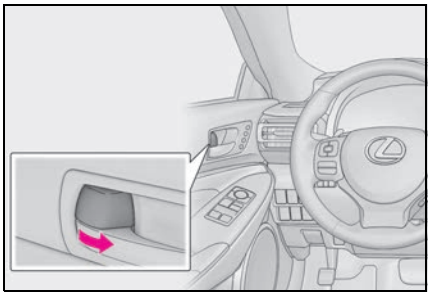


3 Remove the key, return the handle, and then pull the handle again.

■ **Locking the door**

▶ Except for Korea

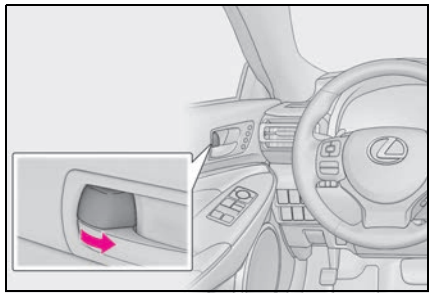
1 Move the inside lock button to the lock position.



2 Close the door while pulling the door handle.

▶ For Korea

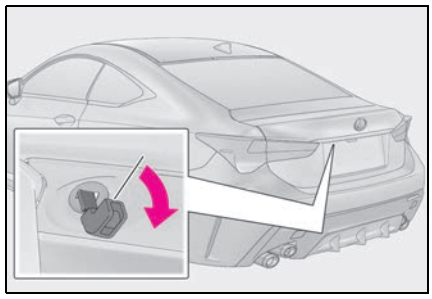
1 Move the inside lock button to the lock position.



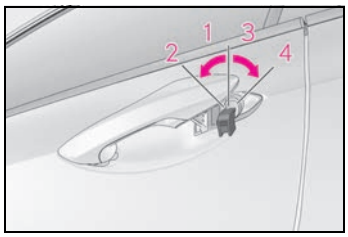
2 Close the door.

■ **Opening the trunk**

Turn the mechanical key clockwise to open. (→P.86)



■ **Key linked functions**



1 Locks both side door

2 Closes the windows and moon roof (if equipped) (turn and hold)*

3 Unlocks the door

Some models: Turning the key rearward unlocks the driver's door. Turning the key again the other door.

4 Opens the windows and moon roof (if equipped) (turn and hold)*

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

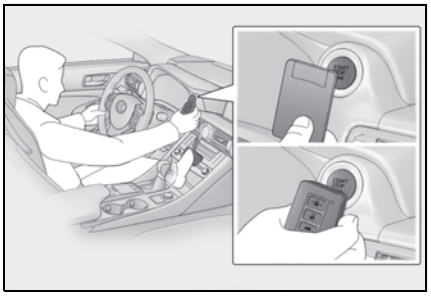
■ When using the mechanical key and operating the power windows or moon roof

Operate the power window or moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window or moon roof.
Also, do not allow children to operate the mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window or moon roof.

Starting the engine

1 Ensure that the shift lever is in P and depress the brake pedal.

2 Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key to the engine switch.



When the electronic key is detected, a buzzer sounds and the engine switch will turn to IGNITION ON mode.

When the smart entry & start system is deactivated in customization setting, the engine switch will turn to ACCESSORY mode.

3 Firmly depress the brake pedal and check that  is shown on the multi-information display.

4 Press the engine switch.

In the event that the engine still cannot be started, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Stopping the engine

Shift the shift lever to P and press the engine switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

■ Electronic key battery

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery is depleted. (→P.336)

■ Alarm

For Hong Kong, Brunei, Singapore, Macau, GCC countries*, Jordan, Lebanon, Chile, Guatemala, Panama, Peru, Dominica, Costa Rica and Indonesia:
Using the mechanical key to lock the doors will not set the alarm system.
If a door is unlocked using the mechanical key when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered.

*: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar and Kuwait

■ Changing engine switch modes

Release the brake pedal and press the engine switch in step 3 above.
The engine does not start and modes will be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P.162)

If the vehicle battery is discharged

The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged.
You can also call your Lexus dealer or a qualified repair shop.

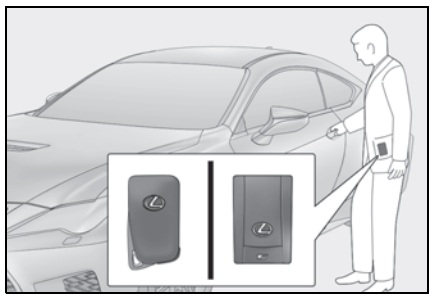
Restarting the engine

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your vehicle by following the steps below.

1 Confirm that the electronic key is being carried.

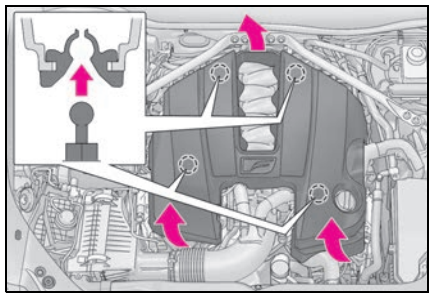
When connecting the jumper (or booster) cables, depending on the situation, the alarm may activate and doors locked.

(→P.87)



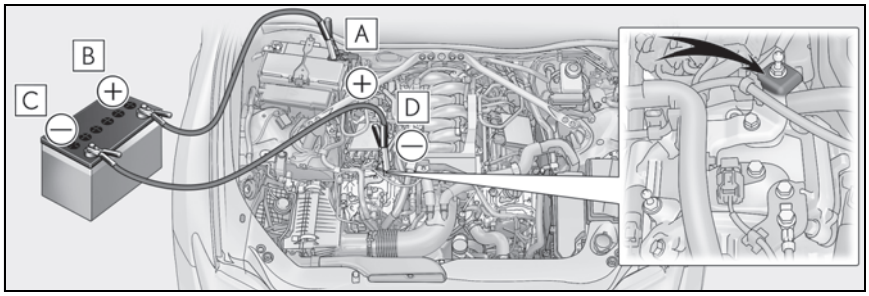
2 Open the hood. (→P.315)

3 Remove the engine cover.
Raise the rear of the engine cover to remove the rear clip, and then raise the front of the engine cover to remove the front clips.



4 Connect a positive jumper cable clamp to A on your vehicle and connect the clamp on the other end of the positive cable to B on the second vehicle. Then, connect a negative cable clamp to C on the second vehicle and connect the clamp at the other end of the negative cable to D.

● Left-hand drive vehicles



7 When trouble arises

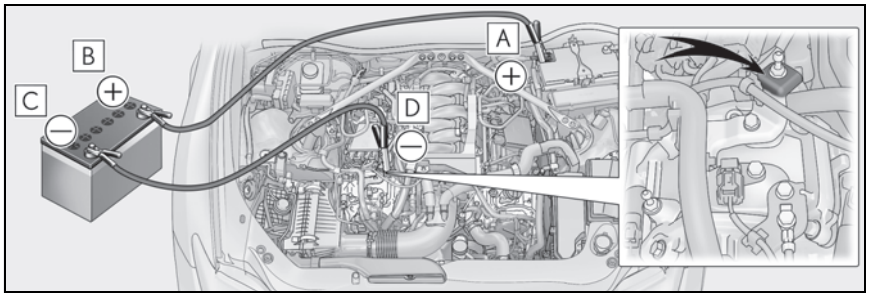
A Positive (+) battery terminal (your vehicle)

B Positive (+) battery terminal (second vehicle)

C Negative (-) battery terminal (second vehicle)

D Solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the battery and any moving parts as shown in the illustration

- Right-hand drive vehicles



A Positive (+) battery terminal (your vehicle)

B Positive (+) battery terminal (second vehicle)

C Negative (-) battery terminal (second vehicle)

D Solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the battery and any moving parts as shown in the illustration

5 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.

6 Open and close any of the door of your vehicle with the engine switch off.

7 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the engine of your vehicle by turning the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

8 Once the vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ Starting the engine when the battery is discharged

The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

■ To prevent battery discharge

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

■ Charging the battery

The electricity stored in the battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the battery may discharge, and the engine may be unable to start. (The battery recharges automatically during driving.)

■ When recharging or replacing the battery

- In some cases, it may not be possible to unlock the doors using the smart entry & start system when the battery is discharged. Use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock or unlock the doors.
- The engine may not start on the first attempt after the battery has recharged but will start normally after the second attempt. This is not a malfunction.
- The engine switch mode is memorized by the vehicle. When the battery is reconnected, the system will return to the mode it was in before the battery was discharged. Before disconnecting the battery, turn the engine switch off.
  If you are unsure what mode the engine switch was in before the battery discharged, be especially careful when reconnecting the battery.

■ When replacing the battery

- Use a battery that conforms to European regulations.
- Use a battery that tha case size is same as the previous one (LN3), 20 hour rate capacity (20HR) is equivalent (70Ah) or greater, and performance rating (CCA) is equivalent (592A) or greater.
  - If the sizes differ, the battery cannot be properly secured.
  - If the 20 hour rate capacity is low, even if the time period where the vehicle is not used is a short time, battery may discharge and the engine may not be able to start.
- For details, consult your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ Avoiding battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery:

- Make sure each jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the other end of the jumper cable connected to the "+" terminal to come into contact with any other parts or metal surfaces in the area, such as brackets or unpainted metal.
- Do not allow the + and - clamps of the jumper cables to come into contact with each other.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.
- If the battery fluid level is excessively low (→P.322), do not use the battery.

■ Battery precautions

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention. Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.

WARNING

- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

NOTICE

■ When handling jumper cables

When connecting the jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in the cooling fans or engine drive belt.

If your vehicle overheats

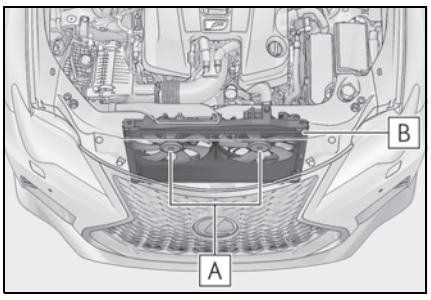
The following may indicate that your vehicle is overheating.

- The engine coolant temperature gauge (→P.96) is in the red zone or a loss of engine power is experienced. (For example, the vehicle speed does not increase.)
- "Engine Coolant Temp High Stop in a Safe Place See Owner's Manual" is shown on the multi-information display.
- Steam comes out from under the hood.

Correction procedures

1. Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system, and then stop the engine.
2. If you see steam:
   Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides.
   If you do not see steam:
   Carefully lift the hood.
3. After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, inspect the hoses and

radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

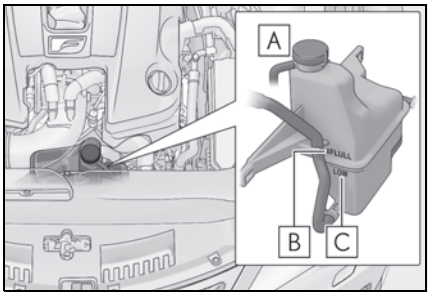


A Radiator

B Cooling fans

If a large amount of coolant leaks, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.

4 The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the full ("FULL") and low ("LOW") lines on the reservoir.



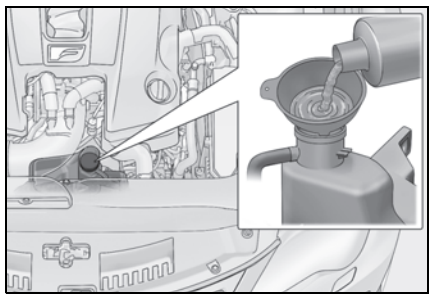
A Reservoir cap

B "FULL"

C "LOW"

5 Add coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if coolant is unavailable.



6 Start the engine and turn the air conditioning system on to check that the radiator cooling fans operate and to check for coolant leaks from the radiator or hoses.

The fans operate when the air conditioning system is turned on immediately after a cold start. Confirm that the fans are operating by checking the fan sound and air flow. If it is difficult to check these, turn the air conditioning system on and off repeatedly.
(The fans may not operate in freezing temperatures.)

7 If the fans are not operating:
Stop the engine immediately and contact your Lexus dealer.
If the fans are operating:
Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest Lexus dealer.

WARNING

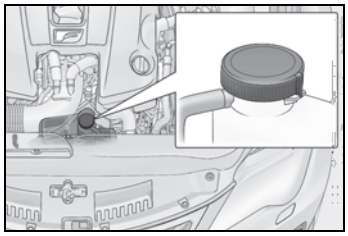
■ When inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in serious injury such as burns.

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot.

WARNING

- Keep hands and clothing (especially a tie, a scarf or a muffler) away from the fans and belts. Failure to do so may cause the hands or clothing to be caught, resulting in serious injury.
- While the engine and radiator are hot, do not loosen or remove the coolant reservoircap.
  High temperature steam or coolant couldspray out.



NOTICE

■ When adding engine coolant

Add coolant slowly after the engine has cooled down sufficiently. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

■ To prevent damage to the cooling system

Observe the following precautions:

- Avoid contaminating the coolant with foreign matter (such as sand or dust etc.).
- Do not use any coolant additive.

If the vehicle becomes stuck

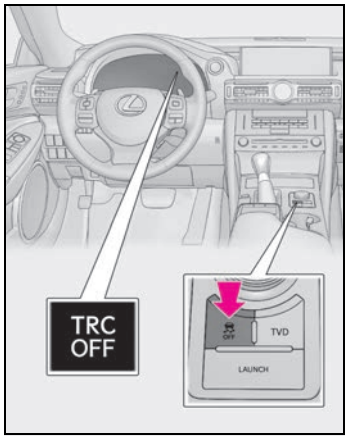
Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt or snow:

Recovering procedure

1. Stop the engine. Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.
2. Remove the mud, snow or sand from around the rear wheels.
3. Place wood, stones or some other material under the rear wheels to help provide traction.
4. Restart the engine.
5. Shift the shift lever to D or R and release the parking brake. Then, while exercising caution, depress the accelerator pedal.

■ When it is difficult to free the vehicle

Press the OFF switch to turn off TRC.



WARNING

■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or people. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the rear wheels and depressing the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
- If the vehicle remains stuck even after these procedures are performed, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

8-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 394

Fuel information 403

8-2. Customization

Customizable features 404

8-3. Items to initialize

Items to initialize 415

8-4. Certifications

Certifications 416

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

Dimensions

Overall length		4710 mm (185.4 in.)
Overall width		1845 mm (72.6 in.)
Overall height*1		1390 mm (54.7 in.)
Wheelbase		2730 mm (107.5 in.)
Tread*1	Front	1555 mm (61.2 in.) 1565 mm (61.6 in.)*2
	Rear	1570 mm (61.8 in.) 1560 mm (61.4 in.)*2

*1: Unladen vehicle

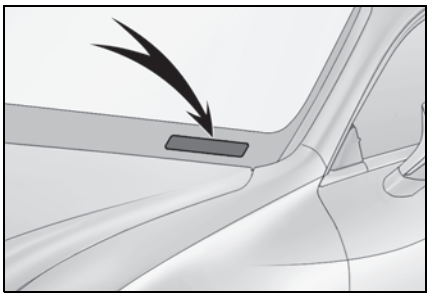
*2: Vehicles with 235/40R19 tires

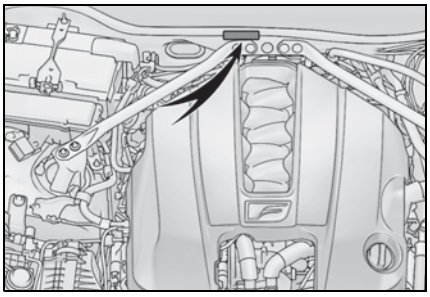
Vehicle identification

■ Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

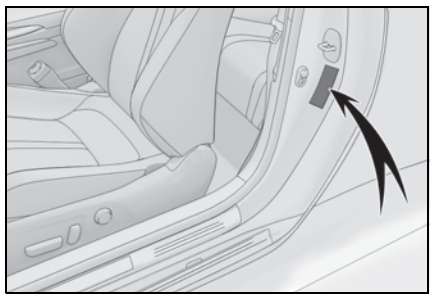
This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel and in the engine compartment.





This number is also on the Certification

Regulation label[*1] or the manufacturer's label[*2].



[*1]: For GCC countries[*3], Lebanon and Korea

[*2]: Except for GCC countries[*3], Lebanon and Korea

[*3]: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar, Kuwait

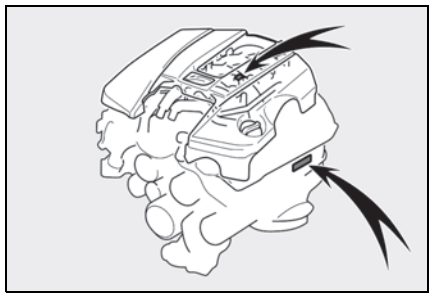
■ Year of manufacture and country of origin (GCC countries* and Lebanon)

The year of the manufacture and country of origin are shown on the Certification Regulation label.

*: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar and Kuwait

■ Engine number

The engine number is located as shown.



Engine

Model	2UR-GSE
Type	8-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	94.0 × 89.5 mm (3.70 × 3.52 in.)
Displacement	4969 cm^3 (303.2 cu. in.)
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment
Maximum vehicle speed[*1]	270 km/h (168 mph)
Maximum torque (NET)[*1]	530 N•m @4800 – 5600 rpm
Maximum output (NET)[*1]	351 kW @7100 rpm

[*1]: For vehicles with model code[*2] that has "V" as the last letter

[*2]: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation

label. (→P.394)

Fuel

Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only
Research Octane Number	98 or higher*1
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	66 L (17.4 gal., 14.5 Imp. gal.) 66.3 L (17.5 gal., 14.6 Imp. gal.)*2

*1: If unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 98 is not available, unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 may be used with no detrimentto engine durability or driveability.

*2: For Korea

Lubrication system

■ Oil capacity (Drain and refill [Reference*])

With filter	8.8 L (9.3 qt., 7.7 Imp. qt.)
Without filter	7.9 L (8.3 qt., 7.0 Imp. qt.)

*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up and turn off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Engine oil selection

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

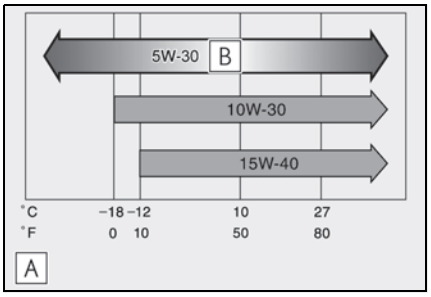
Oil grade:
5W-30 and 10W-30:
API grade SL "Energy-Conserving", SM "Energy-Conserving", SN "Resource-Conserving" or SN PLUS "Resource-Conserving"; or ILSAC multigrade engine oil

15W-40:
API grade SL,SM, SN or SN PLUS multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

SAE 5W-30 is the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If you use SAE 10W-30 or a higher viscosity engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.



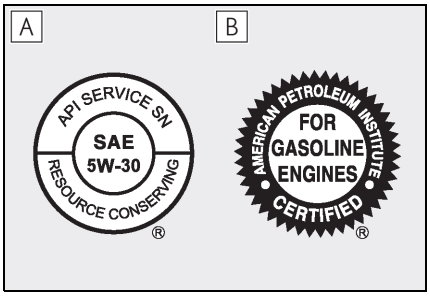
A Temperature range anticipated before next oil change

B Preferred

Oil viscosity (5W-30 is explained here as an example):

- The 5W in 5W-30 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 30 in 5W-30 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container labels:
Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



A API Service Symbol

Top portion: "API SERVICE SN" means the oil quality designation by American Petroleum Institute (API).
Center portion: "SAE 5W-30" means the SAE viscosity grade.
Lower portion: "Resource-Conserving" means that the oil has fuel-saving and environmental protection capabilities.

B ILSAC Certification Mark

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

Cooling system

Capacity*	11.5 L (12.2 qt., 10.1 Imp. qt.)
Coolant type	Use either of the following: • "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

*: The fluid capacity is a reference quantity.

If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

Ignition system (spark plug)

Spark plug

Make	DENSO FK20HBR-J8
Gap	0.8 mm (0.031 in.)

NOTICE

Iridium-tipped spark plugs

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust the spark plug gap.

Electrical system (battery)

Specific gravity reading at 20°C (68°F):	1.25 or higher If the specific gravity is lower than the standard value, charge the battery.
Charging rates Quick charge Slow charge	 15 A max. 5 A max.

Automatic transmission

Fluid capacity*	11.2 L (11.8 qt., 9.9 Imp. qt.)
Fluid type	Toyota Genuine ATF WS

*: The fluid capacity is a reference quantity.
If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

Automatic transmission fluid type

Using transmission fluid other than "Toyota Genuine ATF WS" may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the transmission of your vehicle.

Differential

▶ Vehicles without TVD (Torque Vectoring Differential)

Oil capacity	1.35 L (1.42 qt., 1.19 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity	Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil LX 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent*1

▶ Vehicles with TVD (Torque Vectoring Differential)

	Differential	Torque transfer module*2
Oil capacity	1.35 L (1.42 qt., 1.19 Imp. qt.)	Left-hand side: 0.70 L (0.74 qt., 0.62 Imp. qt.) Right-hand side: 0.70 L (0.74 qt., 0.62 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity	Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent*1	Toyota Genuine ATF WS*3

*1: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" at the factory. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or an equivalent oil of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

*2: Torque transfer modules are located on the right and left sides of the rear differential-unit.

*3: Using torque transfer module fluid other than "Toyota Genuine ATF WS" may cause deterioration of performance, vibration, or ultimately damage the TVD system of your vehicle.

Brakes

Pedal clearance*1	101 mm (4.0 in.) Min.
Pedal free play	1.0—6.0 mm (0.04—0.24 in.)
Parking brake pedal travel*2	8 - 11 clicks
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No.116 DOT 3, or SAE J1704 or FMVSS No.116 DOT 4

*1: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 500 N (51.0 kgf, 112.4 lbf)

while the engine is running.

*2: Parking brake pedal travel when depressed with a force of 300 N (30.6 kgf, 67.4 lbf)

Steering

Free play	Less than 30 mm (1.2 in.)

Tires and wheels (except for Korea)

▶ Type A

Tire size	Front tires: 255/35ZR19 (92Y) Rear tires: 275/35ZR19 (96Y)		
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 220 km/h (137 mph)	300 (3.0, 44)	300 (3.0, 44)
	220 km/h (137 mph) or less	250 (2.5, 36)	250 (2.5, 36)
Wheel size	Front wheels: 19 × 9J Rear wheels: 19 × 10J		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

▶ Type B

Tire size	235/40R19 96Y		
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 220 km/h (137 mph)	300 (3.0, 44)	300 (3.0, 44)
	220 km/h (137 mph) or less	250 (2.5, 36)	250 (2.5, 36)
Wheel size	19 × 8 1/2J		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

▶ Spare tire

Tire size	225/40ZR19 (93Y)
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	290 kPa (2.9 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 42 psi)
Wheel size	19 × 8 1/2J
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)

Tires and wheels (for Korea)

Tire manufacturer	Michelin
Tire rolling resistance rating (5 levels)*	4
Tire wet grip rating (5 levels)*	1
Tire size	Front tires: 255/35ZR19 (92Y) Rear tires: 275/35ZR19 (96Y)
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Driving under normal conditions Front: 250 kPa (2.5 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 36 psi) Rear: 250 kPa (2.5 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 36 psi) Driving at high speeds (above 220 km/h [137 mph]) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law) Add 50 kPa (0.5 kgf/cm2 or bar, 8 psi) to the front tires and rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.
Wheel size	Front wheels: 19 × 9J Rear wheels: 19 × 10J
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)

*: A rating closer to "1" indicates higher performance.

Light bulbs

Light bulbs	W	Type
Vanity lights	8	Wedge base bulbs (clear)
Footwell lights	3.8	
Trunk light	5	

Fuel information

You must only use unleaded gasoline.

Select premium unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 98 or higher for optimum engine performance.
If this premium type cannot be obtained, you may temporarily use unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number as low as 91.

The use of such gasoline may cause the engine to knock or drastically reduce output to protect itself while driving with a heavy load. To avoid this, refill the tank with premium unleaded gasoline as soon as possible.

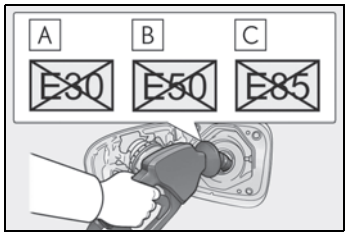
■ Use of ethanol blended gasoline in a gasoline engine

▶ Except for Korea

Lexus allows the use of ethanol blended gasoline where the ethanol content is up to 10%. Make sure that the ethanol blended gasoline to be used has a Research Octane Number that follows the above.

▶ For Korea

- Use only gasoline containing up to 15% ethanol.
  DO NOT use any flex-fuel or gasoline that could contain more than 15% ethanol, including from any pump labeled E30 (30% ethanol [A]), E50 (50% ethanol [B]), E85 (85% ethanol [C]) (which are only some examples of fuel containing more than 15% ethanol).



- Make sure that the ethanol blended gasoline to be used has a suitable Research Octane Number.

■ If your engine knocks

- Consult your Lexus dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

NOTICE

■ Notice on fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used, the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use gasoline with metallic additives, for example manganese, iron or lead, otherwise it may cause damage on your engine or emission control system.
- Do not add aftermarket fuel additives which contain metallic additives.
- Do not use the methanol blended gasoline such as M15, M85, M100.
  The use of gasoline containing methanol may cause engine damage or failure.

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences. The settings of these features can be changed by using the meter control switches, the Remote Touch or at your Lexus dealer.

Customizing vehicle features

■ Changing by using the meter control switches

1 Press ◀ or ▶ to select ⚙.

2 Operate the switches to select a desired item.

3 Change the setting by referring to the message displayed on the screen.

■ Changing by using the Remote Touch

1 Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch.

2 Select "Setup" on the menu screen and select "Vehicle".

3 Select "Vehicle Customization", "LEXUS Park Assist" or "Drive Mode Customization".

Various setting can be changed. Refer to the list of settings that can be changed for details.

For details on the Remote Touch, refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

■ When customizing using the Remote Touch

Stop the vehicle in a safe place, apply the parking brake, and shift the shift lever to P. Also, to prevent battery discharge, leave the engine running while customizing the features.

⚠ WARNING

■ During customization

As the engine needs to be running during customization, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

⚠ NOTICE

■ During customization

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while customizing features.

Customizable features

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

A Settings that can be changed using the Remote Touch

B Settings that can be changed using the meter control switches

C Settings that can be changed by your Lexus dealer

Definition of symbols: O = Available, – = Not available

■ **Gauges, meters and multi-information display (→P.92, 96, 104)**

Function*1	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Language*2	English	French	–	O	–
		Spanish			
		German*3			
		Italian*3			
		Russian*3			
		Simplified Chinese*3			
		Traditional Chinese*3			
		Arabic*3			
Units*2	km (L/100 km)	km (km/L)	O	O	–
		miles (MPG)*3			
Switch settings	Drive information 1	Desired status screen*4	–	O	–
Drive information 1	Current fuel consumption	Customizable items: →P.105	–	O	–
	Average fuel economy (after reset)				
Drive information 2	Distance (driving range)				
	Average vehicle speed (after reset)				
Drive information 3	Average fuel consumption (after refuel)				
	Elapsed time (after start)				

Function[*1]	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Pop-up display	On	Off	–	O	–
Rev indicator	Setting 2	Setting 1	–	O	–
		Setting 3			
		Off			
Rev peak	On	Off	–	O	–
Gauge options	Normal	Custom	–	O	–
		Eco drive			
		Sport			
Speed indicator[*5]	Off	On	–	O	–
Speed indicator settings[*5]	Type A[*7]: 100 km/h (60 mph) Type B[*8]: 130 km/h (80mph)	Type A[*7]: 50 km/h to 120 km/h (30 mph to 75 mph)[*9] Type B[*8]: 50 km/h to 200 km/h (30 mph to 125 mph)[*9]	–	O	–
Eco Driving Indicator Light	On	Off	–	O	–

[*1]: For details about each function: →P.112

[*2]: The default setting varies according to country.

[*3]: The customized setting varies according to country.

[*4]: Some status screens cannot be registered (indicated on the multi-information display)

[*5]: Except GCC countries[*6], Jordan and Lebanon

[*6]: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar and Kuwait

[*7]: For Taiwan, Philippine, Korea, Brunei and Indonesia

[*8]: For Kazakhstan, Russia, Singapore, Hong Kong, Malaysia, Macau, Chile and South Africa

[*9]: Always observe the legal speed limit when driving on public roads.

■ **Door lock (→P.122, 126, 382)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Unlocking using a mechanical key*	Both side doors unlocked in one step	Driver's door unlocked in one step, both side doors unlocked in two steps	–	–	O
Speed-detecting automatic door lock function	On	Off	O	–	O
Shifting gears to position other than P locks both side doors	Off	On	O	–	O
Shifting gears to P unlocks both side doors*	Off	On	O	–	O
Opening driver's door unlocks both side doors*	On	Off	O	–	O
Locking/unlocking of the trunk when both side doors are locked/unlocked	On	Off	–	–	O

*: The default setting varies according to country.

■ **Smart entry & start system and wireless remote control (→P.122, 126)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Operation buzzer volume*	5	Off	O	–	O
		1 to 7			
Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	On	Off	O	–	O
Time elapsed before automatic door lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	30 seconds	60 seconds	–	–	O
		120 seconds			
Open door warning buzzer	On	Off	–	–	O
Welcome light illumination control	On	Off	O	–	O

*: If equipped

■ **Smart entry & start system (→P.122, 126, 129)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Smart entry & start system	On	Off	O	–	O
Smart door unlocking*	Both side doors	Driver's door	O	–	O
Number of consecutive door lock operations	2 times	As many as desired	–	–	O

*: The default setting varies according to country.

■ **Wireless remote control (→P.118, 122, 126)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Wireless remote control	On	Off	–	–	O
Unlocking operation*1	Both side doors unlocked in one step	Driver's door unlocked in one step, both side doors unlocked in two steps	O	–	O
Trunk unlocking operation	Press and hold (short)	One short press	–	–	O
		Push twice			
		Press and hold (long)			
		Off			
Alarm (panic mode)*2	On	Off	–	–	O

*1: The default setting varies according to country.

*2: If equipped

■ **Driving position memory (→P.136)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Selecting the door linking driving position memory with door unlock operation	Driver's door	Both side doors	–	–	O

■ **Power easy access system (→P.136)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Driver's seat movement when exiting the vehicle	Full	Off	O	–	O
		Partial			
Steering wheel movement*	On	Off	–	–	O

*: If equipped

■ **Outside rear view mirrors (→P.141)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Automatic mirror folding and extending operation*	Linked to the locking/unlocking of the doors	Off	–	–	O
		Linked to operation of the engine switch			

*: If equipped

■ **Power windows (→P.144)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Mechanical key linked operation	Off	On	–	–	O
Wireless remote control linked operation*	Off	On	–	–	O
Wireless remote control linked operation signal (buzzer)*	On	Off	–	–	O

*: If equipped

■ **Moon roof* (→P.146)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Mechanical key linked operation	Off	On	–	–	O

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Wireless remote control linked operation*	Off	On	–	–	O
Wireless remote control linked operation signal (buzzer)*	On	Off	–	–	O

*: If equipped

■ **Turn signal lever (→P.168)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
The number of times the turn signal lights flash automatically when the turn signal lever is moved to the first position during a lane change*1	3	5	–	–	O
		7			
		Off*2			
		Off*3			

*1: After flashing the turn signal lights when turning left or right while this function is off and the turn signal lever is moved to the first position in the direction of the flashing light, the turn signal lights can be selected to be flashing or off.

*2: The turn signal lights keep flashing if the turn signal lever is moved to the first position in the direction of flashing light.

*3: The turn signal lights will be off if the turn signal lever is moved to the first position in the direction of flashing light.

■ **Automatic light control system (→P.170)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Light sensor sensitivity	Standard	-2 to 2	O	–	O
Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn on*	Standard	Long	–	–	O
Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off*	30 seconds	60 seconds	–	–	O
		90 seconds			
		120 seconds			

*: If equipped

■ Lights (→P.170)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Daytime running light system*	On	Off	O	–	O

*: If equipped

■ PCS (Pre-Collision System)* (→P.188)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
PCS (Pre-Collision System)	On	Off	–	O	–
Adjust alert timing	Middle	Far	–	O	–
		Near			

*: If equipped

■ LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)* (→P.196)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Steering assist function	On	Off	–	O	–
Alert type	Steering wheel vibration	Buzzer	–	O	–
Alert sensitivity	Standard	High	–	O	–
Vehicle sway warning function	On	Off	–	O	–
Vehicle sway warning sensitivity	Standard	High	–	O	–
		Low			

*: If equipped

■ RSA (Road Sign Assist)1* (→P.204)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
RSA (Road Sign Assist)	On	Off	–	O	–
Excess speed notification method	Display only	No notification	–	O	–
		Display and buzzer*2			

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Excess speed notification level	2 km/h (1 mph)	5 km/h (3 mph)	–	O	–
		10 km/h (5 mph)			
Other notifications method[3*]	Display only	No notification	–	O	–
		Display and buzzer[*2]			

*1: If equipped

*2: If a speed limit with supplemental mark is exceeded, the warning buzzer does not operate.

*3: Including no overtaking notification and no-entry notification (vehicles with navigation system)

■ **Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P.226)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Detection distance of the front center sensor	Far	Near	O	–	O
Detection distance of the rear center sensor	Far	Near	O	–	O
Buzzer volume	2	1 to 3	O	–	O

■ **Driving mode select switch (→P.232)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Powertrain control in custom mode	Normal	Power	O	–	–
		Eco			
Chassis control in custom mode	Normal	Sport	O	–	–
Air conditioning operation in custom mode	Normal	Eco	O	–	–

■ **Active rear wing* (→P.235)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Operation of the active rear wing	Off	On	–	O	O

*: If equipped

■ **Automatic air conditioning system (→P.255)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Switching between outside air and recirculated air mode linked to "AUTO" switch operation	On	Off	O	–	O
A/C auto switch operation	On	Off	O	–	O
Exhaust gas sensor sensitivity*	Standard	-3 to 3	O	–	O

*: If equipped

■ **Seat heaters* (→P.263)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Seat heater timer control	Off	On	O	–	O

*: If equipped

■ **Illumination (→P.266)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Time elapsed before the interior lights turn off	15 seconds	Off	O	–	O
		7.5 seconds			
		30 seconds			
Operation after the engine switch is turned off	On	Off	–	–	O
Operation when the doors are unlocked	On	Off	–	–	O
Operation when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	–	–	O
Remote Touch pad light	On	Off	–	–	O

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Time elapsed before the outer foot lights turn off	15 seconds	Off	O	–	O
		7.5 seconds			
		30 seconds			
Operation of the outer foot lights when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	–	–	O
Operation of the outer foot lights when the doors are unlocked with the power door lock switch	On	Off	–	–	O
Operation of the outer foot lights when a door is opened	On	Off	–	–	O
Fading out of the outer foot lights when they turn off	Long	Short	–	–	O

■ **Seat belt reminder (→P.355)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Vehicle speed linked seat belt reminder buzzer*	On	Off	–	–	O

*: If equipped

■ **Vehicle customization**

- When the speed-detecting automatic door lock and shift-linked automatic door lock are both on, the door lock operates as follows.
  - When shifting the shift lever to any position other than P, both side doors will be locked.
  - If the vehicle is started with both side doors locked, the speed-detecting automatic door lock will not operate.
  - If the vehicle is started with any door unlocked, the speed-detecting automatic door lock will operate.
- When the smart entry & start system is off, the entry unlock function cannot be customized.
- When the doors remain closed after unlocking the doors and the timer activated automatic door lock function activates, signals will be generated in accordance with the operation buzzer volume and operational signal (Emergency flashers) function settings.
- Some settings can be changed using a switch or the Center Display. If a setting is changed using a switch, the changed setting will not be reflected on the Center Display until the engine switch is turned off and then to IGNITION ON mode.

Items to initialize

The following items must be initialized for normal system operation after such cases as the battery being reconnected, or maintenance being performed on the vehicle:

List of items to initialize

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Message indicating maintenance is required*	After the maintenance is performed	P.301
Tire pressure warning system*	• When rotating the tires • When changing the tire inflation pressure by changing traveling speed or load weight, etc.	P.330

*: If equipped

Certifications

Immobilizer system

FCC ID:NI4TMIMB-3

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

상호명/제조자	: Toyota Motor Corporation
기자재의 명칭(모델명)	: 미약전계강도 무선기기(TMIMB-3K2)
제조년월/제조국	: Shown on product./Japan
식별부호	: NI4-TMIMB-3K1

Complies with
IMDA Standards
DA101418

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Smart entry & start system

FCC ID:NI4TMLF12-4

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。



상호명/제조자	: Tokai Rika Co., Ltd.
기자재의 명칭(모델명)	: 특정소출력무선기기(데이터전송용 무선기기) (BG1EK)
제조년월/제조국	: Shown on product./Japan
식별부호	: KCC-CRM-TRJ-BG1EK

Complies with
IMDA Standards
DA101418



상호명/제조자	: DENSO CORPORATION
기자재의 명칭(모델명)	: 데이터전송용 무선기기(14CEB)
제조년월/제조국	: See product. / Japan
식별부호	: KCC-CRM-DKR-14CEB

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

FCC ID:HYQ14CCB

NOTE:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Millimeter wave radar sensor



상호명/제조자 : DENSO CORPORATION
기자재의 명칭 (모델명) : 차량 충돌방지용 레이더 무선기기(DNMWR008)
제조연월/제조국 : See Product. / JAPAN
식별부호 : MSIP-CRM-DKR-DNMWR008

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

For Vehicles sold in Jordan
TRC approval number: TRC/LPD/2014/149

Blind Spot Monitor



The Equipment Identified hereon is approved for use under the following rules
1- This equipment must not cause harmful interference to other service.
2- This equipment is subject to harmful interference, and the owner of this equipment must not claim for protection.

ictQATAR
Type approval reg No:
CRA/SA/2014/R-4413

Importer No:
FT-2222

TRC's type approval certificate number: **TRC/LPD/2014/254**

From the Lebanese Telecommunications Ministry:
Type Approval Number : 12421/O&M/2014

Complies with
IMDA Standards
DA101418

MSIP-CRM-8DC-SRR3A

상호 또는 성명	CONTINENTAL AUTOMOTIVE GMBH
기기 명칭	물체감지센서용 무선기기(24GHz 주파수대를 사용하는 기기)
기본모델명	SRR3-A
제조자/제조국가	CONTINENTAL AUTOMOTIVE GMBH / 독일

37739/I/SDPPI/2017

2130

電信法第48條，低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法
第十二條
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。
第十四條
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

NTC
Type Approved
No.: ESD-1409920C

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER59360

DEALER No:
DA40068

Tire pressure warning system

상호명/제조자	: DENSO CORPORATION
기자재의 명칭(모델명)	: 자계 유도식 무선기기(22AAA)
제조연월/제조국	: See lower part of the product. / Japan
식별부호	: KCC-CRM-DKR-22AAA

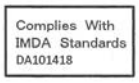
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

FCC ID:HYQ22AAA

NOTE:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.



經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Identification Number: PCX-PMV-C210
Equipment Name (Model Number): 특정소출력무선기기(PMV-C210)
Manufactured date:See product
Applicant: Pacific Industrial Co., Ltd.
Manufacturer: Pacific Industrial Co., Ltd.
Country of Origin: Japan

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER0063621/11
DEALER No:
DA0063612/11

Type approval No.: TRC/LPD/2010/44

TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) Transmitter conforms to the requirement of ICASA.



ASC (Active Sound Control)

限用物質含有情況標示

設備名稱： 主動聲音控制 型號（型式）：EAAE1124H0/EAAE1124J0/EAAE1124P0
Equipment name : Active Sound Control Type designation (Type) : EAAE1124H0/EAAE1124J0/EAAE1124P0

單元 Unit	限用物質及其化學符號 Restricted substances and its chemical symbols					
	鉛 Lead (Pb)	汞 Mercury (Hg)	鎘 Cadmium (Cd)	六價鉻 Hexavalent chromium (Cr^{+6})	多溴聯苯 Polybrominated biphenyls (PBB)	多溴二苯醚 Polybrominated diphenyl ethers (PBDE)
外殼	○	○	○	○	○	○
散熱片	○	○	○	○	○	○
螺絲	○	○	○	○	○	○
電路板	○	○	○	○	○	○
連接器	—	○	○	○	○	○
電子元件	—	○	○	○	○	○

備考1. 〝超出0.1 wt %〞及〝超出0.01 wt %〞係指限用物質之百分比含量超出百分比含量基準值。
Note 1 : "Exceeding 0.1 wt %" and "exceeding 0.01 wt %" indicate that the percentage content of the restricted substance exceeds the reference percentage value of presence condition.

備考2. 〝○〞係指該項限用物質之百分比含量未超出百分比含量基準值。
Note 2 : "○" indicates that the percentage content of the restricted substance does not exceed the percentage of reference value of presence.

備考3. 〝—〞係指該項限用物質為排除項目。
Note 3 : The "–" indicates that the restricted substance corresponds to the exemption.

Index

What to do if... (Troubleshooting) 428
Alphabetical Index 431

What to do if... (Troubleshooting)

If you have a problem, check the following before contacting your Lexus dealer.

The doors cannot be locked, unlocked, opened or closed



You lose your keys

- If you lose your mechanical keys, new genuine mechanical keys can be made by your Lexus dealer. (→P.381)
- If you lose your electronic keys, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately. (→P.381)



The electronic key does not operate properly

- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted? (→P.336)



The doors cannot be locked or unlocked

- Is the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode?

When locking the doors, turn the engine switch off. (→P.162)

- Is the electronic key left inside the vehicle?

When locking the doors, make sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

- The function may not operate properly due to the condition of the radio wave. (→P.131)



The trunk lid is closed with the electronic key left inside

- The function to prevent the electronic key from being left inside the trunk will operate and you can open the trunk as usual. Take the key out from the trunk. (→P.128)

If you think something is wrong



The engine does not start

- Did you press the engine switch while firmly depressing the brake pedal? (→P.160)
- Is the shift lever in P? (→P.160)
- Is the electronic key anywhere detectable inside the vehicle? (→P.130)
- Is the steering wheel unlocked? (→P.160)
- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted?

In this case, the engine can be started in a temporary way. (→P.384)

- Is the battery discharged? (→P.385)



The shift lever cannot be shifted from P even if you depress the brake pedal

- Is the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode?

If you cannot release the shift lever by depressing the brake pedal with the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode. (→P.164)



The steering wheel cannot be turned after the engine is stopped

- It is locked automatically to prevent theft of the vehicle. (→P.160)



The windows do not open or close by operating the power window switches

- Is the window lock switch pressed?

The power window except for the one at the driver's seat cannot be operated if the window lock switch is pressed. (→P.145)



The engine switch is turned off automatically

- The auto power off function will be operated if the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode (the engine is not running) for a period of time. (→P.162)



A warning buzzer sounds during driving

- The seat belt reminder light is flashing

Are the driver and the front passenger wearing the seat belts? (→P.355)

- The parking brake indicator is on

Is the parking brake released? (→P.169)

Depending on the situation, other types of warning buzzer may also sound. (→P.352, 359)



An alarm is activated and the horn sounds (if equipped)

- Did anyone inside the vehicle open a door or anything move inside the vehicle during setting the alarm?

The sensor detects them and the alarm sounds. (→P.85)

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm:

- Unlock the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control. (For GCC countries*, Jordan, Lebanon, Singapore, Brunei, Thailand, Macau, Chile and Hong Kong, the mechanical key can also be used.)
- Open the trunk using the entry function or wireless remote control.
- For GCC countries*, Jordan, Lebanon, Singapore, Brunei, Thailand, Macau, Chile and Hong Kong: Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)
- Other than listed above: Start the

engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

*: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar and Kuwait



A warning buzzer sounds when leaving the vehicle

- Is the message displayed on the multi-information display?

Check the message on the multi-information display. (→P.359)



A warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed

- When a warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed, refer to P.352, 359.

When a problem has occurred



If you have a flat tire

- Vehicle with a spare tire

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and replace the flat tire with the spare tire. (→P.362)

- Vehicle with an emergency tire puncture repair kit

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and repair the flat tire temporarily with the emergency tire puncture repair kit. (→P.369)



The vehicle becomes stuck

- Try the procedure for when the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow. (→P.390)

Alphabetical Index

A

A/C
Air conditioning filter....334
Automatic air conditioning system....255
Pollen removal mode....259
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)....239
ABS warning light....353
Active rear wing....235
Adaptive Variable Suspension System (AVS)....240
Air conditioning filter....334
Air conditioning system
Air conditioning filter....334
Automatic air conditioning system....255
Pollen removal mode....259
Airbag manual on-off system....44
Airbags
Airbag manual on-off system....44
Airbag operating conditions....38
Airbag precautions for your child....40
Correct driving posture....31
Curtain shield airbag operating conditions....38
Curtain shield airbag precautions....40
General airbag precautions....40
Locations of airbags....36
Modification and disposal of airbags....42
Side airbag operating conditions....38
Side airbag precautions....40
Side and curtain shield airbags operating conditions....38
Side and curtain shield airbags precautions....40
SRS airbags....36
SRS warning light....353
Alarm....85
Warning buzzer....352
Anchor brackets....47, 52
Antennas (smart entry & start system)....129
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)....239
ABS warning light....353
Approach warning....212
Armrest....271
Assist grips....272
Audio system-linked display....111
Automatic air conditioning system....255
Automatic headlight leveling system....171
Automatic headlight leveling system warning light....355
Automatic High Beam....172
Automatic light control system....170
Automatic transmission....163
M mode....166
Paddle shift switches....165, 166
Average fuel economy....105
Average vehicle speed....105
AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System)....240

B

Back-up light
Replacing light bulbs....341
Battery
Battery checking....321
Charging system warning light....352
If the battery is discharged....385
Preparing and checking before winter....244
Blind Spot Monitor (BSM)....218
Brake
Brake system warning light....352
Fluid....399
Parking brake....169
Brake assist....239
Break-in tips....153
Brightness control
Instrument panel light control....103
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)....218

C

Card key 118
Care
- Aluminum wheels 283
- Exterior 282, 289, 294
- Interior 286
- Seat belts 286

Cargo hooks 270
Center Display 252
Chains 245
Child restraint system
- Fixed with a seat belt 50, 75
- Fixed with an ISOFIX lower anchorage 51, 77
- Installing a CRS to the front passenger seat 48
- Points to remember 46, 54
- Riding with children 45
- Types of child restraint system installation method 47
- Using a top tether anchorage 78
- Using an anchor bracket 52

Child safety
- Airbag precautions 40
- Battery precautions 323, 387
- Child restraint system 47, 53, 74
- Heated steering wheel or seat heater precautions 263
- How your child should wear the seat belt 33
- Installing child restraints 53
- Moon roof precautions 148
- Power window lock switch 145
- Removed electronic key battery precautions 337
- Seat belt precautions 45
- Trunk precautions 126

Cleaning
- Aluminum wheels 283
- Exterior 282, 289, 294
- Interior 286
- Radar sensor 186
- Seat belts 286

Clock 273
Clock settings 273
Coat hooks 272
Condenser 321
Console box 270
Consumption screen 113
Cooling system 320
- Engine overheating 388

Cruise control
- Dynamic radar cruise control 207
- Warning message 217

Cup holders
- Front cup holders 269
- Rear cup holders 269

Current fuel consumption 105
Curtain shield airbags 36
Customizable features 404

D

Daytime running light system 170
Daytime running lights
- Replacing light bulbs 341

Defogger
- Outside rear view mirrors 259
- Rear window 259
- Windshield 259

Differential
- Differential oil 399

Dimension 394
Display
- Center Display 252
- Drive information 105
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 199
- Multi-information display 104
- Warning message 359

Do-it-yourself maintenance 302

Door courtesy lights 266
Door lock
Doors 122
Smart entry & start system 129
Wireless remote control 120
Doors
Automatic door locking and unlocking system 125
Door glasses 144
Door lock 122
Open door warning buzzer 123, 125, 355
Open door warning light 355
Outside rear view mirrors 141
Double locking system 84
Drive distance 105
Drive info 1/Drive info 2/Drive info 3 105
Drive information 105
Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light 355
Driver's seat position memory
Driving position memory 136
Memory recall function 137
Power easy access system 136
Drive-start control 153
Driving
Break-in tips 153
Correct driving posture 31
Driving mode select switch 232
Eco-friendly driving tips 246
Procedures 152
Winter drive tips 244
Driving information display 105
Driving position memory 136
Memory recall function 137
Power easy access system 136
Driving range 105
Driving support system information display 111
Dynamic radar cruise control 207
Warning message 214

E

Eco Driving Indicator 106
Eco Driving Indicator Light 106
Eco-friendly driving tips 246
EDR (Event data recorder) 6, 7
Elapsed time 105
Electric Power Steering (EPS) 240
Electric power steering system warning light 354
Electronic key 118
Battery-saving function 130
If the electronic key does not operate properly 382
Replacing the battery 336
Emergency brake signal 240
Emergency flashers 344
Emergency tire puncture 369
Emergency, in case of
If a warning buzzer sounds 352
If a warning light turns on 352
If a warning message is displayed 359
If the battery is discharged 385
If the electronic key does not operate properly 382
If the engine will not start 380
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened 382
If the vehicle is trapped in rising water 345
If you have a flat tire 362, 369
If you lose your keys 381
If you think something is wrong 350
If your vehicle becomes stuck 390
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 344
If your vehicle needs to be towed 347
If your vehicle overheats 388
Engine
ACCESSORY mode 162
Compartment 318

Engine switch....160
Fuel pump shut off system....351
Hood....315
How to start the engine....160
Identification number....395
If the engine will not start....380
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency....344
Ignition switch (engine switch)....160
Overheating....388
Tachometer....96
Engine coolant
Capacity....397
Checking....320
Preparing and checking before winter....244
Engine coolant temperature gauge....96
Engine immobilizer system....83
Engine oil
Capacity....396
Checking....318
Low engine oil pressure warning light....352
Preparing and checking before winter....244
Engine switch....160
Auto power off function....162
Changing the engine switch modes....162
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency....344
EPS (Electric Power Steering)....240
Electric power steering system warning light....354
Event data recorder (EDR)....6, 7

F

First-aid kit storage belt....270
Flat tire
Tire pressure warning system....328
Vehicles with a spare tire....362
Vehicles without a spare tire....369
Floor mats....30
Fluid
Automatic transmission....398
Brake....399
Washer....324
Fog lights....174
Switch....174
Follow me home system....171
Footwell light....266
Front seats
Adjustment....134
Cleaning....286
Correct driving posture....31
Driving position memory....136
Memory recall function....137
Power easy access system....136
Seat heaters....263
Seat position memory....136
Seat ventilators....263
Front turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs....341
Turn signal lever....168
Fuel
Capacity....396
Fuel gauge....96
Fuel pump shut off system....351
Information....403
Low fuel level warning light....355
Refueling....182
Type....396
Fuel consumption
Average fuel economy....105
Current fuel consumption....105
Fuel filler door
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened....382
Refueling....182
Fuel gauge....96
Fuel pump shut off system....351
Fuses....338

G

Garage door opener....274
Gauges....96
Gear Position....107
G-force....109
Glove box....269
Glove box light....269

H

Headlights
- Automatic High Beam system....172
- Follow me home system....171
- Light switch....170
- Replacing light bulbs....341

Heated steering wheel....263
Heaters
- Automatic air conditioning system....255
- Heated steering wheel....263
- Outside rear view mirrors....259
- Rear window....259
- Seat heaters....263

High mounted stoplight
- Replacing light bulbs....341

Hill-start assist control....240
Hood
- Open....315

Hooks
- Cargo hooks....270
- Coat hooks....272
- Retaining hooks (floor mat)....30

Horn....140

I

Identification
- Engine....395
- Vehicle....394

Ignition switch (engine switch)....160
- Auto power off function....162
- Changing the engine switch modes....162
- If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency....344

Illuminated entry system....267
Indicators....93
Initialization
- Items to initialize....415
- Maintenance....301
- Power windows....144
- Tire pressure warning system....330

Inside rear view mirror....140
Installing a CRS to a front passenger seat....55
Instrument panel light control....103
Interior lights....266
- Front interior light....266
- Rear interior light....266

ISOFIX lower anchorage....51, 77

J

Jack
- Positioning a floor jack....316
- Vehicle-equipped jack....363, 370

Jack handle....363, 370
Jam protection function
- Moon roof....147
- Power windows....144

K

Keyless entry
- Smart entry & start system....129
- Wireless remote control....120

Keys
- Battery-saving function....130
- Electronic key....118
- Engine switch....160
- If the electronic key does not operate properly....382
- If you lose your keys....381
- Key number plate....118
- Keyless entry....122, 129

Mechanical key 118
Replacing the battery 336
Warning buzzer 130
Wireless remote control 120
Knee airbags 36

L

Lane Departure Alert
LDA indicator 354
Lane Departure Alert with steering control (LDA)
Operation 196
Warning message 202
Language (multi-information display) 112
Launch control 233
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)
Operation 196
Warning message 202
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) switch 199
Lever
Auxiliary catch lever 315
Hood lock release lever 315
Shift lever 163
Turn signal lever 168
Wiper lever 175
Lexus parking assist-sensor
Function 226
Warning message 228
Lexus Safety System +
Automatic High Beam 172
Dynamic radar cruise control 207
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 196
PCS (Pre-Collision System) 188
RSA (Road Sign Assist) 204
License plate lights
Light switch 170
Replacing light bulbs 341
Light bulbs
Replacing 341
Lights
Automatic High Beam system 172
Fog light switch 174
Follow me home system 171
Front interior lights 266
Headlight switch 170
Interior lights 266
Interior lights list 266
Personal lights 267
Rear interior lights 266
Replacing light bulbs 341
Trunk light 127
Turn signal lever 168
Vanity lights 273
Wattage 402
Lock steering column 160

M

Maintenance
Do-it-yourself maintenance 313
Maintenance date 394
Maintenance requirements 301
Scheduled maintenance 303
Malfunction indicator lamp 353
Master warning light 356
Matte paint care guide 289, 294, 297
Menu icons 104
Meter
Changing the display 101
Indicators 93
Instrument panel light control 103
Meter control switches 105
Meters 96
Multi-information display 104
Settings 112
Warning lights 352
Warning message 359

Mirrors
Inside rear view mirror 140
Outside rear view mirror defoggers259
Outside rear view mirrors..... 141
Vanity mirrors..... 273
Moon roof
Door lock linked moon roof operation 147
Jam protection function..... 147
Operation..... 146
Multi-information display..... 104
Audio system-linked display..... 111
Cruise control 216
Drive information 1/Drive information 2/Drive information 3..... 105
Drive information display..... 105
Driving support system information display 111
Dynamic radar cruise control 207
Eco Driving Indicator 106
"F" content 107
Gear Position 107
G-force..... 109
History (Lap timer) 108
Lap timer 107
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 199
Menu icons 104
Meter control switches 105
Navigation system-linked display 111
Pop-up display..... 104
Settings..... 112
Tire pressure 107, 328
Torque distribution 109
Vehicle sway warning 107
Warning message..... 359
Warning message display 111

N

Navigation system-linked display 111
Noise from under vehicle..... 5

O

"ODO TRIP" switch..... 103
Odometer..... 103
Odometer and trip meter display 103
Display items 103
"ODO TRIP" switch 103
Oil
Differential oil 399
Engine oil..... 396
Opener
Fuel filler door 182
Hood 315
Trunk 127
Outer foot lights
Location..... 266
Outside rear view mirrors
Adjustment..... 141
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)..... 218
Folding..... 142
Linked mirror function when reversing 142
Mirror position memory..... 136
Outside rear view mirror defoggers259
RCTA function 218
Outside temperature 96
Overheating..... 388

P

Paddle shift switches..... 165, 166
Panic mode..... 120
Parking brake
Operation..... 169
Parking brake engaged warning buzzer 169
Parking brake warning light 354
Warning message..... 169
Parking lights
Light switch 170

Replacing light bulbs....341
PCS (Pre-Collision System)
Function....188
PCS OFF switch....190
PCS warning light....354
Warning message....195
Personal lights....266
Pollen removal mode....259
Power control unit coolant
Preparing and checking before winter....244
Power easy access system....136
Power outlet....271
Power steering (Electric power steering system)....240
Electric power steering system warning light....354
Power windows
Door lock linked window operation. 145
Jam protection function....144
Operation....144
Window lock switch....145
Pre-Collision System (PCS)
Function....188
PCS OFF switch....190
PCS warning light....354
Warning message....195

R

Radar cruise control....207
Radiator....321
RCTA
Function....218
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)....218
Rear Crossing Traffic Alert (RCTA)....218
Rear fog lights....174
Replacing light bulbs....341
Switch....174
Rear passengers' seat belt reminder lights....356
Rear seats
Seat heaters....263
Seat ventilators....263
Rear turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs....341
Turn signal lever....168
Rear view mirror
Inside rear view mirror....140
Outside rear view mirrors....141
Rear window defogger....259
Refueling
Capacity....396
Fuel types....396
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened....382
Opening the fuel tank cap....182
Remote Touch....250
Replacing
Electronic key battery....336
Fuses....338
Light bulbs....341
Tires....362
Resetting the message indicating maintenance is required....301
Rev indicator....100
Rev peak....101
Road Sign Assist....204
RSA (Road Sign Assist)....204

S

Seat belt reminder light....355, 356
Seat belts....32
Child restraint system installation47, 53, 74
Cleaning and maintaining the seat belt....286
Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light and buzzer....355
Emergency Locking Retractor....34
How to wear your seat belt....33

How your child should wear the seat belt 33
Pregnant women, proper seat belt use 32
Rear passengers' seat belt reminder lights and buzzer 356
Seat belt pretensioners 34
SRS warning light 353
Seat heaters 263
Seat position memory 136
Seat ventilators 263
Seats
Adjustment 134
Child seats/child restraint system installation 46, 53
Cleaning 286
Driving position memory 136
Power easy access system 136
Properly sitting in the seat 31
Seat heaters 263
Seat position memory 136
Seat ventilators 263
Sensor
Automatic headlight system 170
Automatic High Beam system 172
Inside rear view mirror 141
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 196
Radar sensor 185, 220
Rain-sensing windshield wipers 180
Service reminder message 301
Shift lever
Automatic transmission 163
Side airbags 36
Side mirrors
Adjustment 141
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 218
Folding 142
Linked mirror function when reversing 142
Mirror position memory 136
RCTA function 218
Side turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 341
Turn signal lever 168
Side windows 144
Slip indicator 355
Smart entry & start system
Antenna location 129
Entry functions 122
Starting the engine 160
Snow tires 244
Spare tire 362
Storage location 363
Spark plug 398
Specifications 394
Speed indicator 100
Speed meter
Speed indicator 100
Speedometer 96
Steering lock
Column lock release 160
Steering lock system warning message 160
Steering wheel
Adjustment 139
Heated steering wheel 263
Meter control switches 105
Power easy access system 136
Steering wheel position memory 136
Stop lights
Emergency brake signal 240
Replacing light bulbs 341
Storage features 268
Stuck
If the vehicle becomes stuck 390
Sun visors 273
Sunshade
Roof 147
Switches
Activating the Automatic High Beam 172
Active rear wing switch 235

Automatic High Beam system....172
Door lock switches....124
Driving mode select switch....232
Driving position memory switches....136
Emergency flashers switch....344
Engine switch....160
Fog light switch....174
Garage door opener switches....274
Heated steering wheel switch....263
Ignition switch....160
Instrument panel light control switches....103
"LAUNCH" switch....233
Lexus parking assist-sensor switch....226
Light switches....170
Meter control switches....105
Moon roof switches....146
"ODO TRIP" switch....103
Outside rear view mirror switches....141
Paddle shift switches....165, 166
PCS OFF switch....190
Power door lock switch....124
Power window switches....144
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch....255
Seat heater switches....263
Seat ventilator switches....263
Tilt and telescopic steering control switch....139
Tire pressure warning reset switch....330
Trunk opener main switch....128
Trunk opener switch....127
TVD (Toruqe Vectoring Differential) switch....238
VSC OFF switch....240
Window lock switch....145
Windshield wiper and washer switch175
Windshield wiper de-icer switch....260

T

Tachometer....96
Rev indicator....100
Rev peak....101
Tail lights
Light switch....170
Replacing light bulbs....341
Theft deterrent system
Alarm....85
Double locking system....84
Engine immobilizer system....83
Tire inflation pressure
Maintenance data....400, 401
Tire inflation pressure display function....328
Tire pressure warning light....357
Tire infration pressure....107
Tire pressure display....328
Tire pressure warning system
Function....328
Initializing....330
Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters....329
Registering ID codes....331
Tire pressure warning light....357
Tires
Chains....245
Checking....326
Emergency tire puncture repair kit....369
If you have a flat tire....362, 369
Inflation pressure....332
Replacing....362
Rotating tires....327
Size....400, 401
Snow tires....244
Spare tire....362
Tire inflation pressure display function....328
Tire pressure warning lightt....357
Tire pressure warning system....328

Tools 363, 370
Top strap 47, 52, 78
Top tether anchorages 74
Toruqe Vectoring Differential (TVD). 238
Towing
Emergency towing 347
Towing eyelet 349
Trailer towing 159
Traction Control (TRC) 239
Trailer towing 159
Transmission
Automatic transmission 163
Driving mode select switch 232
M mode 166
Paddle shift switches 165, 166
TRC (Traction Control) 239
Trip meters 103
Trunk 126
Smart entry & start system 127
Trunk features 270
Trunk grip 127
Trunk light 127
Trunk opener main switch 128
Trunk opener switch 127
Trunk storage extension 271
Wireless remote control 127
Turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 341
Turn signal lever 168
TVD (Toruqe Vectoring Differential). 238

V

Vanity lights 273
Vanity mirrors 273
VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management) 240
Vehicle data recording 6
Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management (VDIM) 240
Vehicle identification number 394
Vehicle Stability Control (VSC) 239
Vehicle sway warning display 107
Ventilators (seat ventilators) 263
VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) 239

W

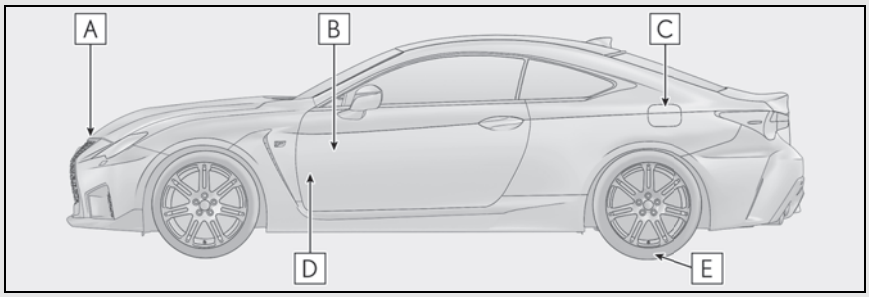
Warning buzzer
Open door 355
Warning buzzers
Approach warning 212
Brake Override System 353
Downshifting 166, 167
Driver's and front passenger's seat belt 355
Drive-Start Control 353
Electric power steering 354
High coolant temperature 352
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 196
Low engine oil pressure 352
Open door 123, 125
Open window 145
Parking brake 354
Pre-collision braking 189
Rear passengers' seat belt 356
Warning lights 352
ABS 353
Automatic headlight leveling system 355
Brake Override System 353
Brake system 352
Charging system 352
Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light 355
Drive-Start Control 353
Electric power steering 354
High coolant temperature 352
LDA indicator 354
Low engine oil pressure 352
Low fuel level 355
Malfunction indicator lamp 353

Master warning light 356
Open door warning 355
Parking brake indicator 354
Pre-collision system 354
Rear passengers' seat belt reminder lights 356
Slip indicator 355
SRS 353
Tire pressure 357
Warning message 359
Warning message display 111
Washer
Checking 324
Preparing and checking before winter 244
Switch 175
Washing and waxing 282
Wheels 333
Size 400, 401
Window lock switch 145
Windows
Power windows 144
Rear window defogger 259
Washer 175
Windshield wiper de-icer 260
Windshield wipers 175
Winter driving tips 244
Wireless remote control
Battery-Saving Function 130
Locking/Unlocking 120
Replacing the battery 336

For information regarding the equipment listed below, refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

· Navigation system
· Audio/visual system
· Lexus parking assist monitor

GAS STATION INFORMATION



A Auxiliary catch lever (→P.315)

B Trunk opener (→P.127)

C Fuel filler door (→P.182)

D Hood lock release lever (→P.315)

E Tire inflation pressure (→P.400, 401)

Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	▶ For Korea 66.3 L (17.5 gal., 14.6 Imp. gal.) ▶ Except for Korea 66 L (17.4 gal., 14.5 Imp. gal.)	
Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only	P.396 P.403
Cold tire inflation pressure		P.400 P.401
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference)		P.396
Engine oil type		P.396

ワX-1

Publication No. OM24838E
Part No. 01999-24838
Printed in Japan 01-1903-00 N
RC F (一般E)